

winshare 文轩教育

四川教育出版社

教师用书

点金训练

英语

必修
第一册

配外研版

点金训练

教师用书

▶ 英语

必修 第一册

配外研版

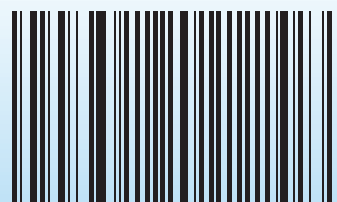
《点金训练》编写组 编

DIANJIN XUNLIAN
—— YINGYU ——
JIAOSHI YONGSHU



扫码查看本书
配套资源包

赠 品



6662023025003



四川教育出版社



四川教育出版社

点金训练

教师用书

《点金训练》编写组 编

► 英语

必修 第一册

配外研版



四川教育出版社

CONTENTS

目录

Unit 1 A new start

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	1
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	4
Section III	Using language	9
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending	15
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points	18
读后续写概述		25

Unit 2 Exploring English

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	34
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	37
Section III	Using language	42
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending	51
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points	54
读后续写技能养成		60

Unit 3 Family matters

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	68
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	71
Section III	Using language	76
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending	85
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points	88
读后续写技能养成		95



Unit 4 Friends forever

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	103
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	106
Section III	Using language	111
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending	117
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points	120
读后续写技能养成		127

Unit 5 Into the wild

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	135
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	139
Section III	Using language	144
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending	148
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points	151
读后续写技能养成		157

Unit 6 At one with nature

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	165
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	169
Section III	Using language	173
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending	180
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points	183
读后续写技能养成		190
综合检测(一)		198
综合检测(二)		206

Unit 1

A new start

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—

Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点；
2. 通过略读文章，熟悉话题语境，获取文章的主旨大意；
3. 通过细读文章，找出相关的细节信息并梳理情节发展的时间顺序；
4. 初步了解英国中学生的日常学习与生活，并基于自身的日常学习与生活，比较中英学校生活的异同。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇和表达的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇和表达

1. senior *adj.* (地位、水平或级别)高的,高级的
2. curious *adj.* 好奇的
3. impression *n.* 印象,感想
4. campus *n.* 校园
5. tradition *n.* 传统
6. impressive *adj.* 令人钦佩的,给人深刻印象的
7. eagerness *n.* 热切,渴望
8. explore *v.* 考察,探险
9. collection *n.* (一批)收藏品
10. organise *v.* 组织
11. breathe *v.* 呼吸
12. challenge *n.* 挑战
13. calm *adj.* 镇静的,沉着的

14. description *n.* 描述,描写,叙述,形容
15. confident *adj.* 有信心的,自信的
16. moment *n.* 某一时刻
17. depend on 取决于;依靠
18. make the most of 充分利用
19. senior high 高中
20. one by one 依次地,一个接一个地

(二)阅读词汇和表达

1. facility *n.* 设施
2. author *n.* 作者,作家
3. engine *n.* 发动机,引擎
4. insect *n.* 昆虫
5. nudge *n.* (通常用肘)轻推
6. butterflies in one's stomach 情绪紧张,心里发慌
7. in panic 惊慌地
8. put... under pressure 使……处于压力之下

「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 1 (Para. 1)	1. <u>Before</u> going to school	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Meng Hao woke up early and rushed out of the door in his 2. <u>eagerness</u> to get to know his new school.
Part 2 (Para. 2)	3. <u>Arriving</u> at school	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The campus was still 4. <u>quiet</u> when he arrived. • He met a white-haired man with a smile, who was his 5. <u>English</u> teacher.

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 3 (Para. 3 — Para. 7)	During the 6. <u>English</u> class	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • While introducing himself, Meng Hao was too 7. <u>nervous</u>. • Meng Hao and the teacher shared the same 8. <u>name</u>. • What the teacher said made him a lot more 9. <u>relaxed</u>.
Part 4 (Para. 8)	10. <u>After</u> the English class	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Meng Hao guessed this was a good 11. <u>beginning</u> to his new school life.

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- The phrase “with butterflies in my stomach” means “_____”.
A. I felt sick
B. I was angry
C. I was happy
D. I was nervous
- What made everyone laugh when Meng Hao was introducing himself?
A. His humorous words.
B. His strange behaviors.
C. He shared the same name with their English teacher.
D. He stood there quietly without saying a word to the whole class.
- The proverb “Well begun, half done.” means “_____”.
A. A good beginning is very important.
B. Only working hard at the beginning is enough.
C. The beginning is more important than the ending.
D. We should only pay attention to the beginning of a thing.

答案: 1~3 DCA

II. 课文语法填空

After I **1.** had pictured (picture) it over and over again in my mind, my first day at senior high finally arrived! I woke up early and rushed out of the door **2.** eagerly (eager) to my new school.

The campus was still quiet when I arrived, so I decided to explore a bit. I **3.** was looking (look) at the photos on the noticeboard when I heard a voice behind me. **4.** Turning (turn) around, I saw a white-haired man. When my English teacher stepped into the classroom, I was **5.** surprised (surprise) to see the same man I had met earlier. He asked all of us to introduce **6.** ourselves (we) to the class.

When I introduced my name, everyone started laughing. Finally, I realised that I shared the same name **7.** with the teacher. I had been too nervous **8.** to pay (pay) attention when he introduced himself! The teacher said, “I know this isn’t easy for many of you. But this is just the kind of thing you are going to face **9.** at senior high. Challenges like this might sometimes put you under pressure. But it all depends **10.** on what you do. Keep calm and be prepared. That way, you’ll make the most of your time at senior high.”

III. 阅读升华

- What do you think of Meng Hao’s English teacher? (no more than 5 words)
He is kind and humorous.
- What kind of teachers do you like best? (Answers may vary.)
He/She should be knowledgeable and have a good way of making his/her lessons lively and interesting.

课后素养评价(一)

I. 阅读理解

When I woke up on September 1, there was only one thing on my mind: what to wear. A billion thoughts appeared through my brain in the closet (衣橱). Not only was it my first day of senior high school, but it was my first day of school in a new state; first impressions are everything, and it was important for me to impress the people who I would spend the next three years with.

After carefully hunting my closet, I proudly came out in a dress. The soft cotton was comfortable, and the specially designed shoulders added a little of fun. Yes, this cloth was the one. An hour later, I felt powerful as I headed towards Room 1136. But as I entered class, my jaw dropped to the floor.

Sitting at her desk was Mrs Hutfilz, my English teacher, wearing exactly the same dress as me. I kept my head down and tiptoed (踮着脚尖) to my seat. I made it through my simple introduction speech until Mrs Hutfilz stood up, jokingly saying that she liked my style. Although this was the moment I had been afraid of from the moment I walked in, all my anxiety surprisingly melted away, and the students paid attention as I shared my story. My smile grew as I laughed with the students. After class, I stayed behind, talked to Mrs Hutfilz and made a humorous and real communication.

Looking back three years later, the ten minutes I spent afraid of giving my speech was really not worth it. My first period of high school certainly made the day unforgettable in the best way and taught me that Mrs Hutfilz has a brilliant sense of style!

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者在高中第一天难忘的经历。

- Why did the author pay great attention to her clothes on the first day of high school?
 - Because she followed her father's advice.
 - Because she was unconfident about herself.
 - Because she cared too much about her appearance.
 - Because she wanted to make a good impression.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“first impressions are everything, and it was important for me to impress the people who I would spend the next three years with”可知,作者在高中的第一天非常注意她的穿着是因为她想给人留下一个好印象。故选D。

- Which of the following statements is TRUE?
 - It was her first day of primary school.
 - She was satisfied with her first day dress.
 - Her teacher was unhappy because she wore the same dress with her.
 - She made a conversation with her English teacher in class.
- What's the author's feeling after noticing her teacher's dress?
 - Anger.
 - Confusion.
 - Pride.
 - Embarrassment.

D 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“The soft cotton was comfortable, and the specially designed shoulders added a little of fun.”可知,作者对她第一天的穿着很满意。故选B。

D 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“*But as I entered class, my jaw dropped to the floor.*”及第三段中的“*Sitting at her desk was Mrs Hutfilz, my English teacher, wearing exactly the same dress as me. I kept my head down and tiptoed (踮着脚尖) to my seat.*”可推知,注意到老师的着装和自己的一样后,作者感到很尴尬。故选D。

- What is the author's purpose in writing the article?
 - To share a memorable experience.
 - To explore the troubles with dressing.
 - To introduce her stylish English teacher.
 - To stress the importance of first impressions.
- A 推理判断题。通读全文,尤其是最后一段中的“*My first period of high school certainly made the day unforgettable in the best way*”可推知,本文讲述了作者在高中第一天难忘的经历,因此作者写这篇文章的目的是要分享一段难忘的经历。故选A。

II. 七选五

Studying longer does not necessarily mean studying better. 1 Below are some great ways of learning as much as you can without getting too stressed.

Find the right place to study

The first thing you need to do is avoid distractions (分散注意力的事物) while studying.

2 You should keep away from television sets and phone calls. Get all of your study materials together, so you will not be interrupted in the middle of your session.

Break down the tasks into smaller parts

When you have gotten everything ready, list the items you need to study, and arrange them across several hours or days, depending on how big your load is. As a general rule, assign (分配) at least one hour to each subject. 3 By doing this, you will be able to know more easily how long you need for each topic.

Schedule study breaks

When you have listed all of your tasks and made a schedule, you should arrange study breaks. 4 This will give your eyes some time to rest, and yourself a chance to go to the bathroom or have some coffee. Scheduled breaks will reduce the need for you to interrupt yourself to the lowest level during the study session.

Put your tasks in order of importance

5 Just in case you run out of time to study, or if you think you do not have enough time to cover all topics, you should study in an order.

- A. Each break may take about 15 minutes every two hours.
- B. Learn to arrange the subjects in order of importance.
- C. This means going to one place that will give you peace and quiet.
- D. The key to efficient studying is following the schedule strictly.
- E. You can find a way to test your knowledge by having a study partner.
- F. If you have a broad subject, you will need to break it down into smaller parts.
- G. To make the best use of your time, you need to learn how to study efficiently (高效地).

答案: 1~5 GCFAB

【微点写作】有关高中生活的日记

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. I just had my first maths class at senior high school!
我刚刚在高中上了第一堂数学课!
2. I stepped into the schoolyard of my senior high in my eagerness.
我满怀渴望地步入了高中校园。
3. When I hurried to school, I was almost out of breath.
当我匆忙赶到学校时,几乎是上气不接下气了。

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas

Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 通过对文章进行解构,掌握日记的基本特征;
3. 能够基于文章内容联系生活,并运用与话题相关的语言知识,讲述自己高中第一天的经历,初步感知高中阶段的生活与学习;
4. 能够结合课文,理解“良好的开端是成功的一半”的意义,树立对高中生活的自信。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中**黑体**单词的汉语意思

1. Students should avoid any immodest behavior, on or off **campus**. 校园
2. Finally, the man became ill under the great

pressure of work. 压力

3. J.K. Rowling, the **author** of *Harry Potter*, has gone through many difficulties in her writing. 作者,作家

4. It is difficult for most people to keep **calm** in the face of danger. 镇静的, 沉着的
5. After studying at junior high school for three years, most of the students will go on studying at **senior** high school. (地位、水平或级别)高的, 高级的
6. The car broke down on the road because there was something wrong with the **engine**. 发动机, 引擎
7. The hotel has special **facilities** for disabled people to use. 设施
8. Guests **panicked** and screamed when the great fire broke out. 惊恐, 惊慌

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>curious</u> <i>adj.</i> 好奇的	<u>curiously</u> <i>adv.</i> 好奇地
	<u>curiosity</u> <i>n.</i> 好奇心
<u>impression</u> <i>n.</i> 印象, 感想	<u>impressive</u> <i>adj.</i> 令人钦佩的, 给人深刻印象的
	<u>impress</u> <i>v.</i> 给……留下深刻印象
<u>tradition</u> <i>n.</i> 传统	<u>traditional</u> <i>adj.</i> 传统的, 习俗的
	<u>traditionally</u> <i>adv.</i> 传统地
<u>explore</u> <i>v.</i> 考察; 探险	<u>explorer</u> <i>n.</i> 探险家, 勘探者
	<u>exploration</u> <i>n.</i> 探测; 探索
<u>organise</u> <i>v.</i> 组织	<u>organised</u> <i>adj.</i> 有组织的; 有条理的
	<u>organisation</u> <i>n.</i> 组织
<u>challenge</u> <i>n.</i> 挑战	<u>challenging</u> <i>adj.</i> 有挑战性的
<u>confident</u> <i>adj.</i> 有信心的, 自信的	<u>confidence</u> <i>n.</i> 信心; 信任
	<u>confidently</u> <i>adv.</i> 确信地, 肯定地; 自信地

III. 补全短语

1. turn around 转身
2. step into 迈进, 步入
3. one by one 依次地, 一个接一个地
4. turn on 打开(水、电视、收音机、灯、煤气等); 发动
5. butterflies in one's stomach 情绪紧张, 心里发慌
6. in panic 惊慌地
7. pay attention 专心; 集中注意力
8. put sb. under pressure 使某人处于压力之下
9. depend on 取决于; 依赖
10. make the most of 充分利用

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: be doing... when...

I was looking at the photos on the noticeboard when I heard a voice behind me. “New here?”
我正在浏览公告牌上的照片时, 身后忽然传来一个声音: “你是新生吗?”

2. 句型公式: 感叹句

How true these words were!
这些话说得真是太对了!

3. 句型公式: with 复合结构

With butterflies in my stomach, I breathed deeply.
心里七上八下、紧张万分, 我深吸了一口气。

4. 句型公式: too... to...

I had been too nervous to pay attention when he introduced himself!
我刚才太紧张了, 竟然没有仔细听他(老师)的自我介绍!

任务型课堂

1. curious *adj.* 好奇的

一感 读句子感悟用法

I **am curious about** Varna.
我对瓦尔纳很好奇。

A student should always **be curious to** learn.
学生应该始终具有强烈的求知欲。

I believe Wang Lin was just acting **out of curiosity**.

我觉得王林这样做只是出于好奇。

I have to explain the reasons to **meet/satisfy his curiosity**.

我只好解释原因来满足他的好奇心。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) <u>be curious</u> _____ sth 对某事感到好奇 <u>be curious</u> _____ sth 极想做某事 (2) <u>curiously</u> <i>adv.</i> 好奇地 (3) <u>curiosity</u> <i>n.</i> 好奇心 _____ of curiosity 出于好奇 <u>meet/satisfy one's curiosity</u> 满足某人的好奇心 <u>with curiosity</u> = <u>curiously</u> 好奇地
探究结论	(1) <u>about</u> ; <u>to do</u> (3) <u>out</u>

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

- ① “What have you got there?” Felix asked curiously (curious).
- ② It is children’s nature to be curious about the people and things around them.
- ③ I’m curious to know (know) how many satellites have been sent to space up to now.
- ④ Out of curiosity (curious), the man followed the guide into the hall.

2. impression n. 印象, 感想

(教材原文) What was your first **impression** of your new school?
你对你的新学校的第一印象是什么样的?

一感 读句子感悟用法

What was your **first impression of** our city?

你对我们城市的第一印象是什么样的?

His speech **made a strong impression on** the audience.

他的演讲给听众留下了深刻的印象。

Did the man try to **impress his belief upon** you?

那名男子试图要你铭记他的信念吗?

We **were impressed with/by** the city’s new look.

城市的新面貌给我们留下了深刻印象。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) first impression of... 对……的第一印象 leave/have/make a/an... impression _____ sb 给某人留下……的印象 (2) impress v. 给……留下深刻印象 impress sb with sth 某事给某人留下印象 impress sth on/upon sb 使某人铭记某事; 使某人明白某事物的重要性 be impressed _____ ... 对……有深刻印象 (3) impressive adj. 令人钦佩的, 给人深刻印象的
探究结论	(1) on (2) with/by

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

- ① He was trying to leave a deeper impression on the new friend by giving a very impressive performance. (impress)
- ② The young man impressed the importance of honesty on/upon me.

③ Punishment seemed to make no impression (impress) on the child.

④ On arriving at the teahouse, the foreign students were impressed with/by the unique teapots and teacups.

3. breathe v. 呼吸

(教材原文) With butterflies in my stomach, I **breathed** deeply.

心里七上八下、紧张万分,我深吸了一口气。

一感 读句子感悟用法

I opened the window to **breathe in** some fresh air. 我打开了窗户来呼吸一些新鲜空气。

Jack **took a deep breath** and then dived into the water.

杰克深吸了一口气,然后跳入水中。

When I hurried to school, I was almost **out of breath**.

当我匆忙赶到学校时,我几乎是上气不接下气了。

Seeing this, everyone present **held their breath**.

看到这里,在场的每个人都屏住了呼吸。

I was completely **breathless** when I got to the top of the mountain.

当我到达山顶时,我已经上气不接下气了。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) breathe _____ 吸气 breathe _____ 呼气 (2) breath n. 呼吸的空气; 一口气 _____ a deep breath 深呼吸 _____ of breath 气喘吁吁, 上气不接下气 hold one’s breath 屏住呼吸 lose one’s breath 喘不过气来 (3) breathless adj. 气喘吁吁的; 喘不过气来的
探究结论	(1) in; out (2) take; out

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

I like getting up early in the morning. You know the air is so good to breathe (breathe).

(2) 完成句子

① The doctor made me breathe in while he listened to my chest.

医生给我听胸部时,叫我吸气。

② He took a deep breath, and began to climb the stairs.

他深吸了一口气,然后开始爬楼梯。

③ He spoke so fast that he was out of breath.
他说得那么快,都喘不过气来了。

4. be doing... when...

(教材原文) I **was looking at** the photos on the noticeboard **when** I heard a voice behind me. “New here?”

我正在浏览公告牌上的照片时,身后忽然传来一个声音:“你是新生吗?”

[句式分析] 本句中 was looking... when... 为“sb was/were doing sth when...”句型,意为“某人正在做某事,这时……”,其中 when 为并列连词,相当于 at that time,意为“这时”,when 连接的分句一般用一般过去时。

一感 读句子感悟用法

We **were having dinner when** we heard a loud noise.

我们正在吃晚饭,这时我们听到了巨大的响声。

I **was about to go out when** the telephone rang.

= I **was on the point of going out when** the telephone rang.

我正要去,这时电话响了。

They **had just covered three miles when** they realised they had left their IDs at home.

他们刚走了三英里,突然意识到他们的身份证忘在家里了。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	when 用作连词的其他句型: (1) sb be about to do sth _____ ... = sb be on the point of doing sth when... 某人正打算做某事,这时…… (2) had just done... when... 刚做完……这时(突然)……
探究结论	(1) when

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 完成句子

① One Friday, we were cleaning the kitchen when my daughter heard cries for help.

一个周五,我们正在打扫厨房的时候,我女儿听到了呼救声。

② I had just finished my homework when my mother asked me to practise playing the piano yesterday.

昨天我刚完成作业,妈妈就让我练习弹钢琴。

(2) 一句多译

汤姆正要关窗户,这时一只小鸟吸引了他的注意。

① Tom was about to close the window when his attention was caught by a bird. (be about to)

② Tom was on the point of closing the window when his attention was caught by a bird. (be on the point of)

课后素养评价(二)

I. 单词拼写

1. He breathed (呼吸) deeply before he began to speak again.
2. He was curious (好奇的) to know what was happening in the office.
3. Your encouragement made me more confident (有信心的) of my future.
4. The army organised (组织) teams to dig out those who were trapped and to bury the dead.
5. She left me with the impression (印象) that she was unhappy with her job.
6. No matter what happens, you must be calm (镇静的).
7. Could you give us a brief description (描述) of the film?

8. People pushed each other of the way in their eagerness (热切,渴望) to get to the front to see the robot.
9. The reporter went round interviewing people about local traditions (传统).
10. At this time, British ships were exploring (探索) the world and came across the drink in China.

II. 短语填空

pay attention to; depend on; one by one;
wake up; in panic; make the most of

1. After hearing the terrible news that the building caught fire, the crowd ran out in panic.
2. Whether we can hold the meeting or not depends on the weather.
3. As the bell rang, the students went out one by one.

4. This question is very important so I hope all of you pay attention to it.
5. Every student should make the most of what he has to achieve what he wants.
6. They are talking in a whisper in order not to wake up the sleeping baby.

III. 补全句子

1. 我们正在做家庭作业,这时一个陌生人进来了。(be doing... when...)

We were doing our homework when a stranger came in.

2. 我发现她激动得说不出话来。(too... to...)

I found that she was too excited to say a word.

3. 门开着,汤姆很快就睡着了。(with 复合结构)

Tom soon fell asleep with the door open.

4. 多么奇怪的植物啊! 我以前从未见过它。(感叹句)

What a strange plant it is! I've never seen it before.

5. 听到这个不幸的消息,他们情不自禁地哭了起来。(现在分词作状语)

Hearing the bad news, they couldn't help crying.

IV. 完形填空

The first day at school has left a deep 1 on me. I'll never forget it.

As soon as I rushed into the classroom, the bell rang. A young beautiful woman came in, but she was 2, no smile on her face. "You are not allowed to 3 me in the course of class unless..." She was speaking when I heard a voice "Lily, Lily" from outside the door. My grandmother was standing there with a pair of socks in her hand. I didn't 4 I was bare feet (光着脚) until then. I wanted to 5 them, but I dared not do that. I shook my hand, 6 "Don't wait here any longer. Leave quickly." As I did so, I still fixed my eyes on my teacher. I really didn't want her to 7 me, but she did. She went out to get the socks. When she gave them to me, she looked at me for a while. My face suddenly turned 8 and my heart beat faster. I began to put the socks on. Unfortunately I was so nervous that my 9 hands couldn't get them onto my feet easily. Just then I heard my name called. I 10 from my seat quickly. "Can you count the numbers from one to one hundred?" the teacher asked. I nodded. To her 11, I did very well. Finally she said, "Be 12, please. Study hard." I looked up at her to find a smile on her face. I felt relaxed 13.

The first day at school has stayed in my 14 as something embarrassing but 15.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者第一天上学忘记穿袜子,但是看似严厉的老师帮助她化解了尴尬的暖心故事。

1. A. understanding B. impression
C. decision D. attention

B 根据后文"I'll never forget it."可知,"我"永远都不会忘记是因为上学的第一天给"我"留下了深刻的印象(impression)。leave a deep impression on sb 意为"给某人留下深刻的印象"。

2. A. nervous B. amazed
C. disappointed D. serious

D 根据后文"no smile on her face"可知,老师脸上没有笑容,说明老师是一个严肃的(serious)人。

3. A. trouble B. question
C. interrupt D. excuse

C 根据后文"in the course of class"和"but I dared not do that"可知,"我"不敢那样做是因为老师要求课堂上不要打断(interrupt)她。

4. A. say B. design
C. organise D. realise

D 根据前文"My grandmother was standing there with a pair of socks in her hand."可知,"我"的奶奶站在那里手里拿着一双袜子,"我"才意识到(realise)"我"没有穿袜子。

5. A. get B. throw
C. give D. show

A 根据上文可知,老师要求上课时不能打断她,因此看到奶奶来送袜子,"我"不敢去拿(get)。

6. A. saying B. meaning
C. crying D. shouting

B 根据前文"I shook my hand"可知,"我"不敢说话,摇了摇手的意思是(mean)不要在这里再等了,赶快离开。

7. A. care B. interest
C. remember D. notice

D 根据上文"As I did so, I still fixed my eyes on my teacher."可知,"我"让奶奶快点离开的同时,"我"的眼睛还盯着老师,是因为"我"不想让她注意到(notice)"我"。

8. A. healthy B. happy
C. red D. black

C 根据空后的"and my heart beat faster"可知,老师把袜子拿给"我","我"感到很尴尬,所以"我"脸红(red)了,而且心跳加快。

9. A. small B. dirty
C. shaking D. cold

C 根据前文“I was so nervous”可知,“我”很紧张,所以“我”颤抖(shaking)的手不能很容易地把袜子穿到脚上。

10. A. rose B. escaped
C. ran D. jumped

A 根据前文“Just then I heard my name called.”可知,老师叫“我”的名字,“我”从座位上站了起来。rise from one's seat 意为“从座位上站起来”。

11. A. anxiety B. curiosity
C. surprise D. anger

C 根据后文“I did very well”可知,老师让“我”从一数到一百,让她很吃惊(surprise)的是,“我”做得很好。

12. A. careful B. quiet
C. calm D. seated

D 根据上文可知,“我”站着回答老师的问题,因此答完了之后,老师让“我”坐下。be seated 意为“坐下”。

13. A. so far B. at last
C. on time D. at first

B 根据前文“I looked up at her to find a smile on her face.”可知,“我”在老师脸上看到了笑容,所以最终(at last)感觉放松了。

14. A. body B. classroom
C. memory D. hand

C 根据第一段中的“I'll never forget it.”可知,

在学校的的第一天一直留在“我”的记忆(memory)中。

15. A. strange B. sweet
C. confusing D. terrible

B 本文讲述了作者第一天上学忘记穿袜子,但是看似严厉的老师帮助她化解了尴尬的暖心故事。所以这段记忆对作者来说是又尴尬又甜蜜(sweet)的。

【微点写作】有关高中生活的日记

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. The shy boy feels embarrassed about speaking English in public.

这个害羞的男孩对在公众场合说英语感到尴尬。

2. I entered senior high school in September and the new school made a good impression on me.

我在九月进入高中,新学校给我留下了很好的印象。

3. A wide variety of after-class activities will broaden our horizons, enrich the school life and make us relaxed.

丰富多彩的课外活动让我们眼界开阔,充实了校园生活,还能使我们放松。

Section III Using language

学习任务及目标

1. 复习初中学过的七种基本句型,能够根据语境运用合适的句型描述日常生活;
2. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
3. 能够恰当地运用话题词汇介绍各类课外活动;
4. 能够初步了解国外高中学生的校园生活,开阔国际视野;
5. 能够初步认识时间管理的方法与重要性,并能够运用所学知识有效地规划学习时间,完成学习任务。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The Beatles used to be one of the most famous **bands** in England. 乐队
2. The weather is always a safe **topic** of conversation in Britain. 话题
3. According to the **schedule**, all work should be finished before 10 o'clock so we just have 2 hours left. 计划表

4. A **poster** is a large notice or picture that is put up on a wall or board, often in order to advertise something. 海报
5. There is a heated **debate** in our class on whether middle school students should take on part-time jobs on weekends. 讨论,辩论
6. If you're too busy to go to the **gym**, there are plenty of ways to still get your sweat on. 体育馆,健身房

7. Sometimes his **inner** thoughts and his outer actions do not match. 内心的

8. The country **gained** its independence fifty years ago. 获得, 赢得

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
drama <i>n.</i> 戏剧	dramatic <i>adj.</i> 戏剧性的 dramatically <i>adv.</i> 戏剧性地
photography <i>n.</i> 摄影	photograph <i>n.</i> 相片 <i>vi.</i> 拍照, 摄影; 被照相 <i>vt.</i> 给……照相 photographer <i>n.</i> 摄影爱好者; 摄影师
argue <i>v.</i> 争论, 争辩	argument <i>n.</i> 争论; 辩论 arguable <i>adj.</i> 可辩论的; 可论证的
sharp <i>adj.</i> 敏锐的, 聪明的	sharply <i>adv.</i> 尖刻地; 严厉地; 猛烈地 sharpen <i>v.</i> (使) 变得锋利; 使明朗; (使) 提高, 改善
intelligent <i>adj.</i> 有智慧的, 聪明的	intelligence <i>n.</i> 智力; 才智; 智慧
investigate <i>v.</i> 查明, 调查	investigation <i>n.</i> 调查; 研究
various <i>adj.</i> 各种各样的, 各种不同的	vary <i>v.</i> 变化 variety <i>n.</i> 种类; 多样性

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
volunteer <i>n.</i> 志愿者, 义务工作者, 自愿参加者	voluntary <i>adj.</i> 志愿的; 自愿的
apply <i>v.</i> 申请	application <i>n.</i> 申请; 申请书; 应用 applicant <i>n.</i> 申请人

III. 补全短语

- look after 照顾
- take part in 参加, 参与
- care about 关心
- take up 占据(时间、空间等)
- come along 快来; 赶快
- at a time 一次

IV. 重点句式补全

- 句型公式: make + 宾语 + 宾语补足语

The exam made me quite nervous.

这次考试使我相当紧张。

- 句型公式: not only... but also...

These activities not only help them gain more skills, but also teach them to care about others.

这些活动不仅帮助他们获得更多的技能, 而且教会他们关心他人。

- 句型公式: 不定式作目的状语

To help them do this, some senior high schools offer courses in time management.

为了帮助他们做到这一点, 一些高中开设了时间管理课程。

任务型课堂

1. argue *v.* 争论, 争辩; 主张; 说服

(教材原文) **Argue** about the week's hottest topics with the school's sharpest minds!

与学校最敏锐的人讨论本周最热门的话题!

一感 读句子感悟用法

They both agreed to see a film but they **argued with** each other **about/over** which film to see.

他们俩都同意去看电影但却为看哪部电影而彼此争论。

The students often **argue for** the right of freedom.

We tried many ways to **argue him into accepting** our advice, but in vain.

我们尝试了很多办法劝说他接受我们的建议, 但都是徒劳。

I **argue that** every one of us should try our best to help those in need.

我认为我们每个人都应该尽全力帮助那些处在困难中的人。

They were **having an argument about** whose turn it was to do the cooking.

他们为该轮到谁做饭而争吵不休。

It is beyond argument that smoking is harmful to health.

无可争辩的是吸烟有害健康。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) argue _____ sb about/over sth 与某人争论某事 argue _____ /against sth 赞成/反对某事 argue sb _____/out of doing sth 说服某人做/不做某事 argue that... 主张……,认为…… (2) argument <i>n.</i> 争论;辩论 have an argument (with sb) (about/over sth) (因某事)(与某人)争吵 It is _____ argument that... 无可争辩的是……
探究结论	(1) with; for; into (2) beyond

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① I'm not going to argue with you, but I think you're wrong.② It is beyond argument (argue) that the early years are important to a person's development.③ He is very stubborn (固执的), so it is impossible to argue him into doing what he doesn't want to.

(2) 完成句子

We try to argue her out of going there alone.
我们尽力说服她不要独自去那里。**2. apply v. 申请; 适用, 应用于 (与 to 连用)**(教材原文) After-school activities also play a part when students **apply** to college.
课外活动在学生申请大学时也有用。**一感** 读句子感悟用法She **applied to** the international school **for** a job as an English teacher.

她向这所国际学校申请英语教师的职位。

All the people who are willing to help others can **apply to join** the organisation.

所有愿意帮助他人的人都可以申请加入这个组织。

The rules of safe driving **apply to** everyone, without exception.

安全驾驶规则适用于每一个人, 没有例外。

After graduating from university, I'll **apply** what I have learned **to** my future job.

大学毕业后, 我会将所学知识应用到我未来的工作中。

Over the next months, he **applied himself to improving** the technique.

在接下来的几个月里, 他一门心思改进技术。

I am only one of the **applicants**, so I'm not sure whether my **application** can be accepted or not.

我只是申请者之一, 因此我不确定我的申请能否被接受。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) apply (to sb) for sth (向某人) 申请某事 apply _____ sth 申请做某事 apply to sth/sb 适用于/运用于某物/某人 apply... to... 把……应用于……; 把……涂抹到…… apply oneself to _____ sth 集中精力做某事, 专注于做某事 (2) _____ <i>n.</i> 申请人(尤指求职、进高等学校等) (3) _____ <i>n.</i> 申请, 申请书; 应用
探究结论	(1) to do; doing (2) applicant (3) application

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

① Next week is the deadline (截止时间) for sending in your application (apply).② This rule cannot apply to children.③ He is now applying himself to studying (study) traditional Chinese medical science.④ I'd like to apply for the position (职位) you advertised in *China Daily*.

语法探究

基本句型

续表

「语法感知」

- ① The sun rises in the east every day.
 ② The people present didn't know her.
 ③ This is an English-Chinese dictionary.
 ④ Would you please pass me that dictionary?
 = Would you please pass that dictionary to me?
 ⑤ I saw a stranger enter the building.

- 句①是主谓状(SVAd)结构,此类句型的谓语动词(短语)是不及物动词(短语)。
- 句②是主谓宾(SVO)结构,此类句型的谓语动词(短语)是一个及物动词(短语),后面必须跟宾语,常用作宾语的有名词、代词、不定式、动名词或从句等。
- 句③是主系表(SVP)结构,此类句型的谓语动词必须加上一个表明主语身份或状态的表语构成复合谓语,才能表达完整意思,这类动词叫连系动词。表语常由名词、形容词、介词短语、分词、不定式或从句充当。
- 句④是主谓宾宾(SVIODO)结构,即“主语+谓语+间接宾语+直接宾语”,句中的直接宾语也可提至间接宾语前,此时间接宾语前需加介词 to 或 for。
- 句⑤是主谓宾宾补(SVOOC)结构,谓语动词后要跟复合宾语(宾语+宾语补足语),常用作宾语补足语的有名词、形容词、介词短语、不定式、现在分词、过去分词等。

「语法精讲」

一、句子成分

句子成分包括以下几类:

成分	意义	位置
主语 S(Subject)	句子的主体;谓语陈述、说明的对象,说明动作由“谁”发出	位于句首
谓语 V(Verb)	表示主语的行为或状态,是英语句子的灵魂、核心	主语之后
宾语 O(Object)	表示行为或活动的对象、接受者或受影响者	动词或介词后
直接宾语 DO (Direct Object)	表示动作的承受者,一般是物	动词后

成分	作用	位置
间接宾语 IO (Indirect Object)	表示动作是对谁或为谁做的,一般是人	动词后
表语 P(Predicative)	用来说明主语的身份、性质、状态等	系动词后
宾语补足语 OC(Object Complement)	补充说明宾语的动作或状态	宾语后
状语 Ad(Adverbial)	说明动作何时、何地、如何发生;说明形容词或副词的程度	位置灵活

二、基本句型

1. S+V: 主语(Subject)+谓语(Verb)

The rain stopped. 雨停了。

The sun has risen. 太阳升起来了。

句型特点总结:谓语动词是不及物动词,本身能表达完整的意思,后面不需要接宾语。

2. S+V+Ad: 主语(Subject)+谓语(Verb)+状语(Adverbial)

We'll leave next week.

我们将在下周离开。

The old man is walking in the park.

那个老人正在公园里散步。

句型特点总结:本结构中充当谓语的不及物动词后常常跟状语才能表达完整的意思,状语包括时间状语、地点状语、方式状语、程度状语等。

3. S+V+O: 主语(Subject)+谓语(Verb)+宾语(Object)

We are learning English.

我们正在学习英语。

I don't know him.

我不认识他。

句型特点总结:谓语动词是及物动词,不能表达完整的意思,其后必须接一个宾语。

4. S+V(vi.+prep.)+O+Ad: 主语(Subject)+谓语(Verb)+宾语(Object)+状语(Adverbial)

I lived in Beijing five years ago.

五年前我住在北京。

They are waiting for the bus patiently.

他们正耐心地等公共汽车。

句型特点总结:本结构中的动词为不及物动词,所以必须加上介词才能跟宾语;另外加上状语表达的意思更完整。

5. S+V+IO+DO: 主语(Subject)+谓语(Verb)+间接宾语(Indirect Object)+直接宾语(Direct Object)

Her mother bought her a skirt.

她的妈妈给她买了一条裙子。

Mr Li told us an interesting story.

李先生给我们讲了一个有趣的故事。

句型特点总结:谓语动词后接两个宾语,这两个宾语都是动作的对象或承受者,其中指人的是间接宾语,指物的是直接宾语。当间接宾语放在直接宾语之后时,其前通常需要加介词 for 或 to。

6. S+V+O+OC: 主语(Subject)+谓语(Verb)+宾语(Object)+宾语补足语(Object Complement)

The news made us sad.

那个消息令我们难过。

The teacher asked us to answer the question.

老师叫我们回答那个问题。

We must keep our school clean.

我们必须保持我们的学校干净。

句型特点总结:谓语动词后虽然已经接了一个宾语,但意思还不完整,必须再加上另外一个成分(宾语补足语)对宾语进行补充说明。可以用作宾语补足语的有名词、形容词、副词、不定式、动名词、分词、介词短语等。

7. S+V+P: 主语(Subject)+系动词(Link Verb)+表语(Predicative)

My sister is a nurse.

我的姐姐是护士。

I feel quite hungry.

我感觉很饿。

The ball is under the desk.

那个球在书桌底下。

句型特点总结:谓语动词是系动词,不能表达完整的意思,其后必须接一个能表明主语特征、身份、状态

的表语。常见的系动词有 be(是), become(成为), get(变得), turn(变得), grow(变得), look(看起来), feel(摸上去), smell(闻起来), taste(尝起来), sound(听起来), seem(似乎), keep(保持), stay(保持)等。

名师点拨 ■■■■

巧记基本句型

英语句子千千万,基本句型把线牵;
句型种类看动词,后接什么是关键;
系词后面接表语,vi. 独身无牵连;
vt. 又可分三类,单宾双宾最常见;
还有宾语补足语,各种搭配记心间。

「语法冲关」

I. 选出下面句子分别属于哪种句型

- ①S V ②S V Ad ③S V O ④S V O Ad
⑤S V P ⑥S V IO DO ⑦S V O OC

- Peter told us a story. ⑥
- The man next to me smiled. ①
- I have a lot of books. ③
- She bought herself a new dress. ⑥
- He noticed a man enter the room. ⑦
- I will spend this summer holiday in the countryside. ④
- The water is clean in our hometown. ⑤
- I can hear birds singing in the green trees. ⑦
- The little girl smiled happily. ②
- I wrote a letter to Jane. ⑥

II. 翻译句子

- 他们举办了一场晚会来庆祝他们的成功。
They held a party to celebrate their success.
- 在业余时间我喜欢听流行音乐。
I enjoy listening to popular music in my spare time.
- 我的朋友打算给我做一顿饭。
My friend is going to cook me a meal.

课后素养评价(三)

I. 选词填空

debate; gain; stage; schedule; take up; sharp;
apply; topic

- We were afraid he would be nervous on stage, but he performed beautifully.
- There is a debate on whether students should have mobile phones at school.
- I am sorry to take up so much of your time.

- The knife is very sharp so you should be careful when using it.
- I'm writing to apply for the job in your company because I believe I am suitable for it.
- When talking with British people, you should be careful not to ask about personal topics.
- There is no need to worry about it for everything goes according to the schedule.

8. Many of his ideas have gained popular support which makes him feel glad.

II. 单句语法填空

- You sang beautifully (beautiful) last night, which surprised all of us.
- His great progress in English made us surprised (surprise).
- The young man whose wish is to become (become) a scientist is studying in a famous college.
- He found it important to master a foreign language when looking for a job.
- He asked me to come (come) back soon.
- In my opinion, his words sounded reasonable (reason).
- He succeeded in finishing (finish) the work in time with the help of his friend.
- I often hear her sing (sing) English songs in the next room.
- The super-thin plastic bags are (be) the main source of white pollution.
- What he said just now made all the audience very excited (exciting).
- What do you think of these arguments (argue) on the other side?
- The boy is quite intelligent (intelligence) but does not work hard enough.
- Ms Chilton says she hopes more people will volunteer to help (help) children.
- There are various (vary) ways to help protect our environment.
- He decides to go to France to study and is now applying himself to learning (learn) French.

III. 阅读理解

Tonya, Elsa and Mark are students at SAR Senior High School in New York City. It's a school with regular academic (学术的) classes, but it also gives special attention to the performing arts. Tonya likes dancing, Elsa wants to be an artist and Mark is a singer.

The students are all 15, and they're in the 10th grade. They study subjects like English, maths and science. They also choose a foreign language. Students have many academic classes, but during the school day they also take classes in the arts, like dance and music.

There are even more activities for SAR students after school. There are more than 40 clubs for students. For example, there's a movie club, a music club and an environment club. "We have so many choices," says Tonya. "I like taking photos. It's also a great way to meet people with common interests."

Students at SAR can also do many sports. For example, they can play basketball, tennis, volleyball and soccer. Students practise them after school. They compete against other high schools. Mark says, "At school, I study by myself. I'm a singer, and I do that alone, too. That's why I like playing on the basketball team. We work together and compete against other teams."

SAR offers various great classes, clubs and sports for students. Students at SAR get a good education and they also develop their own interests. Many SAR students become dancers, singers and actors!

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了 SAR 高中的学校生活情况。

- What do we know about SAR High School?
 - Students take art classes at night.
 - It places great importance on arts.
 - Students have few subjects to choose from.
 - It aims to develop students' language skills.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的 "... it also gives special attention to the performing arts." 可知, SAR 高中特别注重艺术表演, B 项中的 "places great importance on" 对应文中的 "gives special attention to"。故选 B。
- Which club will Tonya mostly choose?
 - The movie club.
 - The music club.
 - The photography club.
 - The environment club.

C 细节理解题。根据第三段中的 "I like taking photos. It's also a great way to meet people with common interests." 可知, Tonya 最有可能选择摄影俱乐部。故选 C。
- Why does Mark enjoy playing on the basketball team?
 - Because he likes teamwork.
 - Because it makes him try his best.
 - Because he hopes to build up his health.
 - Because it helps him make more friends.

A 推理判断题。根据第四段中的“*At school, I study by myself. I'm a singer, and I do that alone, too. That's why I like playing on the basketball team. We work together and compete against other teams.*”可知,Mark 喜欢在篮球队打球是因为他喜欢团队合作。故选 A。

4. Which of the following could be the best title for the text?

- A. Education at SAR
B. School Life at SAR
C. Top Students at SAR
D. SAR's After-school Activities

B 标题归纳题。根据最后一段中的“*SAR offers various great classes, clubs and sports for students. Students at SAR get a good education and they also develop their own interests.*”可知, SAR 为学生提供了许多优秀的课程、俱乐部和运动。SAR 的学生得到了良好的教育,他们也发展

了自己的兴趣。B 项具有高度概括性,适合作本文的标题。故选 B。

【微点写作】有关高中生活的日记

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

- At school, all the teachers work very hard. They encourage us to build up our confidence and inspire us to improve our study.
在学校,所有的老师工作都非常努力,他们鼓励我们树立信心并且激励我们提高学习成绩。
- The teacher told me that I should pay attention while he explained the usage of words and phrases.
老师告诉我在他解释单词和短语的用法时我应该集中注意力。
- I should make the most of the time after class.
我应该充分利用课后时间。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

学习任务及目标

- 识记本课时的重要语言点;
- 能够理解课文内容,正确认识课文中对高中生活的建议并作出自己的评价;
- 对高中生活这一话题有更深入的理解,从多角度发表自己对校园生活的观点;
- 正确运用所学知识,对高中的学习与校园生活提出建议并阐明原因;
- 学会批判性思维和创新思维,在发现高中生活中需改进的问题的基础上提出具体的解决方法。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇和表达的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇和表达

- award *n.* 奖,奖赏
- opportunity *n.* 机会,时机
- view *n.* (一次)观看
- former *adj.* 从前的
- graduate *v.* 毕业
- frightened *adj.* 受惊的,害怕的
- sight *n.* 看到,看见

- select *v.* 挑选,选择
- particular *n.* 细节
- refer *v.* 参考,查阅
- junior *adj.* 低年级的
- struggle *v.* 奋斗,拼搏
- memorise *v.* 记住,熟记
- forward *adv.* 向前
- improve *v.* 改善,改进
- performance *n.* (工作或活动中的)表现
- exchange *v.* 交流(信息、想法等)
- figure *v.* 认为,以为

19. specific *adj.* 具体的, 特定的
20. in particular 尤其, 特别
21. refer to 参考, 查阅
22. look forward to (兴奋地) 期待, 盼望
23. graduate from 从……毕业
24. be about to do 将要做……
25. as if 仿佛, 好像
26. deal with 应对; 处理
27. at the sight of 一看到
28. give... a hand 帮助……

(二) 阅读词汇和表达

1. hint *n.* 有益的建议

2. subscribe *v.* 订阅(报纸或杂志)
3. rainbow *n.* 彩虹
4. neat *adj.* 好的, 令人愉快的
5. journal *n.* 日记, 日志
6. skateboarding *n.* 滑板运动
7. committee *n.* 委员会
8. rate *v.* 对……作评估, 评价
9. Orientation Day 迎新日
10. go all out 全力以赴, 竭尽全力
11. hold one's head up 昂首向前
12. keep an open mind 开朗

「课文速览」

表格填空

High School Hints	
Starting senior high	• Make use of 1. Orientation Day to get to know the new school and the other students.
Dealing with new challenges	• Face them bravely and 2. go all out to see the final result. Don't be frightened of 3. failure .
Handling 4. disappointments	• Keep working hard.
The most important advice	• Give your friends a 5. hand when they need it.

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

1. What helped Lisa when she first started high school?
 - A. Her English teacher's advice.
 - B. Orientation Day.
 - C. Her parents' support.
 - D. Her friends' encouragement.
2. How did Lisa deal with the chemistry test at the end of the first week?
 - A. She decided to face failure bravely.
 - B. She asked her deskmate for help.
 - C. She refused to take the exam.
 - D. She was too frightened to write down the answers.
3. How did Lisa deal with her not being selected for the end-of-year competition?
 - A. She kept being angry.
 - B. She tried to forget it.
 - C. She forgot why she joined the team.
 - D. She kept working hard to support her teammates.

4. What is the purpose of Lisa using the words from Maya Angelou?
 - A. To tell us Maya Angelou is a great writer.
 - B. To tell us we should give our friends a hand when they need it.
 - C. To tell us she likes Maya Angelou best.
 - D. To tell us how to make friends.

答案: 1~4 BADB

II. 课文语法填空

Lisa **1. graduated** (graduate) from our school last June and is about **2. to go** (go) to college. She came to share her suggestions for high school **3. with** us. Lisa said Orientation Day was really **4. helpful** (help) when she first started high school, and it is a fantastic opportunity for new students to get to know the school and the other **5. students** (student). Though Lisa was a member of the school volleyball team, she wasn't selected for the end-of-year **6. competition** (compete). At first, she was

really sad, 7. but later she realized that she joined the team for the love of the sport. It wasn't just about winning. So she kept 8. working (work) hard to support her teammates during their training. Lisa 9. totally (total) agreed with the wonderful words from the writer Maya Angelou—"Be a rainbow in somebody else's cloud." So she suggested that we should give our friends 10. a hand when they need it. And this will make us feel good, too.

III. 阅读升华

- Which piece of advice is of great use for you? Why?
Give your friends a hand when they need it. Because only in this way can we make true friends.
- If you were Lisa, one student who isn't good at English wants to change the situation, what advice will you give to him/her?
Enlarge his/her vocabulary and keep doing some reading.

课后素养评价(四)

I. 单词拼写

- You can select (挑选) five things that represent Chinese culture.
- I happened to meet my former (从前的) English teacher this morning.
- Have you exchanged (交换) ideas with your parents about your new job?
- The listening ability can be improved (提高) as long as you practise listening every day.
- The girl said that she was a high school graduate (毕业生) and had no experience.
- His best movie, which won several awards (奖), was about the life of a scientist.
- A company whose profits from home markets are down may seek opportunities (机会) abroad.
- Carl took a long, deep breath, struggling (努力) to control his own emotions.
- He made a public apology for the team's poor performance (表现).
- The committee (委员会) is made up of five people, including two women.
- She figured (认为) that both she and Ned had learned a lot from the experience.
- I suggest that you ask him some specific (具体的) questions about his past.
- Liza was so frightened (害怕的) that she couldn't make a sound.
- The article on the Internet receives thousands of views (观看).
- I can't stand the sight (看见, 看到) of the boy who is very lazy!

- We had a great time—it was pretty neat (好的, 令人愉快的).
- Every day read a poem aloud several times until you have it memorised (记住).

II. 短语填空

refer to; at the sight of; look forward to;
for sure; in particular; deal with; at the end of

- I miss you very much; I am looking forward to your arrival as soon as possible.
- We'll have a quiz at the end of the class.
- I don't know when he will arrive so I can't tell you the time for sure.
- Parents and coaches in particular should act as better examples for children.
- There are so many mistakes in your writing so you must deal with them immediately.
- The famous scientist referred to global warming at least three times in his speech.
- The woman couldn't help screaming (尖叫) at the sight of that murderer.

III. 补全句子

- 他表现得好像他已经知道了这个结果。(as if)
He behaved as if he had known the result.
- 她断定自己准是把包落在火车上了。(must + have done)
She reasoned that she must have left her bag on the train.
- 除非被邀请, 否则我不会去参加他的聚会。(状语从句的省略)
I won't go to his party unless invited.

4. 一个灿烂的笑容不仅能使我们自己高兴,而且能使他人感到愉快。(not only... but also...)

A beautiful smile not only can make ourselves happy, but also can enable others to feel delighted.

IV. 七选五

So what's high school really like? Is there more work or more pressure? Will it be difficult to go from one of the oldest junior high school students to one of the youngest senior high school students?

1 Here are some tips for high school freshmen.

2 There are hundreds of teens experiencing what you are experiencing at this very moment! Although you may feel a series of different things, just remember that there are plenty of high school students feeling the same way. Put those feelings aside and give yourself a big smile!

You can make new friends. At the start of high school, a lot of high school students will probably prefer staying around the friends they already know.

3 As a result, it is almost impossible to make new friends. They may be too shy. So don't be afraid to go out and introduce yourself to a new person.

Don't be afraid to ask questions. If you don't understand why, ask your teacher right away! It's possible that your classmates also don't get it and want to ask the same question. 4

Join a club you like. High school is the time to try new things. 5 There are so many clubs to choose from, like the environmental club, Spanish club and so on. Many schools also offer many sports activities. Joining a club or sports team is also a great way to meet people.

A. You are not alone.

B. Go to be a volunteer.

C. Lots of freshmen have the same worries.

D. It seems like everyone already has a friend group.

E. You can turn to your teacher for help after class.

F. They'll be glad someone has asked the same question.

G. Luckily, high schools have many different kinds of clubs.

答案:1~5 CADFG

【微点写作】有关高中生活的日记

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. Do look out for spelling mistakes in your homework.

一定要当心你作业中的拼写错误。

2. I found my teachers and classmates kind and friendly.

我发现我的老师和同学都很亲切、友好。

3. The lessons were interesting and I made many good friends.

课程很有趣,并且我交到了许多好朋友。

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 了解日记的文体特征和内容特点,能够用日记记录日常生活的经历;
3. 能够掌握访谈的文体特征和写作方法;
4. 能够联系自身的学习与生活,深入思考如何开展高中生活、总结自己的经验与教训,培养正确的学习态度、生活态度和价值观。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中**黑体**单词的汉语意思

1. He received the **award** in recognition of his success over the past year. 奖, 奖赏

2. His income has been reduced to half its **former** amount due to the economic depression. 从前的

3. I **figured** that if I took the night train, I could be in Scotland by morning. 认为, 以为

4. This is the cause (事业) for which we have been **struggling**. 奋斗, 拼搏

续表

5. What I'm going to do in this lecture is focus on something very **specific**. 具体的, 特定的
6. It might present challenges as well as **opportunities**. 机会, 时机
7. It's said that a private **view** of the Summer Exhibition will be held. (一次) 观看
8. After graduating from a **junior** middle school, he entered a senior middle school. 低年级的
9. Rhodes is currently **rated** the top junior player in the country. 对……作评估, 评价
10. Timor Leste has joined many international sport associations (协会), including the International Olympic **Committee** (IOC). 委员会

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>subscribe</u> v. 订阅(报纸或杂志)	subscriber n. (报刊的) 订阅人, 订购者; 订户
	subscription n. 订阅, 订购; (报刊等的) 订阅费, 订购款
<u>graduate</u> v. 毕业 n. 毕业生	graduation n. 毕业
<u>frightened</u> adj. 受惊的, 害怕的	fright n. 惊吓, 恐怖
	frighten v. 使吃惊; 惊吓
	frightening adj. 令人害怕的
<u>select</u> v. 挑选, 选择	selection n. 选择, 挑选; 选拔
<u>particular</u> n. 细节 adj. 特定的, 特指的	particularly adv. 特别, 尤其
<u>refer</u> v. 参考, 查阅	reference n. 参考, 查阅
<u>memorise</u> v. 记住, 熟记	memory n. 记忆, 记忆力; 回忆
	memorable adj. 值得纪念的; 难忘的

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>improve</u> v. 改善, 改进	improvement n. 改善, 改进
<u>performance</u> n. (工作或活动中的) 表现; 表演	perform v. 演出; 表现; 执行; 起……作用
	performer n. 表演者; 执行者
<u>exchange</u> v. 交流(信息、想法等); 交换, 互换; 调换, 更换; 兑换	exchangeable adj. 可交换的; 可兑换的; 可调换的

III. 补全短语

- graduate from 从……毕业
- at the end of 在……结束的时候
- at the sight of 一见到……
- go all out 全力以赴, 竭尽全力
- deal with 处理, 应对
- in particular 尤其, 特别
- look back on 回顾, 回忆
- refer to 参考, 查阅
- around the corner 即将来临; 在拐角处
- look forward to (兴奋地) 期待, 盼望

IV. 重点句式补全

- 句型公式: as if 引导表语从句
I feel as if high school was only yesterday!
我觉得高中生活就像昨天发生的事一样历历在目!
- 句型公式: 现在分词作状语
Looking back on my high school life, the most important advice I'd give is these wonderful words from the writer Maya Angelou.
回顾高中生活, 我能给大家的最重要的建议就是作家玛雅·安吉罗的一句精彩名言。
- 句型公式: so... that... 引导结果状语从句
... but the teacher spoke so fast that I couldn't take everything down.
……但是老师讲得太快了, 我不能把所有东西都记下来。

任务型课堂

1. **frightened** adj. 受惊的, 害怕的

(教材原文) I was **frightened** at the sight of the test paper.

我一看到试卷就害怕了。

一感 读句子感悟用法

The little girl was **frightened** at the sight of the **frightening** snake and shook with **fright**.

这个小女孩一看到这条令人恐怖的蛇就感到很害怕, 吓得浑身发抖。

I'd never do that. I'd **be frightened to death**.

我绝对不会做那件事。我吓得要死。

She **was frightened that** the plane would crash.

她害怕飞机会坠毁。

He **frightened** the old lady **into signing** the paper.

他恐吓那位老太太签了字据。

The high price have **frightened off** many customers.
高价让许多顾客却步。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) be frightened of... 害怕…… be frightened to do sth 不敢做某事 be frightened _____ death 被吓得要死 be frightened that... 害怕…… (2) fright <i>n.</i> 惊吓, 恐怖 in fright 害怕 (3) frighten <i>v.</i> 使害怕; 惊吓 frighten sb into doing sth 恐吓某人做某事 frighten... _____ 把……吓走 frighten sb away 把某人吓走 frighten sb to do sth 恐吓某人做某事 frighten sb to death 把某人吓得要死 (4) _____ <i>adj.</i> 令人害怕的
探究结论	(1) to (3) off (4) frightening

名师点拨

frightening 和 frightened 同为形容词, 但用法却不相同。frightening 表示“令人害怕的”, 修饰物; frightened 表示“感到害怕的”, 修饰人以及人的表情、眼神、声音等。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

- It's frightening (frighten) to think it could happen again.
- The little girl was frightened (frighten) that her mother wouldn't come back.
- My hair stood on end with fright (frighten).

(2) 完成句子

- I'm frightened of walking home alone in the dark.

我害怕在黑夜独自走路回家。

- I'm too frightened to ask him now.
现在我吓得不敢问他了。

2. refer to 参考, 查阅; 提到, 谈到; 指的是

(教材原文) Refer to the interview for ideas.
参考这个采访来获取想法。

一感 读句子感悟用法

What I am going to say **refers to** all of you.
我要说的事和你们大家有关。

Our economy **is referred to as** a free market.
我们的经济被称为自由市场经济。

This **reference book** is very useful to our study.
这本参考书对我们的学习很有用。

This card should be kept on file **for reference**.
此卡应存案备查。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) refer to a dictionary = look up sth in a dictionary 查字典 refer to... _____ ... 称……为…… (2) reference <i>n.</i> 参考, 查阅 _____ book 参考书 _____ reference 备案, 备查, 供参考
探究结论	(1) as (2) reference; for

名师点拨

refer 的过去式、过去分词和现在分词都先双写“r”, 再加上“-ed”或“-ing”。类似的词有 prefer。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 写出下列句中 refer to 的含义

- What does the underlined word “it” in Paragraph 7 **refer to**? 指的是
- Don't **refer to** your notes or dictionary when taking a test. 参考, 查阅
- In his speech, he didn't **refer to** the problem at all. 提到, 谈到

(2) 完成句子

Teachers in kindergarten are referred to as leaders of children.
幼儿园老师被称为孩子王。

3. so... that... 引导结果状语从句

(教材原文)... but the teacher spoke **so fast that** I couldn't take everything down.
……但是老师讲得太快了, 我不能把所有东西都记下来。

一感 读句子感悟用法

He runs **so fast that** no one can catch up with him.
他跑得如此快以至于没人能追上他。

There were **so few guests that** the host felt very sad.

宾客如此之少, 主人感到很伤心。

There was **so much snow on the road that** the cars couldn't move fast.

路上雪太多, 汽车跑不快。

This is **such fine music that** it is worth listening to again.

这音乐太好听了, 值得再听一次。

They are **such lovely children that** we all love them.

这些孩子非常可爱, 我们都喜欢他们。

So hot a day was it **that** they all went swimming.
= **Such** a hot day was it **that** they all went swimming.

天气如此炎热,他们都去游泳了。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	<p>(1) so... that... 意为“如此……以至于……”,引导结果状语从句,so 后常接形容词或副词。常见形式:</p> <p style="text-align: center;"> $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{adj./adv.} \\ \text{adj.} + \underline{\hspace{2cm}} + \\ \text{可数名词单数} \\ \text{so} + \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{many/few} + \text{可数名词} \\ \text{复数} \\ \text{much/little(少)} + \\ \text{不可数名词} \end{array} \right\} + \text{that 从句} \end{array} \right\}$ </p> <p>(2) such... that... 也表示“如此……以至于……”,但 such 修饰名词。常见形式:</p> <p style="text-align: center;"> $\text{such} + \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{a/an} + \text{adj.} + \text{可数名词} \\ \text{单数} \\ \text{adj.} + \text{可数名词复数} \\ \text{+ 不可数名词} \end{array} \right\} + \text{that 从句}$ </p> <p>(3) 在“so... that...”和“such... that...”结构中,当“so/such...”位于句首时,其所在的句子要用 <u> </u> 倒装。</p>
探究结论	(1) a/an (2) adj. (3) 部分

名师点拨

so... that... 只能引导结果状语从句,而 so that 既可以引导结果状语从句,也可以引导目的状语从句,且 so that 引导的目的状语从句中常含有情态动词。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 选词填空: so, such

① Palsson screamed so loudly that her daughter came running from the house.

② There was such a terrible snowstorm that I could hardly see.

③ I have made such rapid progress in English that my parents are proud of me.

④ You can't imagine such little birds can eat so many insects in such a short time.

⑤ So curious were the couple about wild plants that they decided to make a trip to Brazil for further research.

⑥ (2023·新高考 II 卷改编) We also need to protect nature so that we can interact (交流) with it.

(2) 根据提示补全句子

① I was so nervous that (如此紧张以至于) I could hardly tell which direction was left.

② He liked it so much that (如此喜欢它以至于) he quickly walked into the shop.

③ It was such fine weather (天气如此之好) that we all went out for a picnic.

(3) 句型转换

He spoke Chinese so fluently that we thought he was Chinese.

→ So fluently did he speak Chinese that we thought he was Chinese.

写作探究

有关高中生活的日记

一、写作指导

日记是以记叙一天生活中所见、所闻、所做或所思为内容的一种文体。写英语日记一般要注意以下几点:

1. 规范的格式: 英语日记通常由两部分组成, 即书端和正文。书端用于记载写日记的日期和天气情况。它位于正文上面的第一行, 顶格写起。日期写在第一行的左上角, 天气情况写在第一行的右上角。
2. 正确的人称: 日记是对生活的记录, 是把自己一天中最有意义的事情记录下来所形成的书面材料, 故写日记多用第一人称。

3. 正确的时态: 日记一般记叙当天发生的事, 因此多用过去时态。但如谈论个人感悟或说明客观事实、普遍真理时, 可用现在时态。

二、典题示例

假定你是高一学生李华, 你进入高中已有一周。请根据下列提示用英语写一篇日记, 介绍你的新学校的情况。

1. 校园面貌;
2. 同学情况;
3. 校园生活。

三、审题谋篇

文体	日记
时态	以 <u>一般现在时</u> 为主
人称	以 <u>第一、三人称</u> 为主
要点	1. 导入话题 2. 介绍新学校的情况 3. 个人感受

四、遣词造句

(一) 核心词汇和表达

- ① campus *n.* 校园
- ② challenge *n.* 挑战
- ③ leave a deep impression on... 给……留下深刻印象
- ④ senior high 高中
- ⑤ put sb under pressure 使某人处于压力之下
- ⑥ go all out 全力以赴
- ⑦ take part in 参加
- ⑧ lead/live a very colourful school life 过一种丰富多彩的学校生活

(二) 完成句子

- ① I entered senior high (进入高中) a week ago.
- ② The new school left a deep impression on me (给我留下了深刻的印象).
- ③ The campus is large and beautiful with a lot of trees around (周边有很多树). (with 引导的复合结构)
- ④ They are all hard-working and it puts me under pressure (使我处于压力之下).
- ⑤ However, I decide to go all out (全力以赴) and face the challenges bravely (勇敢地面对挑战).
- ⑥ We can take part in all kinds of after-school activities (参加各种各样的课外活动).

(三) 句式升级

① 将(二)中句①升级为含由 since 引导的时间状语从句的句子

It is a week since I entered senior high.

② 将(二)中句④升级为含由 which 引导的定语从句的主从复合句

They are all hard-working, which puts me under pressure.

(四) 连句成篇

Tuesday September 8th

Sunny

It is a week since I entered senior high. The new school left a deep impression on me.

The campus is large and beautiful with a lot of trees around. Our classroom is big and there are forty-five students in our class. They are all hard-working, which puts me under pressure. However, I decide to go all out and face the challenges bravely. We can take part in all kinds of after-school activities. So we lead a very colourful school life.

All in all, I think that my first week at senior high is a very good experience.

五、学以致用

假定你是李华,今天(星期六,9月21日,晴)在公园散步时遇到一位外国游客。你和他进行了交流。请围绕这件事写一篇英语日记。要点如下:

- 1. 你想跟他谈话却不知所措;
- 2. 你向他介绍你所在的城市;
- 3. 他给你一些英语学习的建议。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

Saturday September 21

Fine

This morning when I was taking a walk in a park, I saw a foreigner enjoying the beauty of the city.

I wanted to talk with him, but I was so nervous that I didn't know how to start a conversation. Eager to practise my spoken English, I encouraged myself and went to say hello to him. He was very friendly and we talked for about 15 minutes. As a native, I introduced some tourist attractions and tasty food of our city to him.

Finally, he gave me some advice on how to improve my English further. What an unforgettable experience!

课后素养评价(五)

I. 单句语法填空

- There are several specific problems need to be dealt with.
- The whole meal was good, and the wine in particular was excellent.
- Miriam was too frightened (frighten) to tell her family what had happened.
- In his speech, the man referred to a recent trip to Canada.
- This job provides them an opportunity to develop (develop) new skills.
- James looks forward to meeting (meet) you to discuss the problem with you.
- They asked what his plans were after graduation (graduate).
- The actors even use the funny words to make their performances (perform) interesting and alive.
- The boy cannot help laughing at the sight of the toy he likes best.
- Eating fish can provide health benefits (益处), particularly (particular) to the heart.
- At the end of the game, players traditionally exchange shirts with each other.
- There has been a big improvement (improve) in the children's behavior.
- The young man struggles to live (live) on his own.
- In my view, watching the news on TV is a good way to learn English.
- He was awarded (award) the Nobel Prize for literature soon after the book was published.
- I had terrible problems memorising (memory) the new words in this book.

II. 完成句子

- Enjoy what you are about to read. And tell us what you think.
享受你将阅读到的一切。然后,告诉我们你怎想的。
- So excited was he that he could hardly say a word.
他如此激动,以至于几乎连话都说不出来了。
- It appears as if/though I was wrong.
看起来好像是我错了。

III. 语法填空

Every day many teens wake up frightened of **1. going** (go) to school. School bullying (校园欺凌) is a problem **2. that/which** affects millions of students, and it makes everyone **3. worried** (worry), not just the kids. Yet because parents, teachers and other **4. adults** (adult) don't always see it, they may not understand how bad bullying can be.

School bullying can threaten (威胁) students' physical and mental **5. safety** (safe) at school and can influence their ability to learn. There are **6. a** number of things you can do to make schools safe and prevent bullying.

If you see or hear someone being beaten, you should step in **7. to stop** (stop) the bullying right away. If you cannot stop it by yourself, then find someone who can. **8. It** is important to keep the bully away from the person he or she is bullying. Do not force the two parties to be in the same room together.

Bullying is a problem that can cause serious damage unless the problem **9. is solved** (solve) in time. Take any bullying that you hear about very **10. seriously** (serious). You might even need to call the police in some situations.

IV. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华,你的英国笔友 Mike 由于父母工作变动,要转到另一个城市的学校上学。他发邮件向你询问如何尽快融入新班级,请你用英语回复一封邮件,内容包括:

- 多交朋友;
- 多参加学校活动;
- 其他建议。

注意: 1. 80 词左右;

2. 可适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

Dear Mike,

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面的材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

The Voice of Rigo

Rigo had a loud voice. People were always telling Rigo to be quiet. His mother would tell him to use his quiet voice inside the house because the baby was asleep. His father would ask him to speak quietly in the car so that he could concentrate on his driving. His teacher would tell him to talk quietly so he would not bother others who were studying.

Not only did he have a loud voice, but Rigo liked to talk a lot. Whenever he had time, he would talk with his classmates, sharing everything that he considered fun. He liked to yell and shout. Sometimes he just yelled “Hey!” for no reason. He liked the sound of his very loud voice for he thought it had more penetrating (穿透的) power than that of an actor. But not everyone felt the same way.

When Rigo shouted goodbye as he left for school, his mother shook her head, “Rigo! Be quiet!” When his father drove him to school, Rigo said, “Hey! There’s Chris!” He pointed at his friend, who was walking to school. His father shook his head, “Rigo, use a quiet voice in the car.” At school, his teacher talked to him three times about using his quiet voice. His classmates shook their heads, throwing an upset look at him when he talked aloud.

Later, Rigo had to sit by himself for a while. His teacher wanted him to practise being quiet. Rigo had to sit quietly for five minutes. It felt like five hours or five days. When the five minutes was up, Rigo went to his desk and sat quietly. It was not easy.

After school, Rigo was waiting for his father when he saw Chris again. “Hey!” he yelled. “Chris! Hey!” The headmaster was walking by. Rigo was sure he was going to get in trouble for his loud voice. He looked quickly at the ground. Maybe the headmaster would keep walking.

注意:续写 150 词左右。

The headmaster stopped and looked at Rigo. _____

He said goodbye to the headmaster and ran to get into his father’s car cheerfully. _____

【参考范文】

第一节 应用文写作

Dear Mike,

Sorry to hear that you have difficulty adapting to the new school. Here are my suggestions.

First, you should get along well with your classmates and make friends with them. In this way, you will get to know each other better. Second, try to take part in as many school activities as possible, which are good for developing friendship with other students. Last but not least, consider turning to your teachers for help, who can usually give you some valuable suggestions.

I sincerely hope my advice will be of some help to you.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

The headmaster stopped and looked at Rigo. He waited at the roadside until Rigo raised his head. Confusingly, it seemed as if the headmaster had found a great treasure. Rigo twisted uneasily. “Do you like acting?” asked the headmaster. “I’ve never seen an actor who speaks louder than you. You are sure to become an extraordinary actor.” “Me? An extraordinary actor?” Rigo couldn’t believe his ears. “Yes, you,” the headmaster said. “A good actor must be able to speak aloud on the stage to make himself heard by every one of his audience. You can do that!” At that moment, Rigo saw his father. “By the way, a good actor knows he should use his quiet voice off the stage,” added the headmaster.

He said goodbye to the headmaster and ran to get into his father’s car cheerfully. “Dad, the headmaster said I was going to become an extraordinary actor!” he yelled proudly. The next second, he seemed to remember what the headmaster had told him, and lowered his voice, “Yes, I know when to speak at a loud voice.” His father was surprised at his change. Rigo then told him what happened just now and promised he would practise speaking quietly. Pleased, his father smiled, “Yes, you’re to become an extraordinary actor, for yourself, and for the headmaster.”

读后续写概述

一、读后续写是什么

读后续写要求考生在阅读一篇所给的不完整文章的基础上进行想象性和创新性写作。该题将阅读和写作相结合,是一种考查综合写作能力的题型。它既考查考生的阅读理解能力,又考查考生的语言表达能力和逻辑思维、发散思维与创新思维等高阶思维品质,体现了高考的基础性、应用性、综合性和创新性。

二、读后续写怎样考

(一) 考试形式

在高考中,读后续写题是第四部分的第二节,分值为 25 分,建议用时 30 分钟左右。该题为考生提供一段约 350 词的语言材料,要求考生依据该材料内容和所给段落开头语对给出的部分进行续写,将其发展成为一篇与所给材料有逻辑衔接且情节和结构完整的短文,续写词数限定在 150 词左右。

(二) 考情分析(以近三年新高考 I 卷为例)

年份	卷别	体裁	所给材料词数	主题	话题
2023	新高考 I 卷	记叙文	324	人与自我	作者在老师的鼓励下由不喜欢写作到喜欢写作的过程
2022	新高考 I 卷	记叙文	347	人与社会	残疾男孩参加越野跑比赛
2021	新高考 I 卷	记叙文	332	人与自我	双胞胎在母亲节给母亲做早餐

(三) 命题特点

所给文章为故事类记叙文,故事线索清晰,人物关系简单(师生关系、家庭成员关系、邻里关系等),故事情节略有起伏,给考生预留的创作空间较多。

(四) 评分标准

1. 从情节、语言和衔接连贯三个维度评价,具体为:

- (1) 情节的完整性、与原文的融洽度。
- (2) 词汇和语法结构的准确性、恰当性和多样性。
- (3) 上下文的衔接和全文的连贯性。

2. 词数少于 120, 单词拼写和标点符号错误较多, 书写较差以致影响理解的, 酌情扣分。

档别与分值	要求
第七档 (22—25 分)	内容丰富合理,富有逻辑性,续写完整,与原文情境融洽度高;词汇和语法结构多样且恰当,表达流畅,语言错误很少,且完全不影响理解;段落间、语句间衔接自然有效,全文结构清晰,前后呼应,意义连贯。
第六档 (18—21 分)	内容丰富合理,富有逻辑性,续写完整,与原文情境融洽度较高;词汇和语法结构比较多样且恰当,表达流畅,有个别错误,但不影响理解;语句间衔接比较有效,全文结构比较清晰,意义比较连贯。
第五档 (15—17 分)	内容基本合理,有一定的逻辑性,续写基本完整,与原文情境相关;词汇和语法结构比较恰当,表达方式不够多样,表达有些许错误,但基本不影响理解;使用了语句间衔接手段,全文结构比较清晰,意义比较连贯。
第四档 (11—14 分)	内容基本完整,但有的情节不够合理或逻辑性不强,与原文情境基本相关;词汇和语法结构简单,有部分语言错误和不当之处,个别部分影响理解;尚有语句间衔接意识,全文结构基本清晰,意义基本连贯。
第三档 (6—10 分)	在内容和逻辑上有一些重大问题,续写不够完整,与原文有一定程度脱节;所用的词汇有限,语法结构单调,错误较多且比较低级,影响理解;未能有效地使用语句间衔接手段,全文结构不够清晰,意义欠连贯。
第二档 (1—5 分)	在内容和逻辑上有较多重大问题,部分内容抄自原文,续写不完整,与原文情境基本脱节;所使用的词汇非常有限,语法结构单调,错误极多,严重影响理解;几乎没有使用语句间衔接手段,全文结构不清晰,意义不连贯。
第一档(0 分)	未作答;内容太少或无法看清;内容全部抄自原文或与题目完全无关。

三、读后续写怎样写

首先,仔细阅读题目要求;然后,确定写作步骤和方法。具体步骤如下:

第一步:速读所给材料,梳理故事要素(约需 8 分钟)

1. 在原文中标记故事的主要人物、事件发生的时间和地点。

2. 按顺序简要记录主要事件并概括人物的情感;找出故事冲突(扰乱性事件或问题);简要分析人物的性格和所给材料的语言特点(叙述和描写性语言、人物对话等)。

第二步:分析首句,确定续写方向(约需2分钟)

1. 细读所给续写段落的首句,结合故事情节和人物情感确定两段的故事走向。
2. 思考第一段尾句与第二段首句的过渡与衔接,做到自然连贯和融洽。
3. 确定第二段尾句的写法,以画面定格、呼应前文或哲理升华等方式结尾,突出正能量。

第三步:借助所给材料,完成续写内容(约需20分钟)

1. 根据确定的续写方向,一边构思故事情节,一边迅速完成两段的写作。注意每个段落要紧紧围绕一件事来写,通过叙述加描写的方式把主要情节写得丰富、细致。
2. 第一段主要写故事情节的推进,第二段主要写冲突的解决。注意前后两段在时空和人物情感上的转换,保持语言风格与所给材料一致。同时,要注意书写清晰,确保卷面整洁。

第一单元质量评估

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

I. 阅读理解(共15小题;每小题2.5分,满分37.5分)

A

Schuylerville High School students have a broad range of interests, which are reflected by the number of clubs and organisations in which our students participate. Here are some of the most popular clubs.

Environmental Club

Open to students in grades 9—12

Advisor: Mrs Flores

The High School Environmental Club is open to all students interested in increasing environmental awareness throughout the school. Activities include: recycling, environmental competitions, volunteering with green schools and outdoor events.

Freshman Class

Open to students in grades 9—10

Advisor: Mr Winslow

The Freshmen Class participates in several activities throughout the year to raise money for the class account. The class officers meet once a month to discuss business that affects the entire class. All members of the Freshman Class are encouraged to

participate in some type of community service during the year.

Literary Magazine

Open to students in grades 10—12

Advisor: Mr Sgambati

Members of the Literary Magazine collect, edit and often contribute to the body of student work. Literary Magazine meetings will also give students the opportunity to share and receive feedback on the creative pieces that they're working on, as well as the chance to learn about writing practices and strategies.

Mock Trial Team

Open to students in grades 11—12

Advisor: Mrs Lewis

Mock Trial is an after-school activity that helps students develop useful knowledge about the law. Students play out all the roles and use general rules of evidence and fact explanations in a school court. They will work with a real lawyer and an advisor to further understand the court process.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了 Schuylerville 高中的几个最受欢迎的俱乐部。

1. At which club can you take part in the community service?

- A. Environmental Club.
- B. Freshman Class.
- C. Literary Magazine.
- D. Mock Trial Team.

B 细节理解题。根据 **Freshman Class** 部分中的“... participate in some type of community service during the year.”可知,在 Freshman Class 你可以参加社区服务活动。故选 B。

2. What does Mock Trial Team aim to do?

- A. To encourage students to be lawyers.
- B. To develop students' writing skills.
- C. To explain all kinds of facts at school.
- D. To help students learn more about laws.

D 细节理解题。根据 **Mock Trial Team** 部分中的“... helps students develop useful knowledge about the law.”可知,Mock Trial Team 的目标是帮助学生更多的法律知识。故选 D。

3. Where is this text most likely from?

- A. A news report.
- B. A school website.
- C. A research paper.
- D. A science magazine.

B 文章出处题。根据第一段中的“Schuylerville High School students have a broad range of interests, which are reflected by the number of clubs and organisations in which our students participate.”及下文介绍了几个最受欢迎的俱乐部的招收对象都是学生可推断出,本文最有可能来自学校网站。故选 B。

B

I was said to be the worst student in my class and my family thought I was hopeless. I had to repeat the sixth grade. At that time a new teacher, Miss Sadia, came to our school.

One day after class, she noticed that I was staying alone during the lunch break. She came to me and began to talk to me. It was just a normal

conversation. After that day, she gave me much attention and it made me feel special. I started to work hard because she gave me the feeling that someone believed me, and my grades started to improve in her subject.

Months later, she moved into a house near my home. We would walk home together after school. Her constant support helped me, especially in my studies, as I knew she would check my grades both in her subject and the other subjects. I finally came second in my class.

Then, after the sixth grade, she started to drift apart but still kept a check on me. By the time I was in the seventh grade, she hardly spoke to me, but by then I had become the best in my class. When I left school, I was out of touch with her as she never answered the phone when I called her.

Then I graduated and went to a good university. One fine day, our paths crossed again. I met her at a wedding. I could not help asking her, “Why did you stop talking to me?”

“You are a clever boy. I wanted you to be a tree standing on your own roots, not depending on others. Now here you are and I feel proud of you. You are your inspiration and do not need to look for a shoulder,” she said. I could not say anything, but I smiled. I'll always thank her.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了成绩很差的作者在小学时遇到了一位名叫 Sadia 的老师,在她的帮助和鼓励下,作者的成绩很快就有极大的提升。然而在那之后,Sadia 老师不再和他交谈。作者在毕业后和老师的一次偶遇中才知道,原来老师是要让他独立,不要总是依赖别人。作者很感谢 Sadia 老师。

4. What can we know about the author in his first sixth grade?

- A. He did very badly in his studies.
- B. He found his teacher the worst.

- C. He didn't talk with his parents.
D. He was hopeful about his future.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“I was said to be the worst student in my class and my family thought I was hopeless. I had to repeat the sixth grade.”可知,作者学习很差。故选 A。

5. What made the author decide to work hard?

- A. An unusual conversation.
B. His previous teacher's support.
C. His parents' encouragement.
D. Miss Sadia's special attention.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“After that day, she gave me much attention and it made me feel special. I started to work hard because she gave me the feeling that someone believed me”可知,正是因为 Miss Sadia 的特别关注使作者决定努力学习。故选 D。

6. What does the underlined phrase “drift apart” in Paragraph 4 most probably mean?

- A. Be more friendly. B. Get angry.
C. Move away. D. Become less close.

D 词义猜测题。根据第三段中的“We would walk home together after school. Her constant support helped me”以及画线词后面的“By the time I was in the seventh grade, she hardly spoke to me”可知,作者和老师的关系由六年级时的亲密变成了七年级时的不太亲密,故画线词要表示这种变化。故选 D。

7. Why did Miss Sadia stop talking to the author?

- A. Because she just disliked talking to him anymore.
B. Because she wanted him to grow independent.
C. Because she was too busy with her own wedding.
D. Because she had no way to get in touch with him.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“I wanted you to be a tree standing on your own roots, not depending on others.”可推断出, Miss Sadia 之所以不和作者交谈,其目的是想让作者变得独立,不要总是依赖别人。故选 B。

C

In America, when the eighth graders leave the middle school, they are often worried about moving to the high school. It is a hard time for them, but it can be an exciting one as well. To make it easier, students need to get familiar with their school.

Even though they've done this already in the middle school, it's still important to find where their classrooms are. Most schools take students to the high school for a visit at the end of their eighth grade year. And, most schools also have a freshman (新生) speech for parents and students before the first year begins. Sometimes the main office will give away a map of the school. This can help students and parents to find different places in the school.

One way to know your high school more and make new friends is to join a club or play a sport. Schools often offer chances to join different clubs and sports. Fall activities begin in August before the first day of school. If you are not interested in sports, there are clubs for any interest, such as drama, dance, chess, photography, community service, etc. These clubs allow students from different grades. By joining an activity, students can find new friendships, not to mention improving their chances in future college applications (申请). The school office will have a list of activities offered at the school and information on how to join them.

What's more, to have a great start to a high school year, students can write down some of their worries, and ask for help from teachers and school workers.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。在美国,八年级的学生离开初中时非常担心进入高中。本文介绍了让高中新生尽快适应高中生活的几点建议。

8. According to the text, most students feel _____ when entering the high school.

- A. excited B. nervous
C. lonely D. disappointed

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“*In America, when the eighth graders leave the middle school, they are often worried about moving to the high school.*”可知,当要进入高中的时候,大多数学生会感到紧张。

9. Which of the following is TRUE about the school clubs?

- A. There are fewer students from higher grades in the school clubs.
B. The school clubs in high school only welcome sports fans.
C. Summer activities begin before school starts.
D. The school office can help new students join school clubs.

D 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“*The school office will have a list of activities offered at the school and information on how to join them.*”可知,学校为学生提供参加俱乐部和体育活动的机会来结识新朋友。

10. When do many schools take students to visit their new high school?

- A. Before the eighth grade year starts.
B. Right after the high school year starts.
C. At the end of their eighth grade year.
D. At the beginning of the new term in the high school.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“*Most schools take students to the high school for a visit at the end of their eighth grade year.*”可知,大多数学校会在八年级结束的时候带学生参观高中。

11. What is the purpose of this text?

- A. To tell the new students how to learn in high school.
B. To introduce new schools.
C. To give the teachers some advice.
D. To give advice to new high school students.

D 写作意图题。通读全文可知,这篇文章的目的是向高中新生提供建议。

D

A famous study was done in a school by a professor from a university. At the start of the school year, the teachers were given the names of five children. They were told that these five were the most excellent students in the class. But the fact was that these students were only average, and they were not the best students at all. Well, guess what? At the end of the year, all the five average students scored among the highest in the class. What made these average students change so much to become top students? The only difference was the change in their teachers' attitude. Because the teachers believed that these five kids were the top students, they expected more from them. And so these five average students began to believe and expect more from themselves. So they worked harder to do as well as they could.

Do you know why? If you expect the best from people, they'll usually want to give you their best. A great leader said, “*Treat a person just how he appears to be on the outside, and you'll make him even worse. But treat a person like he's already a success, and you'll help make him the best he can be.*”

Like the true story of 7-year-old Johnny, his teacher got so angry with him that one day she said, “*Johnny, you're the naughtiest boy in this class. I'm sure you'll never change.*” The next year Johnny had a new teacher. And on the first day of class, she met with Johnny after school and said, “*Johnny, I've heard a lot about you! But do you know that I don't believe a word of it.*” And every day after that, this new teacher treated Johnny as if he was one of the smartest students even when Johnny did naughty things. Later on, Johnny became a school leader.

Because that's the power of our belief and attitude towards children.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。文章通过举例论述了鼓励的重要性,态度和信任可以改变一个人。

12. The professor started his research by _____.

- A. teaching the five children himself
- B. asking the five children to find a new teacher
- C. telling the five students to work harder than ever before
- D. telling the teachers the five students were the best in the class

D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“*At the start of the school year, the teachers were given the names of five children. They were told that these five were the most excellent students in the class.*”可知,这位教授告诉老师这五个学生是班里最好的学生,以此开始他的研究。故选D。

13. The five average students became top students mainly because of _____.

- A. the professor's study
- B. the teachers' hard work
- C. the change in the teachers' attitude
- D. the change in the professor's attitude

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“*The only difference was the change in their teachers' attitude.*”可知,这五个普通学生成为优等生的原因主要是老师态度的改变。故选C。

14. Why did the writer tell us the story of 7-year-old Johnny?

- A. To let us know how good his new teacher was.
- B. To show the importance of encouragement.
- C. To show that the boy was clever enough.
- D. To let us know the famous boy.

B 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“*A great leader said, 'Treat a person just how he appears to be on the outside, and you'll make him even worse. But treat a person like he's already a success, and you'll help make him the best he*

can be.”可知,作者告诉我们七岁小孩 Johnny 的故事是为了说明鼓励的重要性。故选B。

15. What does the passage mainly tell us?

- A. If you want to get more, you should have new teachers.
- B. A professor's study can help you score highest.
- C. Only teachers can make you a top student.
- D. Attitude and belief can change a person.

D 主旨大意题。这篇文章通过举例论述了鼓励的重要性,态度和信任可以改变一个人。故选D。

II. 七选五(共5小题;每小题2.5分,满分12.5分)

How to Handle Being the New Kid at School

Being the new kid at school can be a terrible experience! It might seem like everybody else knows exactly how to act. But remember you aren't alone. Actually, everybody is nervous on their first day and you can fit right in with the help of the following tips.

Plan ahead the night before. 16 Lay out your first-day outfit (全套服装), pack a lunch, and make sure you have all your school supplies ready to go. Planning ahead can help you get a good night's sleep and feel less nervous about your first day.

17 Make sure your clothes are cleaned and pressed and that you've showered, brushed your teeth. If you're hoping to attract friends with similar interests, try wearing a shirt with your favourite show, musician, or sports team on it. 18

Do your best to stay calm and positive. It's normal to feel nervous and anxious when you're the new kid at school. If you feel nervous, start by taking some deep breaths. 19 You can listen to music that makes you feel calm and happy. Try imagining a good first day in your mind instead of keeping thinking about things that could go wrong.

20 Don't come in on the first day with your head hanging down, your shoulders lowered and your eyes on the floor. Walk with your head held

27. A. content B. poem
C. story D. saying
B 根据下文中的“Jim rose to his feet and recited (朗诵) *Ode to Grapefruit* just 31 he had written it.”可知,唐纳德让他的学生们每人写一首诗。故选 B。
28. A. respected B. inspired
C. disturbed D. surprised
D 根据上文中的“and learned that Jim stuttered (口吃)”可知,唐纳德没想到吉姆能写出如此好的诗,他感到很惊讶。故选 D。
29. A. recovered B. continued
C. disappeared D. existed
C 根据下文中的“The boy stuttered whenever he read aloud, but not when he recited from 34.”可知,吉姆在背诗时不口吃。故选 C。
30. A. in B. to
C. with D. on
B 根据空后的“the front of the class and read us”可知,唐纳德让吉姆到教室前面给大家读自己写的诗,此处指来到教室前面,come to 意为“来到”,符合语境。故选 B。
31. A. until B. before
C. as D. when
C 结合语境可知,此处应用 as 引导方式状语从句。故选 C。
32. A. clear B. secure
C. efficient D. horrible
A 根据后文中的“as a bell”可知,声音很清楚、响亮。故选 A。
33. A. raised B. lost
C. attracted D. recognised
D 根据空后的“one of the most powerful and familiar voices in the world”可知,这是唐纳德那天认可的最强大、最熟悉的声音之一。故选 D。
34. A. books B. teachers
C. materials D. memory
D 根据前文中的“The boy stuttered whenever he read aloud, but not when he recited”可知,吉姆凭着记忆力背诵时不口吃。故选 D。
35. A. large B. small
C. tough D. unique

B 根据后文中的“contain a voice as big as Jim's”可知,唐纳德比喻世界太小,容纳不下吉姆这么大的声音。故选 B。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Han Jing **36. entered** (enter) senior high school last week. Her first day at senior high **37. finally** (final) arrived after she had pictured it over and over again in **38. her** (she) mind. She was not outgoing and a little anxious. She wondered how to make a good first **39. impression** (impress).

She found that her first maths class was quite difficult, but the teacher was kind **40. and** friendly. He even told the students a joke **41. to make** (make) them laugh. In the afternoon, she had a chemistry class in the science lab. However, the student next to her tried to talk to her, which made **42. it** difficult for her to concentrate on the experiment.

However, after the first school day was over, Han Jing's worry disappeared. She didn't feel awkward and **43. frightened** (frighten) any longer. Although she missed her friends from junior high school, she believed that she would make new friends here. Now, she is curious **44. about** what she will learn and becomes more confident. She is looking forward to **45. having** (have) her next class.

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假定你是李华,你的英国笔友杰克刚刚升入高中,但他一时无法适应新的校园生活,写信向你征求建议。请你就此问题用英语给他回一封信,内容包括:

1. 不必过分焦虑;
2. 制订合理的学习计划;
3. 多参加集体活动,结交新朋友。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 可适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

参考词汇:适应 adjust to

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读下面的材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

It took place in a teacher's family. One day, Ben was playing basketball in the living room after school, when he accidentally threw the ball at a vase sitting on the shelf. The vase dropped to the floor and a large piece broke off. What made Ben more upset was that the vase was not a common decoration but an antique, which was handed down through generations from the 18th century. It was also his mother's favourite possession. To cover his terrible action, the terrified boy glued the pieces together hastily and put the vase back to its place.

As the mother herself dusted the vase every day, she naturally noticed the cracks (裂纹) that evening. To her surprise, the repair work was actually very good. At dinner time, she asked her boy if he broke the vase. Fearing punishment, the suddenly inspired boy said that a neighbour's cat jumped in from the window and he couldn't drive it away no matter how hard he tried. It raced around the living room and finally knocked the vase off its shelf. His mother was quite clear that her son was lying, for all the windows were closed before she left for work each morning and opened after she returned. However, in the face of her son's nervous eyes and the suspicious looks of other family members, Ben's mother remained calm. She realised she shouldn't just simply blame and punish her son for lying. She came up with another idea.

Before going to bed, the boy found a note from his mother in his room, asking him to go to the study at once. The boy thought he would now be punished but, as he had already lied, he was determined to deny everything to the end, no matter how angry his mum became.

In the study, calmly bathed in the light, his mother's face showed no sign of anger. On seeing her son push open the door and cautiously enter, she took a chocolate box out of a drawer and gave him one.

注意:续写 150 词左右。

The mother said, "This chocolate is a reward for your imagination; a window-opening cat!" _____

Now with some chocolates in hand, the boy's bad attitude disappeared. _____

【参考范文】

第一节 应用文写作

Dear Jack,

I am sorry to hear that you're having trouble adjusting to your high school life. Many students have the same problem when they go to a new school, so don't worry about it too much. I'm writing to give you some useful advice.

First, make a good plan for your studies. I think it will help you get used to the new studying environment in a short time. Second, make some new friends and take an active part in class activities. In this way you won't feel lonely and your school life will become colourful and interesting.

I hope my suggestions will work well with you.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

The mother said, "This chocolate is a reward for your imagination; a window-opening cat!" With his heart racing, the boy pretended to be irritated by her "false judgment", and stuck his hands in the pockets, "But it's not my imagination..." While he was ready for a battle, the mother, taking out the second piece, softly continued, "This one is for your quick wit at dinner." Staring at the chocolates with hesitation, he tried to tell whether she was tricking him. Still, he refused to reach for his reward. It didn't bother the mother, because she went for the third one, "And this one is for your perfect repair." This time, the boy, knowing that his mum had already discovered the whole story, slowly reached to the chocolates.

Now with some chocolates in hand, the boy's bad attitude disappeared. He lowered his head, mouthed several times and finally admitted his mistakes. Accepting his apology, the mother gently patted him on the back, and handed him one more chocolate. As the boy raised his eyes with puzzlement, she explained, "The last one is for your courage to confront your mistakes." Holding little Ben in her arms, the mother knew that her son would taste the bittersweet in his chocolates.

Unit 2

Exploring English

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas — Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点；
2. 能够通过标题、图片等元素推测和略读，获取课文大意，根据课文内容准确理解课文标题和作者的写作意图；
3. 能够通过精读获取重要信息，正确梳理信息之间的关系；
4. 了解英语发展与演变的历史以及英语在世界范围内的使用情况、学习情况和中国人的英语学习现状；
5. 能基于教材内容和自身实际，简要介绍英语的历史，初步分析中国英语学习者的数量持续增长的原因。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇和表达的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇和表达

1. title *n.* 题目, 标题
2. opposing *adj.* (观点、意见等)相反的, 相对立的
3. behavior *n.* 举止, 行为
4. confusing *adj.* 令人困惑的
5. unique *adj.* 独一无二的, 独特的
6. alarm *n.* 警报器; 闹钟
7. reflect *v.* 显示, 反映
8. creativity *n.* 创造性, 创造力
9. creative *adj.* 创造(性)的
10. have trouble doing sth 做某事有困难
11. get... doing sth 使……做某事
12. speaking of 讲起……; 说到……

(二) 阅读词汇和表达

1. ham *n.* 火腿

2. eggplant *n.* 茄子
3. pine *n.* 松树
4. pineapple *n.* 菠萝
5. sculpt *v.* 雕刻, 雕塑
6. sculpture *n.* 雕像, 雕刻品, 雕塑作品
7. seasick *adj.* 晕船的
8. airsick *adj.* 晕机的
9. carsick *adj.* 晕车的
10. homesick *adj.* 想家的
11. capitalized *adj.* 大写的
12. visible *adj.* 看得见的, 可见的
13. burn up 烧毁, 烧尽
14. burn down 烧毁
15. wind up 给(机械)上发条; 使(活动、会议等)结束
16. in one's free time 在某人的空闲时间
17. wonder at 对……感到诧异
18. fill in/out a form 填写表格
19. go off (警报器)突然发出巨响; 离开

「课文速览」

表格填空

Main ideas	Details
Questions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Why do people often have trouble 1. <u>learning</u> English? • How can English be a crazy language 2. <u>to learn</u>?

Main ideas	Details
Examples	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There's no 3. ham in a hamburger. • There's no 4. egg in eggplant. • There's no pine or apple in pineapple. • When the stars are out, they are 5. visible. • When the lights are out, they are 6. invisible. • When I wind up my watch, it 7. starts. • When I wind up this passage, it 8. ends.
Reasons	• English was invented by 9. people , not computers, and it reflects the 10. creativity of the human race.

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- Which of the following words does not have the same meaning as the others?
A. Seasick. B. Homesick.
C. Carsick. D. Airsick.
- How does the author support his/her idea in the passage?
A. By giving examples.
B. By asking questions.
C. By analysing.
D. By exaggerating (夸大) the truth.
- What does English reflect about the human race?
A. Crazyness. B. Instinct (本能).
C. Wisdom. D. Creativity.

答案: 1~3 BAD

II. 课文语法填空

Have you ever asked **1. yourself** (you) why people often have trouble **2. studying** (study) English? I hadn't, until one day my five-year-old son **3. asked** (ask) me whether there was ham in a hamburger. This got me thinking how English can be a crazy language **4. to learn** (learn).

For example, **5. in** our free time we can sculpt a sculpture and paint a painting, but we take a photo.

And when we are travelling we say that we are in the car or the taxi, but on the train or bus! While we're doing all this travelling, we can get seasick at sea, airsick in the air and carsick in a car, **6. but** we don't get homesick when we get back home. And speaking of home, why aren't homework and housework the same thing? Even the smallest words can be **7. confusing** (confuse). When you see the capitalized "WHO" in a medical report, do you read it as the "who" in "Who's that?" What about "IT" and "US"?

English **8. was invented** (invent) by people, not computers, and it reflects the **9. creativity** (creative) of the human race. That is **10. why** when the stars are out, they are visible, but when the lights are out, they are invisible.

III. 阅读升华

What do you think of the role that Chinese plays in the world? (Answers may vary.)

With the development of global economy, China is becoming stronger and stronger. The Chinese market attracts people all over the world so that the number of people speaking Chinese is getting larger and larger.

课后素养评价(六)

I. 阅读理解

There is an old saying that America and Britain are "two nations divided by a common language". No one knows exactly who said this, but it reflects the way many British people feel about American

English. But are American and British English really so different?

Vocabulary

The most obvious difference between American and British English is vocabulary. There are hundreds of

everyday words that are different. For example, Americans go on vacation while British people go on holiday; New Yorkers live in apartments while Londoners live in flats. There are far more examples than we can talk about here. Fortunately, most Americans and British people can usually guess the meaning through the context of a sentence.

Past Tense Verbs

You'll also find some differences in past forms of irregular verbs. The past tense of "learn" in American English is "learned". British English has the option of "learned" or "learnt". The same rule applies to "dreamed" and "dreamt", "burned" and "burnt", and "leaned" and "leant". Americans tend to use the -ed ending; British people tend to use the -t ending.

Spelling

There are hundreds of slight spelling differences between British and American English. Noah Webster, an author, politician and teacher, made an effort to reform English spelling in the late 1700s.

Webster wanted to spell words the way they sounded. You can see Webster's legacy (遗产) in the American spelling of words like color (from colour), honor (from honour), and labor (from labour).

Not So Different After All

British and American English have far more similarities than differences. With the exception of some regional dialects, most British people and Americans can understand each other without too much difficulty. They watch each other's TV shows, sing each other's songs and read each other's books. They even make fun of each other's accents (口音).

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了英式英语和美式英语的不同之处:词汇、动词过去式、拼写。尽管有不同,但这并不影响两国人的交流。

1. Which of the following is a group of American words?

- A. Vacation; holiday.
- B. Apartment; flat.
- C. Vacation; apartment.
- D. Holiday; flat.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Vocabulary** 部分中的 "For example, Americans go on vacation while British people go on holiday; New Yorkers live in apartments while Londoners live in flats." 可知, vacation 和 apartment 都是美国人用的词汇。故选 C。

2. Which word can replace the underlined word "option" in the text?

- A. Choice.
- B. Change.
- C. Structure.
- D. Use.

A 词义猜测题。根据画线词后面的 "'learned' or 'learnt'" 可知,关于 learn 的过去式英国人可以写 learned 也可以写 learnt,即他们可以在这两种写法中任选一个。由此可以推测出画线词 option 的意思是"选择"。故选 A。

3. What do we know about British and American English from the last paragraph?

- A. They both have some strange words.
- B. They are affecting people using them.
- C. They connect people of the two countries.
- D. Their differences have little effect on communication.

D 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的 "British and American English have far more similarities than differences. With the exception of some regional dialects, most British people and Americans can understand each other without too much difficulty." 可知,英式英语和美式英语的相似之处远多于不同之处,除了一些方言,英国人和美国人之间的交流是没有多大问题的。故选 D。

4. What can be the best title for the text?

- A. Ways to Tell British English from American English
- B. Differences between British and American English
- C. Development of British and American English
- D. Difficulty for British People and Americans to Understand Each Other

B 标题归纳题。根据第一段中的 "But are American and British English really so different?", **Vocabulary** 部分中的 "The most obvious difference between American and British English is vocabulary.", **Past Tense Verbs** 部分中的 "You'll also find some differences in past forms of irregular verbs." 及 **Spelling** 部分中的 "There are hundreds of slight spelling differences between British and American English." 可知,本文主要介绍了英式英语和美式英语的不同之处。故 B 项可以作本文的最佳标题。

II. 七选五

Some people learn a second language easily. Other people have trouble learning a new language. How can you help yourself learn a new language, such as English? 1

◆ Be patient.

You do not have to understand everything all at once. 2 We can learn from our mistakes.

◆ Practise your English.

For example, write in a journal every day. You will get used to writing in English, and you will feel comfortable expressing your ideas in English. After several weeks, you will see that your writing is improving.

3 You can practise with your classmates outside class. You will all make mistakes, but gradually you will become comfortable communicating in English.

◆ 4

Be positive about learning English and believe that you can do it. If you believe that you can learn, you will learn.

◆ Keep a record of your language learning.

After each class, think about what you did. Did you answer a question correctly? Did you understand anything the teacher explained? Perhaps the lesson was difficult, but you tried to understand it. 5

It is important to practise every day and make a record of your achievements. You will enjoy learning English, and you will have more confidence in yourself.

- Feel confident about learning English.
- Write these achievements in your journal.
- Besides, you must speak English every day.
- Making mistakes is an unavoidable part in your life.
- Share your achievements with your parents and friends.
- It is natural for you to make mistakes when you learn something new.
- The following are several tips to make learning English a little easier and more interesting.

答案: 1~5 GFCAB

【微点写作】有关误解的故事

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

- Fred invited me and some other classmates to have dinner at his home.
弗雷德邀请我和其他一些同学去他家吃晚饭。
- After all the dishes were served, he told us that he had bigger fish to fry.
当所有的菜都上桌后,他告诉我们他有更重要的事要办。
- We all expected he would bring us some fish but he came back with nothing.
我们都以为他会给我们带些鱼来,但他什么也没带回来。

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas

Language points

学习任务及目标

- 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
- 思考并理解英语的奇妙之处,理解英语词汇背后蕴藏的文化内涵,并就此发表自己的观点;
- 基于课文内容,联系自己的英语学习实践,树立正确的英语学习观,培养对英语学习的信心和兴趣。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中**黑体**单词的汉语意思

- The **title** of a passage gives readers very important information about the main idea of it. 标题
- The first letter in an English sentence should be **capitalized**. 大写的
- It's believed that it's language that makes the

human race **unique**.

独一无二的,独特的

- The rain had stopped and a star or two was **visible** over the mountains. 看得见的,可见的

- A **ham** is the upper part of a pig's leg, or the meat from this that has been preserved (腌制) with salt or smoke. 火腿

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>sculpt</u> <i>v.</i> 雕刻, 雕塑	<u>sculpture</u> <i>n.</i> 雕像, 雕刻品, 雕塑作品
	sculptor <i>n.</i> 雕塑家
<u>opposing</u> <i>adj.</i> (观点、意见等) 相反的, 相对立的	oppose <i>v.</i> 反对, 对抗, 使对立
	opposed <i>adj.</i> 反对的, 对立的, 敌对的
<u>behavior</u> <i>n.</i> 举止, 行为	behave <i>v.</i> 表现
<u>confusing</u> <i>adj.</i> 令人困惑的	confuse <i>v.</i> 使困惑
	confused <i>adj.</i> 感到困惑的
	confusion <i>n.</i> 混乱, 困惑
<u>reflect</u> <i>v.</i> 显示, 反映	reflection <i>n.</i> 反射; 反映; 映像; 沉思, 深思
	reflective <i>adj.</i> 反射的; 反映的; (指物体表面) 反光的; (指人、心情等) 深思熟虑的
<u>alarm</u> <i>n.</i> 警报器; 闹钟	alarming <i>adj.</i> 惊人的, 吓人的
	alarmed <i>adj.</i> 惊恐的; 忧虑的; 装有警报的
<u>creativity</u> <i>n.</i> 创造性, 创造力	<u>creative</u> <i>adj.</i> 创造(性)的
	create <i>v.</i> 创造
	creator <i>n.</i> 创造者, 创作者
	creation <i>n.</i> 创造; 产物

III. 补全短语

1. have trouble (in) doing sth 做某事有困难
2. in one's free time 在某人的空余时间
3. speaking of 提到, 谈到
4. look out of 向外看
5. burn up/down 烧毁
6. fill in/out a form 填表格
7. go off (警报器)突然发出巨响; 离开
8. wind up 给(机械)上发条; 使(活动、会议等)结束

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: neither... nor...

Neither is there pine nor apple in pineapple.

pineapple(菠萝)里既没有 pine(松树), 也没有 apple(苹果)。

2. 句型公式: That is why... 句型

That is why when the stars are out, they are visible, but when the lights are out, they are invisible.

这就是为什么 stars are out(星星出现了)时, 我们能看到星星, 而当 lights are out(灯光熄灭了)时, 我们却看不到灯光。

任务型课堂

1. confusing *adj.* 令人困惑的

(教材原文) Even the smallest words can be **confusing**.

即使是最短小的单词也可能让人费解。

一感 读句子感悟用法

I always **confuse her with** her twin sister: they look so alike.

我总是分不清这对双胞胎姐妹——她们长得太像了。

If you have questions or **are confused about** anything, email me.

如果你有问题或是对什么事有疑问, 发邮件给我。

He looked at me **in confusion** and did not answer the question.

他困惑地看着我, 并没有回答这个问题。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) confuse... _____ ... 分不清……和…… (2) confused <i>adj.</i> 困惑的, 糊涂的; 不清楚的, 混乱的, 难懂的 be confused _____ ... 对……感到疑惑 (3) confusion <i>n.</i> 困惑, 不确定; 混乱, 骚乱; 辨别不清, 混淆 _____ confusion 困惑地
探究结论	(1) with/and (2) about (3) in

名师点拨

-ing 形式的形容词往往表示“事物”的性质和特征,意为“……的;令人……的”;-ed 形式的形容词往往表示“人”所处的状态,常用来描述人,意为“感到……的”。另外,修饰 face, look, expression, voice 等时,常用-ed 形式的形容词。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① I think it's a serious mistake to confuse work with/and life.

② They confused me by asking so many confusing questions. I was totally confused, standing there in confusion, not knowing what to do. (confuse)

(2) 完成句子

I love learning new words, but I am confused about how to remember them well.

我喜欢学习新单词,但是我对如何记忆单词感到困惑。

2. reflect v. 显示,反映

(教材原文) English was invented by people, not computers, and it **reflects** the creativity of the human race.

英语是人创造的,不是计算机发明的,它反映了人类的创造力。

一感 读句子感悟用法

The manager needed more time to **reflect on/upon** what to do.

经理需要更多的时间来思考做什么。

Usually a child's behavior is a **reflection** of his/her family environment.

通常一个孩子的行为是他/她家庭环境的反映。

On/Upon reflection, we decided to change our plan.

经再三思考,我们决定改变计划。

If you're walking at night, wear a piece of **reflective** clothing.

如果你走夜路的话,要穿一件反光的衣服。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) reflect _____ sth 认真思考某事 (2) reflection <i>n.</i> 反射;反映;映像;沉思,深思 _____ reflection 经再三思考 be lost in reflection 陷入沉思中 (3) _____ <i>adj.</i> 反射的;反映的;反省性的; (指人、心情等)深思熟虑的;(指物体表面)反光的
探究结论	(1) on/upon (2) on/upon (3) reflective

名师点拨

reflect 还有“反射(声、光、热等);表达;反思,认真考虑;映出(影像)”之意。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① His face was reflected (reflect) in the big mirror when he passed by.

② On dark nights, children should wear reflective (reflect) clothing.

(2) 完成句子

At first, I thought it was a bad idea, but on/upon reflection, I realised she was right.

最初我认为那是个坏主意,但经再三思考,我意识到她是对的。

3. That is why... 句型

(教材原文) **That is why** when the stars are out, they are visible, but when the lights are out, they are invisible.

这就是为什么 stars are out(星星出现了)时,我们可以看到星星,而当 lights are out(灯光熄灭了)时,我们却看不到灯光。

[句式分析] That is why... 后接表语从句,意为“这就是为什么……”。

一感 读句子感悟用法

He fell from a tall tree. **That was why** he hurt his leg.

= He hurt his leg. **That was because** he fell from a tall tree.

= **The reason why** he hurt his leg **was that** he fell from a tall tree.

他从一棵很高的树上摔下来。这就是他弄伤腿的原因。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) This/That is/was why... 这/那就是……的原因(why 引导表语从句,表示 _____) (2) This/That is/was because... 这/那是因为……(because 引导表语从句,表示 _____) (3) The reason why... is/was that... ……的原因是……(why 引导 _____ 并在从句中作状语; that 引导表语从句,表示原因)
探究结论	(1) 结果 (2) 原因 (3) 定语从句

三评 多维度评价测试

句型转换

Tom came late for the meeting because he was ill.

→ Tom was ill. That was why he came late for the meeting.

→ Tom came late for the meeting. That was because he was ill.

→ The reason why Tom came late for the meeting was that he was ill.

课后素养评价(七)

I. 单词拼写

- I will not stand for behavior (行为) of that kind in my house.
- I have a friend who has the opposing (相反的) view on this rule.
- Do you think this creative (创造性的) toy will help children with their creativity (创造力)?
- The problems being discussed here are not unique (特有的) to this country.
- A drop in consumer spending reflects (反映) people's worry about the economy.
- It is 7 a.m. and the alarm (闹钟) is going off.
- His writing is so confusing (令人困惑的) that it's difficult to make out what he is trying to express.
- The title (题目) of a passage should be interesting and attractive.

II. 短语填空

speaking of; wind up; burn down; according to; go off

- According to the historian, the temple has a history dating back to the early Tang Dynasty.
- Let's leave the fire to burn down and go into our tents (帐篷).
- The speaker who graduated from Peking University soon wound up his speech.
- The alarm did go off this morning but I turned it off and went back to sleep.
- When speaking of Paris, I always think of the Eiffel Tower.

III. 完成句子

- He didn't go out until he finished his homework.
直到做完作业他才出去。
- Neither they nor Mary wants to go there with me.
他们和玛丽都不想和我一起去那里。
- It makes no difference to me whether you leave or stay.
你是离开还是留下对我毫无影响。
- Do you have trouble (in) finishing the work on time?
按时完成这项工作对你来说有困难吗?
- Tom was ill and that was why he was late for the meeting.
汤姆病了,这就是他开会迟到的原因。

IV. 完形填空

Mr Wu is an English teacher. Last Monday at the beginning of class, he 1 asked his students how their weekends had been. One girl said that she had spent a 2 weekend—she had her wisdom teeth pulled out and they still hurt. “Why do you always seem to be so happy, Mr Wu?” she asked.

The girl's 3 reminded Mr Wu of something he had read somewhere before.

“Every morning when you get up, you have a choice about how you want to spend that day,” Mr Wu said with a smile. “I 4 to be cheerful.”

“And today is my lucky day,” he added.

“5?” The whole class were curious.

“This morning, I 6 to school as usual. I only had to go another kilometre down the road when my e-bicycle broke down...”

“Your e-bicycle broke down and it's your lucky day?” The students were 7.

“What do you mean, Mr Wu?”

“My e-bicycle broke down a quarter before class, so I 8 it on the roadside, took my books, and walked down the road. It took me ten minutes to arrive at the 9. I live eight kilometres away. My e-bicycle could have broken down 10 along the way. But it didn't. 11, it broke down in the perfect place—off the main road, within walking distance of here. I'm still able to teach my class 12 I'll be able to get it repaired after class. If my e-bicycle must break down 13, it couldn't be arranged (安排) in a better way.”

The students' eyes opened wide, and then they smiled. Mr Wu smiled, too. His story had 14 them. He was happy that they had a perfect chance to consider 15 in a new way.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了英语老师 Mr Wu 上班路上电动自行车坏了,但他却称这一天是幸运的。Mr Wu 用这件事教育学生用新的方式看待“幸运”这件事。

- A. proudly
- B. cheerfully
- C. seriously
- D. angrily

Section III Using language

学习任务及目标

1. 复习英语中常见的构词法,能够根据构词规律推断词义、进行单词重构;
2. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
3. 初步了解并说明英式英语和美式英语在拼写方式、词汇使用等方面的差异,开阔国际视野;
4. 听录音,能够在真实语境中询问和解释英语词汇和表达的意义;
5. 初步认识英语的发展和差异性,了解、分析语言与社会经济、文化发展的关系,提高分析问题的能力,从跨文化视角观察和认识世界。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. If you have any questions about it, you can **contact** me by email. 联系
2. Can you guess the meaning of the word from the **context**? 上下文,语境
3. A 24-year-old woman in Nanjing was given a warning ticket for eating food on the **subway**. 地铁
4. What **type** of music do you like best? And why? 类型,种类

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
unfamiliar <i>adj.</i> 不熟悉的,不了解的	familiar <i>adj.</i> 熟悉的,了解的
organization <i>n.</i> 组织,团体,机构	organize <i>v.</i> 组织,筹备,安排
	organized <i>adj.</i> 有组织的,系统的,有条理的
	organizer <i>n.</i> (活动等的)组织者
likely <i>adj.</i> 可能的,可能发生的	unlikely <i>adj.</i> 不大可能发生的
addition <i>n.</i> 增加物,添加物	add <i>v.</i> 增加,补充说
	additional <i>adj.</i> 附加的,额外的

III. 补全短语

1. come **across** 偶然发现,偶然遇见
2. add... **to** ... 把……加到……
3. the other way **round** 反过来,倒过来
4. calm **down** 平静下来;镇定下来
5. be made up **of** 由……组成
6. be referred to **as** 被称作,被看作
7. be short **for** 是……的简称;是……的缩写
8. be different **from** 与……不同

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式:现在分词作状语
But many of them are formed using other simpler words.
但其中许多是用其他更简单的词构成的。
2. 句型公式:过去分词(短语)作定语
Words formed by combining other words are called compounds...
由其他单词组合而形成的单词称为复合词……
3. 句型公式:as+形容词原级+as
It's not as confusing as it seems...
它并不像看上去那么难以理解……

任务型课堂

1. addition *n.* 增加物,添加物

(教材原文)Each year, many **additions** are made to English dictionaries.
每年,英语词典都会收录许多新的词汇。

一感 读句子感悟用法

In addition to the amazing martial arts, the film also took advantage of China's beautiful mountains, forests and deserts.

除了惊人的武术以外,影片还利用了美丽的山脉、森林和沙漠。

Add up all the expenses and you'll find that you cannot afford the trip.

把所有的费用加起来,你会发现你负担不起旅游费用。

As is known to all, good friends **add** happiness and value **to** life.

众所周知,好朋友会给生活增添快乐,使生活更有意义。

The engine of the ship was out of order and the bad weather **added to** the helplessness of the crew at sea.

船的发动机失灵了,并且恶劣的天气增加了全体船员在海上的无助感。

An **additional** charge is made on baggage exceeding the weight allowance.

行李超重额外收费。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) in addition 除此之外 in addition _____ 除……以外(还) (2) add <i>v.</i> 增加,添加;加,相加;补充说 add up 合计;把……加起来 add... to... 把……加到/进……里 add up to 加起来共计/达(不用于被动语态) add _____ 增加,增添 (3) additional <i>adj.</i> 附加的,额外的,另外的
探究结论	(1) to (2) to

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 语段填空

The president said it was not easy to manage a company, adding (add) that the financial crisis (金融危机) added to the difficulties. The week before, he added up all the expenses and the total added up to more than 100,000 *yuan*.

(2) 完成句子

In addition, we should learn how to get along well with others.

此外,我们应该学会如何与他人友好相处。

2. as... as...

(教材原文) It's not **as** confusing **as** it seems; usually people from the two countries can understand each other from the context.

它并不像看上去那么难以理解:通常,来自这两个国家的人们可以通过语境互相理解。

一感 读句子感悟用法

The girls are **as** busy with their work **as** bees.
这些女孩就像蜜蜂一样忙于她们的工作。

Judy goes to the movies **as often as** Sara does.
朱迪像萨拉一样经常去看电影。

He is **as nice a boy as** Peter (is).
他是一个像彼得一样的好孩子。

She has **as many friends as** Mary (does).
她和玛丽有一样多的朋友。

I can carry **as much paper as** you can.
我能和你搬一样多的纸。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) as... as... 意为“像/和……一样……”,表示同级比较,两个 as 之间通常使用形容词或副词的_____。第一个 as 作_____,第二个 as 作_____,引导比较状语从句。as... as... 的否定形式为 not as/so... as... (不和……一样……)。 (2) as... as... 结构还有以下三种常见形式: $\begin{cases} as + adj. + a(n) + \text{可数名词单数} + as... \\ as + many + \text{可数名词复数} + as... \\ as + much + \text{不可数名词} + as... \end{cases}$
探究结论	(1) 原级;副词;连词

名师点拨

(1) 在“as... as...”结构中,第二个 as 引导的比较状语从句,常常省去与主句相同的部分,只留下相比较的部分。

(2) 在“as... as...”结构中,第二个 as 引导的比较状语从句,常用助动词或情态动词的某种形式代替与主句相同的谓语部分。

三评 多维度评价测试

翻译句子

①这本书就像我期待的那样有趣。

This book is just as interesting as I expected.

②我没有过去那么忙了。

I am not as/so busy as I used to be.

③她的嗓音像她母亲的一样甜美。

Her voice is as sweet as her mother's.

④他的钱和约翰的一样多。

He has as much money as John (does).

⑤你犯的错误和我犯的一样多。

You've made as many mistakes as I (have).

语法探究

构词法

续表

「语法感知」

① chairman 主席 newspaper 报纸 hometown 家乡
airport 机场 sunrise 日出

② disagree 不同意 incomplete 不完全的 unfair 不公平的
reuse 再利用 telephone 电话

③ reader 读者 inventor 发明家 Chinese 中国人
Indian 印度人 artist 艺术家 kindness 和蔼 operation
手术

④ hand 手/递 clean 干净的/弄干净 shade 阴凉/遮蔽
taste 美味/品尝

1. ①组中的单词是将两个单词合并在一起,形成一个
新的单词。这种构词法被称为合成法。

2. ②组中的单词都是在各自的词根前加了不同的前
缀,如 dis-, in-, un-, re-, tele-等;③组中的单词
是在各自的词根后加了不同的后缀,如-er, -or, -
ese, -ian 等;②③组中单词的构词法被称为派
生法。

3. ④组中单词的构词法被称为转化法。

「语法精讲」

一、理解概念

在英语中,单词的构成方法主要有三种:合成法
(Compounding)、转化法(Conversion)和派生法
(Derivation)。合成法是指由两个或更多的词合成一
个词。转化法是指把单词的一种词性用作另一种词
性而词形不变。派生法是指由一个词根加上前缀或
后缀构成另一个词。

二、语法规则

(一)合成法

合成词就是由两个或更多的词合成一个词,有时用连
字符“-”连接,有时直接写在一起,有时分开写。常见
的合成词主要有以下几种:

1. 合成名词

构成方式	例词
名词/代词+名词	blood-test 验血 weekend 周末
名词+动名词	sightseeing 观光 handwriting 书法
形容词+名词	freeway 高速公路 blackboard 黑板

构成方式	例词
动名词+名词	freezing point 冰点 reading room 阅览室
动词+名词	washroom 厕所 pickpocket 扒手
动词+副词	breakthrough 突破 get-together 联欢会
副词+动词	outbreak 爆发 downfall 垮台

还有一些以其他方式构成的合成名词。如 well-
being 健康, by-product 副产品, good-for-nothing
无用之人, go-between 中间人, commander-in-
chief 总司令。

2. 合成形容词

构成方式	例词
形容词+-ed 结尾的形容词	noble-minded 高尚的 good-tempered 脾气好的
形容词+现在分词	good-looking 好看的 fine-sounding 动听的
形容词+名词	high-class 高级的 large-scale 大规模的
名词+形容词	duty-free 免关税的 airsick 晕机的
名词+现在分词	peace-loving 热爱和平的 English-speaking 讲英语的
名词+过去分词	man-made 人造的 snow-covered 被雪覆盖的
副词+现在分词	hard-working 勤劳的 far-reaching 深远的
副词+过去分词	well-behaved 行为端正的 widespread 广泛流传的

续表

构成方式	例词
数词+名词	four-day 四天的 five-year 五年的

3. 合成副词

构成方式	例词
形容词+名词	sometimes 有时 anyway 不管怎样
副词+名词	indoors 在室内 upstairs 在楼上
介词+名词	alongside 在一边
副词+介词	nearby 附近

4. 合成动词

构成方式	例词
形容词+动词	ill-treat 虐待 whitewash 用石灰水刷白
副词/介词+动词	overcome 战胜 overthrow 推翻
形容词+名词	safeguard 保卫, 捍卫 blackmail 勒索; 敲诈; 要挟

5. 合成介词

构成方式	例词
副词+名词	inside 在……里 outside 在……外
介词+副词	throughout 遍及 within 在……之内
副词+介词	into 到……里 upon 在……之上

6. 合成代词

构成方式	例词
代词宾格+self	herself 她自己 himself 他自己
物主代词+self	myself 我自己 yourself 你自己
形容词+名词	anything 任何东西 everything 所有事物

(二) 转化法

把一种词性用作另一种词性而词形不变的方法叫作转化法。

用法	举例	小结
动词转化为名词	Let's go out for a walk . 我们出去散散步吧。 Our builds are similar. 我们的体形相似。 Women have an equal say in everything. 妇女在各方面都有同等的发言权。	英语中, 有的动词可作名词, 有的名词可作动词, 有的形容词可作动词, 这种把一种词性用作另一种词性而词形不变的方法叫作转化法。
名词转化为动词	He backed his car into the garage. 他把车倒进车库。 We lunched at the White's. 我们在怀特家吃的午饭。 Did you book a seat on the plane? 你订好飞机座位了吗?	
形容词转化为动词	Culture has furthered the advance of language. 文化促进了语言的发展。 The train slowed down to half its speed. 火车速度减慢了一半。 We will try our best to better our living conditions. 我们将尽全力改善我们的生活状况。	
形容词转化为名词	The rich do not necessarily live a happy life. 富人并不一定生活得幸福。 She was dressed in blue . 她穿着蓝色衣服。 The old here are living a happy life. 这里的老年人过着幸福的生活。	

名师点拨 ■■■■

有些词的词性转化后, 词的发音或重音会发生变化。例如:

export /'eksɔ:t/ n. 出口 → /ɪk'spɔ:t/ v. 出口
import /'ɪmpɔ:t/ n. 进口 → /ɪm'pɔ:t/ v. 进口
increase /'ɪnkri:s/ n. 增加 → /ɪn'kri:s/ v. 增加
permit /'pɜ:mɪt/ n. 许可证 → /pə'mɪt/ v. 准许
record /'rekɔ:d/ n. 唱片; 记录 → /rɪ'kɔ:d/ v. 记录

present /'preznt/ n. 礼物; 现在 adj. 当前的; 在场的, 出席的 → /prɪ'zent/ v. 赠送

(三) 派生法

派生法即由一个词根加上前缀或后缀构成另一个词。

1. 常见的前缀(前缀通常只改变词义,不改变词性,但是也有一些前缀不但改变词义,还改变词性)

前缀	作用或意义	例词
en-	构成动词,表示“使置于……之中;使处于……状态;使成为”	encourage 鼓励 endanger 危害 enable 使能够 enrich 充实 enlarge 扩大
dis-	构成反义词	disappear 消失 discourage 使泄气 dishonest 不诚实的
in-		inactive 消极的 incorrect 不正确的 indirect 间接的
il-		illegal 非法的
im-		impossible 不可能的 impolite 不礼貌的
ir-		irregular 不规则的 irresponsible 无责任感的
un-		unfit 不适合的 unfair 不公平的 unknown 不出名的
non-		non-smoker 不抽烟的人 non-stop 直达的,不停的
co-		构成名词/动词/副词/形容词,表示“共同,一起,联合”
extra-	构成形容词,表示“在……之外,超出;非常”	extraordinary 非凡的 extra-large 特大的

续表

前缀	作用或意义	例词
inter-	构成动词/名词/副词/形容词,表示“在……间,相互”	international 国际的 interaction 相互作用
mis-	构成动词/名词,表示“坏,错,糟糕的”	miscalculate 错误地估计 misfortune 不幸
over-	构成动词/名词/副词/形容词,表示“上面;完全地;过分;上方”	overhead 在头上方 overcoat 长大衣
post-	构成名词/动词/形容词,表示“在……后,以后”	post-war 战后的 postgraduate 研究生
pre-	构成名词/动词/形容词,表示“在……前,先于”	prehistory 史前时期 pre-war 战前的
re-	构成动词/名词/副词/形容词,表示“又,再,重新”	retell 复述 reappearance 重新出现
super-	构成名词/动词/副词/形容词,表示“上(方);超;极”	supermarket 超市 superheated 过热的

2. 常见的后缀(后缀通常改变词性,构成意思相近的其他词性的词,少数后缀同时会改变词义)

续表

后缀	意义	例词
-age	……的状态/状况/费用	postage 邮费 shortage 不足
-an	……地方的人	American 美国人 Korean 韩国人
-ian	……地方的人, ……的专家	Egyptian 埃及人 Asian 亚洲人 musician 音乐家
-ist	……家,……者	artist 艺术家 communist 共产主义者 scientist 科学家
-ism	……主义	socialism 社会主义 realism 现实主义
-er	……的人(或物), 具有……的人(或物), 与……有关的人	computer 计算机 farmer 农民 foreigner 外国人
-or	……的人(或物)	actor 演员 sailor 水手 director 导演 calculator 计算器
-ese	……国的人; ……国的语言	Chinese 中国人;汉语 Japanese 日本人;日语
-ee	受动者, 与……有关的人, 称为……的人	employee 雇员 interviewee 接受采访者
-eer	与……有关的人	engineer 工程师 pioneer 先锋 mountaineer 登山运动员

后缀	意义	例词
-ess	女……, 雌……, 母……	actress 女演员 hostess 女主人
-ful	充满……的量	armful (两臂或单臂的) 一抱 handful 一把 spoonful 一匙
-ment	……的行为/组织	movement 运动 development 发展 government 政府
-ness	……的状态、性质或特点	illness 疾病 darkness 黑暗
-ship	地位, 资格, 职位; 技艺, 技能; 状态, 性质, 品质	friendship 友谊 leadership 领导 professorship 教授职位
-(t)ion	……的行为或状态	action 行为 creation 创造
-ure	……的行动或过程; 结果	departure 启程 failure 失败 pleasure 高兴
-sion	……的行为或状态	conclusion 结论 possession 拥有 impression 印象
-ty	性质, 情况, 状态	safety 安全 difficulty 困难
-able	能……的, 应……的; 具有……性质的	acceptable 令人满意的 comfortable 舒服的
-al	与……有关的	national 国家的 political 政治的
-ern	……方向的	southern 南方的 northern 北方的 eastern 东方的
-ful	有……性质的; 充满……的	helpful 有帮助的 careful 仔细的
-ish	……国家的, 像……似的; 近乎……的	British 英国的 childish 孩子气的

续表

形容词	后缀	意义	例句
	-ive	具有……性质或倾向的	active 积极的 creative 创造性的 expensive 昂贵的
	-y	充满……的；有……性质的	cloudy 多云的 windy 有风的 dirty 脏的
	-less	无，没有	careless 粗心的 harmless 无害的 useless 无用的
	-some	引起或易于……的	fearsome 可怕的 tiresome 累人的 quarrelsome 爱争吵的
动词	-en	由……制成的；像……一样的	wooden 木制的 golden 金黄色的，金质的
	-ous	有……性质的	dangerous 危险的 humorous 幽默的
	-(e)n	使，变得	widen 加宽 strengthen 加强 lengthen 加长
	-ify/ -fy	变成，使得	beautify 美化 purify 净化
	-ize/ ise	使成为，使化；以……方式说/想/行动/对待等；放在……里	apologize/apologise 道歉 popularize/popularise 宣传
副词	-ly	以……方式；每隔……时间	perfectly 完美地 suddenly 突然地
	-ward (s)	(表示方向)向……地	forward(s) 向前 outwards 向外 eastward(s) 向东

续表

数词	后缀	意义	例句
	-teen	十几	fourteen 十四 fifteen 十五 sixteen 十六
	-ty	几十	forty 四十 fifty 五十 sixty 六十
	-th	第几	fourth 第四 fifth 第五 sixth 第六

(四) 缩略法

英语单词还有一些次要构成法，常见的两种方法有截短法和缩写。截短法是指把一个词的一部分去掉，构成一个新词。缩写是指把几个词的首字母连在一起，构成一个新词，包括首字母缩略词和首字母拼音词。

缩略	全称	汉语
ID	identification	身份证明
phone	telephone	电话
BBC	British Broadcasting Corporation	英国广播公司
UN	United Nations	联合国
VIP	very important person	贵宾
WTO	World Trade Organization	世界贸易组织
AIDS	acquired immunity deficiency syndrome	艾滋病(获得性免疫缺陷综合征)
UNESCO	United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization	联合国教科文组织

「语法冲关」

I. 单句语法填空

1. Their product is friendly (friend) to the environment and popular with customers.
2. My English improved a lot; more importantly, I gained (获得) much confidence (confident).
3. Mr Lee said that the smiles and happiness (happy) of the children gave him great courage every day.

- The high-speed train that connects the two cities is both fast and comfortable (comfort).
- He was more than just an English teacher, because he also taught me useful (use) lessons in life.
- It is necessary to have a physical examination (examine) every year.
- He will be remembered for his ability and his warmth (warm).
- Tom was encouraged (courage) by his father to take part in the singing competition.
- Our government attaches much importance to education now, which enables (able) so many people to be well educated.
- It was impolite (polite) of you to ask him the personal question in front of so many people.

II. 根据提示补全句子

- Parents and teachers always think students should spend more time on their studies, but students themselves think differently (学生们自己不这样认为).
- She tore up the letter angrily (生气地把信撕掉) and threw it into the dustbin.
- We fear that we do not have the strength (拥有力量) and courage to face the truth of our situation.
- As we know, smoking is harmful to our health (吸烟有害我们的健康).
- If you deepen your knowledge (加深你的认识) or understanding of a subject, you will learn more about it and become more interested in it.

课后素养评价(八)

I. 选词填空

type; contact; come up with; subway;
gas; come across; apartment; context

- You'd better take the subway. It's fast and convenient.
- Underline unknown words and try to guess their meaning from the context.
- I'm going to have to find a new apartment pretty soon.
- We will contact you again if the need arises.
- Write down the following information: name of product, type, date purchased and price.
- Gas is now widely used for cooking and heating.
- He came across this story while he was doing a computer search of local news articles.
- Our class came up with a good idea to make better use of used materials.

II. 单句语法填空

- He's the president of a large international organisation (organise).
- The house had a fairly (fair) large garden.
- It was a relief and I came to a sudden (suddenly) stop just in the middle of the road.

- I am unfamiliar with the place and the people here.
- Similarly (similar), when Ron Webster borrowed a book from the library of the University of Liverpool, he forgot to return it, too.
- But such a small thing couldn't possibly (possible) destroy a village.
- Most people nowadays are so busy with their lives that they do not have time to enjoy a healthy and balanced (balance) diet.
- According to the report, young drivers are far more likely to have (have) accidents than older drivers.
- There's a postage and packing fee in addition to the repair charge.
- Developing healthy eating habits isn't as confusing (confuse) as many people imagine.

III. 阅读理解

You may be surprised to learn that English gets 30 to 45 per cent of its words from French. The reason dates back to the year 1066, when Norman troops invaded (入侵) what is now Britain. The Normans were from northern France and spoke

French. During the Norman occupation (占领期), French became the language of England's rulers and wealthy class. This lasted for more than 300 years. Other people in England continued to speak English during this period.

Over time, the two languages combined and shared words. Some researchers believe that about 10,000 French words eventually entered the English language. However, although English took many French words, their meanings have not always stayed the same. Sometimes the differences in meanings can be very important, and lead to funny or strange situations if the words are used in the wrong way.

Take, for example, the French word "college". In English, college can often be used in place of the word "university", or sometimes as a school within a university. However, in French, college actually means "middle school", or the level of schooling for students in grades five or six through eight.

There are many other similar words in the two languages with completely different meanings. In English, the word "chat" is a verb which means "to talk casually", but in French, the word "chat" is the word for an animal: a cat.

If an English speaker says someone is jolly, that means they are cheerful or friendly. But in French, "jolie" means someone is good-looking or pleasant to look at. In any case, both are nice things to say to someone.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了英语中存在大量法语词汇的现象。

1. What language did the upper class speak in Britain of Norman times?

- A. English.
- B. French.
- C. Both English and French.
- D. Some unknown language.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“During the Norman occupation (占领期), French became the language of England's rulers and wealthy class.”可知,在诺曼时期,法语成了英国统治者和富裕阶层的语言。

2. What does a Frenchman mean if he says he likes a chat?

- A. He likes a kind of pet.

- B. He wants to have a talk.
- C. He hates to speak English.
- D. He prefers to chat in French.

A 推理判断题。根据第四段中的“but in French, the word ‘chat’ is the word for an animal: a cat”可知,在法语中,单词 chat 指的是 cat。由此可以推断出,如果一个法国人说他喜欢 a chat,他的意思是“他喜欢一种宠物”。

3. What is the French word “jolie” used to do?

- A. Replace “jolly” in English.
- B. Describe people's looks.
- C. Refer to people's happiness.
- D. Prove the change in French.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“‘But in French, ‘jolie’ means someone is good-looking or pleasant to look at.”可知,在法语中 jolie 的意思是“某人长得好看或看上去是令人愉快的”。由此可知, jolie 在法语中是用来“描述人的外表”的。

4. What is the text mainly about?

- A. Comparison between two languages.
- B. Difficulty in grasping English.
- C. French words in English.
- D. Development of English.

C 主旨大意题。根据第一段中的“You may be surprised to learn that English gets 30 to 45 per cent of its words from French.”和第二段中的“Over time, the two languages combined and shared words. Some researchers believe that about 10,000 French words eventually entered the English language.”可知,本文主要介绍的是英语中的法语词汇。

【微点写作】有关误解的故事

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. Last Sunday, Johnson came to my home to talk about language learning.

上周日,约翰逊来我家谈论了语言学习。

2. Suddenly he jumped up and down with excitement and shouted, “It is raining cats and dogs outside.”

突然,他兴奋得跳来跳去,喊道:“外面正下着倾盆大雨。”

3. I looked out of the window and found no animals but raindrops.

我向窗外望去,除了雨滴,没有发现任何动物。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点；
2. 能够理解课文内容，联系自身的英语学习经历，加深对单元主题意义的理解，形成关注俚语及其文化内涵的英语学习思维；
3. 对英语语言的多样性和创造性有更深入的理解，能反思自己的英语学习方法，树立正确的英语学习观，保持对英语学习的兴趣；
4. 能运用所学内容，恰当地表达自己对英语学习方法的观点，形成适合自己的英语学习方法，并阐述选择该学习方法的理由。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇和表达的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇和表达

1. resource *n.* 资料, (教学)资源
2. remind *v.* 提醒, 使……想起
3. rather *adv.* 相当, 颇
4. comment *n.* 评论
5. downtown *adj.* 在城镇中心区的, 在闹市区的
6. entrance *n.* 大门(口), 入口(处)
7. section *n.* 区域
8. exit *n.* 出口
9. actually *adv.* 事实上, 实际上
10. downstairs *adv.* 在楼下
11. negative *adj.* 消极的, 负面的
12. error *n.* 错误, 谬误
13. intend *v.* 计划, 打算

14. informal *adj.* (书写或言谈)非正式的

15. recognise *v.* 认识, 辨认出

16. base *v.* 以……为基础

17. be aware of 意识到, 察觉到

18. spend time (in) doing 花费时间做

19. look forward to doing 期待/盼望做

(二) 阅读词汇和表达

1. forum *n.* (因特网上的)论坛, 讨论区

2. misadventure *n.* 事故, 灾难

3. frog *n.* 蛙, 青蛙

4. throat *n.* 喉咙, 咽喉

5. boot *n.* 靴子

6. wicked *adj.* 缺德的, 邪恶的; 很棒的, 极好的

7. odd *adj.* 奇特的, 古怪的

8. have a frog in one's throat (尤因喉咙痛)说话困难

9. play safe 谨慎行事, 避免冒险

「课文速览」

表格填空

Misadventures in English		
Part 1	Lead in	The posts remind us that some of the English we learn in the classroom is rather 1. different from the English in the outside world.
Part 2	Some confusing examples	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Maggie couldn't teach that day COZ she had a 2. frog in her throat. • Sophie saw that shoes were actually sold on the ground floor, not the 3. first floor. • Julien's penfriend had told Julien that his grandfather was "really 4. wicked". But when Julien met his friend's grandfather, Julien liked him a lot. • Zheng Xu had done a good job. But when he got the paper back, he found his teacher had written the comment "5. Not bad!"

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- What does the sentence “We didn’t expect to get so many posts!” in Paragraph 1 mean?
 - People are not interested in the topic.
 - People are too shy to give their opinions.
 - We don’t think it is interesting.
 - People responded enthusiastically to the topic, which are out of our expectations.
- Why couldn’t English teacher Maggie teach that day?
 - Because she ate a big frog.
 - Because she was afraid that she had a frog in her stomach.
 - Because she had a sore throat and couldn’t speak.
 - Because she was very tired after eating a frog in her throat.
- Which statement is NOT true according to the passage?
 - The first floor in America may be called the ground floor in another country.
 - When we say someone is wicked, we only want to show the person is bad.
 - If you want to go to the first floor in Britain when you enter a building, you should go upstairs.
 - In Britain, people use “Not bad!” to show something is good.
- What’s the main idea of the passage?
 - An exciting adventure in English learning.
 - Some strange English words difficult to learn.
 - The difference between what we learn in class and in life.
 - Some funny posts about what we should learn in class.

答案: 1~4 DCBC

II. 课文语法填空

Last week, our forum asked if you had any funny or strange stories about **1. using** (use) English. We didn’t expect **2. to get** (get) so many posts! Here are some of our favourites, to remind us that some of the English we learn in the classroom is rather different **3. from** the English in the outside world!

The first post tells us that an English teacher **4. called** (call) Maggie couldn’t teach one day **5. because** she had a frog in her throat.

The second post tells us that a lady said the **6. shoes** (shoe) were sold on the first floor while they were **7. actually** (actual) on the ground floor. How **8. confusing** (confuse)!

The third post tells us that a man used **9. a** negative word about his nice grandfather.

The fourth post tells us that a student spent days preparing and writing his first English paper. But when he got the paper back, he found his teacher **10. had written** (write) the comment “Not bad!” He was a bit disappointed.

III. 阅读升华

- Which post do you find most interesting? Why? (Answers may vary.)
Have a frog in one’s throat. This expression is vivid and amusing, and easy to remember.
- What should you pay attention to when using English in a foreign country?
Only when you really understand the meaning of the expression can you use it. Otherwise, that can cause misunderstanding.

课后素养评价(九)

I. 单词拼写

- Some patients actually (实际上) got worse after receiving the treatment.
- You remind (使……想起) me so much of your brother, especially when you smile.

- I didn’t recognise (辨认出) you in your uniform.
- I didn’t intend (计划, 打算) her to see the painting until it was finished.
- There is no doubt that such loud noises have a negative (消极的) influence on people’s health.

6. Some people pay more attention to the comments (评论) than the quality of products.
7. We are doing our best to finish the task as soon as possible with the limited resources (资源).
8. Will you please show me the entrance (入口) to the museum?
9. This is an informal (非正式的) meeting, so you can just wear what you like.
10. I have received no letters since my arrival, and this does seem rather (相当) odd.
11. There is a fire exit (出口) on each floor of the building.
12. The decision he made was based (以……为基础) upon two considerations.
13. There are too many errors (错误) in your homework, so you'd better correct them before you hand it in.

II. 短语填空

play safe; be aware of; look forward to; at sixes and sevens; look for

1. I'm looking forward to visiting the art gallery with you next week.
2. If you want to play safe, cut down on the amount of salt you eat.
3. People around the world should be aware of the real situation of water shortage (短缺).
4. It's about time he started looking for a job.
5. I went into my brother's room and got a big surprise when I saw the room was at sixes and sevens.

III. 完成句子

1. I spent three hours (in) finishing writing the report.
我花了三个小时写完了这份报告。
2. Here are the conclusions from the experiments.
下面就是实验的结论。
3. Nodding the head means agreement, while shaking it means disagreement.
点头表示同意, 而摇头表示不同意。
4. It turns out that it's this section that sells what we need for a picnic.
结果是, 这个区域才是卖我们野餐所需要的东西的地方。

IV. 七选五

So how can you hear a lot of English when

you're not in an English-speaking country or family? Fortunately, there are many ways of hearing English.

Listen to English Radio

You can receive English-language radio in most countries. Two international networks are BBC and VOA. 1.

Watch English Television

2. The pictures help you understand what is being said. If you don't have access to English-language TV, you may be able to watch TV on the Internet.

3

It is now a lot easier to hear English on the Internet. If you're reading this at your computer or mobile device, you can probably listen to some English-language radio news right now, without even moving! And of course, you can find endless videos in English on some websites.

Listen to Songs in English

Songs in English are everywhere, even on foreign-language radio and TV stations. Listen to them often. But choose one that is not too difficult. 4. Some pop songs are very unclear and are difficult even for native English speakers to understand fully!

Get English-speaking Friends

Try to make friends with English-speaking people so that you can practise your English through conversation. 5. And if you don't have a lot of time to go out and meet people, at least you can chat a little by telephone.

- A. Don't worry
- B. Listen to English on the Internet
- C. This will improve your speaking as well as your listening
- D. Many large cities have cinemas that show films in English
- E. Both of them have special programmes for learners of English
- F. TV is an excellent resource for listening to English
- G. That means it should be slow, and with real words sung clearly

答案: 1~5 EFBGC

【微点写作】有关误解的故事

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. Realising what made us puzzled, he explained that “a person with green eyes” in English refers to the one who is jealous.
意识到是什么让我们困惑,他解释说,在英语中“a person with green eyes”指的是有嫉妒心的人。

2. After that, he taught us some other English idioms related to colours.

在那之后,他教了我们其他一些与颜色有关的英语习语。

3. To begin with, he told us that it was important to learn about the background of some words.

首先,他告诉我们了解一些单词的背景很重要。

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 能够通过课文学习和内容复述初步了解故事的内容特点、文体特点和写作手法,运用所学内容简单描述自己在英语使用过程中对英语表达产生误解的一次经历;
3. 联系自身实际,对自己的英语学习方法进行改进和创新,养成批判性思维和创新思维。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. What she did was unforgivable (不可原谅的), but the **odd** thing was he didn't seem to mind.
奇特的,古怪的
2. The Internet is often used as a **resource** and as a tool for distance learning.
资料,(教学)资源
3. Their holiday was ruined by a whole series of **misadventures**.
事故,灾难
4. It was a **rather** difficult maths problem. 相当,颇
5. He made no **comments** on our suggestion. 评论
6. We thought the figures were correct. However, we have now discovered some **errors**. 错误,谬误
7. Our family went out, hanging round Wangfujing Street—a **downtown** area of Beijing.
在城镇中心区的,在闹市区的
8. The lady at the information desk told me that the clothes **section** was on the second floor. 区域

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>remind</u> v. 提醒, 使……想起	<u>reminder</u> n. 引起回忆的事物; 提醒的事物; 通知单

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>entrance</u> n. 大门(口), 入口(处)	<u>enter</u> v. 进入 <u>exit</u> n. 出口
<u>downstairs</u> adv. 在楼下	<u>upstairs</u> adv. 在楼上
<u>negative</u> adj. 消极的, 负面的	<u>positive</u> adj. 积极的, 正面的
<u>intend</u> v. 计划, 打算	<u>intention</u> n. 打算, 计划, 意图
<u>recognise</u> v. 认识, 辨认出	<u>recognition</u> n. 认出, 识别; 承认, 认可
<u>base</u> v. 以……为基础	<u>basis</u> n. 基础, 根据
	<u>basic</u> adj. 基本的, 基础的
	<u>basically</u> adv. 基本上, 从根本上说
<u>aware</u> adj. 意识到的, 明白的	<u>unaware</u> adj. 不知道的, 未意识到的, 未察觉的 <u>awareness</u> n. 意识; 认识

III. 补全短语

1. ring a bell 听起来耳熟(但记不真切), 有印象
2. small potatoes 微不足道的人或物

3. toilet water 花露水
4. at sixes and sevens 混乱的, 杂乱无章的
5. green fingers 园艺技能, 种植技能
6. pull up one's socks 再加把劲; 奋发图强
7. play safe 谨慎行事, 避免冒险
8. have a frog in one's throat (尤因喉咙痛) 说话困难
9. look for 寻找
10. be aware of 意识到, 察觉到

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: what 引导名词性从句

People say that the British always play safe with what they eat.

都说英国人吃东西很谨慎。

2. 句型公式: 不定式作目的状语

When I first visited New York, I went to a downtown shopping centre to buy some winter boots.

第一次去纽约的时候, 我去了市中心的一家购物中心买冬靴。

3. 句型公式: spend... (in) doing sth

I spent days preparing and writing my first English paper.

我的第一篇英语论文, 从准备到写作花了若干天时间。

任务型课堂

1. **remind v.** 提醒, 使……想起

(教材原文) Here are some of our favourites, to **remind** us that some of the English we learn in the classroom is rather different from the English in the outside world!

以下是我们最喜欢的几篇, 它们让我们意识到, 有些在课堂上学到的英语和在课堂之外使用的英语真是太不一样了!

一感 读句子感悟用法

The result will help to predict some major and severe diseases and your preference for diet and **remind you of** suitable ways to exercise.

这个结果有助于你预测一些重大疾病和食物偏好, 并提醒你合适的锻炼方式。

Please **remind me to write** an email to my mother tomorrow, for it's her birthday.

请提醒我明天给我母亲写一封电子邮件, 因为明天是她的生日。

This photo album serves as a **reminder** of the most important moment of my life.

这个影集起到提醒我生活中最重要的时刻的作用。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) remind sb _____ sth 提醒某人某事 remind sb of sth/sb 使某人想起某事物/某人 remind sb _____ sth 提醒某人做某事 remind sb that/how/what... 提醒某人…… (2) reminder n. 提醒的事物; 引起回忆的事物
探究结论	(1) of; to do

名师点拨 ■■■■

熟记下面的“v.+sb+of sth”短语:

cure sb of sth 治好某人的病

accuse sb of sth 指控某人某事

inform sb of sth 通知某人某事

convince sb of sth 使某人相信某事

rob sb of sth 抢劫某人某物

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① What the teacher had said reminded me of the saying “Where there's a will, there is a way”.

② Passengers are reminded (remind) that no smoking is allowed on this train.

(2) 一句多译

做完所有的工作后, 我们竖起了布告牌提醒人们保护这些树木。

① After getting all the work done, we put up a board reminding people to protect the trees. (现在分词短语作定语)

② After getting all the work done, we put up a board which/that reminded people to protect the trees. (定语从句)

2. **intend v.** 计划, 打算

(教材原文) morally wrong and **intending** to hurt people

道德上是错误的并且有意伤害他人

一感 读句子感悟用法

What do you **intend doing/to do** today?

你今天打算做什么?

I **had intended to go/intended to have gone** to your house last night, but it rained.

昨晚我本打算去你家的,但是下起雨来了。

The tea **is intended for** the meeting.

这茶是专门为会议准备的。

We come here with the **intention** of learning knowledge.

我们是带着学习知识的目的来这里的。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)intend _____ sth 打算/想要做某事 had intended to do...=intended to have done... 原本打算做…… be intended _____ 打算为……所用,专为……而设计的 (2) _____ n. 打算;目的,意图
探究结论	(1)doing/to do; for (2)intention

名师点拨

intend 的过去完成时,表示本打算做某事,但实际没做成。有类似用法的动词还有 plan, hope, think 等。

三评 多维度评价测试

语段填空

My mother intends ① holding/to hold (hold) a party for my father's birthday. But she is busy with work, so she intends me ② to prepare (prepare) for it. She requests that all the activities and gifts should be intended ③ for my father. And we both need to keep it secret, because my father has no ④ intention (intend) of holding a birthday party.

3. recognise v. 认识,辨认出

(教材原文) **recognise** differences between American English and British English
识别美式英语和英式英语之间的差异

一感 读句子感悟用法

Mona Lisa **is widely recognised as/to be** one of the most famous paintings in the history of art.

《蒙娜丽莎》被公认为艺术史上最著名的画作之一。

It is widely recognised that drug-abuse will cause a huge loss of both health and wealth.

人们普遍认为,滥用毒品将造成巨大的健康和财富损失。

The town has changed **beyond recognition** since I was last here.

自从我上次离开这里以来,这座小镇已经变得让人认不出来了。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)recognise... as/to be... 承认/认为……是…… be (widely) recognised _____ ... 被公认为是…… It is (widely) recognised that... 人们(普遍)认为…… (2) recognition n. 认出,识别;承认,认可 _____ recognition 认不出来
探究结论	(1)as/to be (2)beyond

名师点拨

recognise 作动词时,还有“意识到;承认,认可”之意。

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

① The village is now recognised as one of the most beautiful and livable tourism villages in Shanxi.

② Komodo National Park, officially recognised (recognise) in 1980, is popular for ecotourism because of its unique biodiversity.

③ I haven't seen Sara since she was a little girl, and she has changed beyond recognition (recognise).

4. aware adj. 意识到的,明白的

(教材原文) be **aware** of cultural differences
意识到文化差异

一感 读句子感悟用法

In order to **raise people's awareness of** protecting our environment, we must make people around us **aware of** the importance of it first.

为了增强人们的环保意识,我们必须首先让周围的人意识到它的重要性。

As a member of society, I'm **aware that** being responsible is what it takes to make a better society.

作为社会中的一员,我意识到有责任感是建设更好的社会所需要的(品质)。

Mr White **has been made aware of** the need for absolute secrecy.

怀特先生被告知需要绝对保密。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) be/become aware _____ 意识到, 察觉到; 明白, 了解 be aware that... 知道……; 察觉到…… make sb aware of/that... 使某人知道…… (2) _____ n. 意识 raise one's awareness (of/about) 增强某人(对……)的意识 (3) unaware <i>adj.</i> 不知道的; 未意识到的, 未察觉到的
探究结论	(1) of (2) awareness

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Only if you are aware of the importance of English can you learn it well.

② (2023·新高考 II 卷) The program aims to help students develop science skills, environmental awareness (aware), and healthy lifestyles.

(2) 翻译句子

我们应该增强人们的节水意识。

We should raise people's awareness of saving water.

写作探究

有关误解的故事

一、写作指导

本单元的写作项目是讲述一件有关误解的趣事, 该类作文以叙述为主, 突出趣事的发生、发展和结果。

1. 基本框架

- (1) 开头——交代故事的时间、地点、人物等;
- (2) 主体——叙述趣事引发的误会、困惑和惊讶;
- (3) 结尾——消除误解。

2. 记叙文的语言特点

- (1) 以一般过去时为主, 其他时态为辅。合理地使用丰富多彩的动词时态是记叙文的首要语言特点。
- (2) 多用动词, 尤其是动态性强的行为动词是英语记叙文的又一个明显的语言特点。
- (3) 适当使用连接词。

3. 记叙文的写作顺序

记叙文一般是按时间顺序来叙述的, 其叙述方法多采用顺叙, 也就是按照客观事件发生、发展的先后顺序进行叙述, 也可采用倒叙。

二、典题示例

请根据下列故事梗概, 用英语写一篇题为“I Don't Know the Time”的故事, 可适当增加细节, 使行文连贯。

故事梗概: 一位司机把车停在路边想休息一下。当他躺在座位上闭上眼睛时, 一个人走过来, 敲了敲车窗并询问时间。司机睁开眼睛看了看表说: “8:05。”接着司机又睡去。可是不久, 又有一个人敲窗把他吵醒。“先生, 现在几点?” 那人问道。司机又看了看表说: “8:30。”司机怕再次被人打扰, 休息不好, 就在车窗上贴了一张便条, 上面写着“我不知道几点

了”。他又躺下休息, 然而不久, 就又有有人敲打着车窗说: “先生, 现在是 8:45。”

三、审题谋篇

文体	记叙文
时态	以 <u>一般过去时</u> 为主
人称	以 <u>第三人称</u> 为主
要点	1. 三次询问的时间 2. 每次询问后司机的反应

四、遣词造句

(一) 核心词汇和表达

- ① have a rest 休息一下
- ② lie down 躺下
- ③ knock at the window 敲窗户
- ④ wake sb up 唤醒某人
- ⑤ stick v. 粘贴

(二) 完成句子

- ① A driver stopped his car by the roadside to have a rest (来休息一下).
- ② He lay down (躺下) on the seat and closed his eyes.
- ③ A person came up and knocked at the window (敲窗户) to ask the time.
- ④ The driver looked at his watch (看了看他的表) and said, “It's five past eight.”

⑤ But soon he was waken up (被喊醒) again and saw a second person knocking at the window (正在敲窗户).

⑥ In order to have a good rest, he stuck a note on the window (在窗户上贴了一张便条), on which it said, "I don't know the time."

(三) 句式升级

① 将(二)中句②③升级为含有 when 引导的时间状语从句的句子

When he lay down on the seat and closed his eyes, a person came up and knocked at the window to ask the time.

② 将(二)中句④中的分句升级为现在分词作状语

The driver looked at his watch, saying, "8:05."

③ 将(二)中句⑤中的分句升级为现在分词作状语

But soon he was waken up again, seeing a second person knocking at the window.

(四) 连句成篇

I Don't Know the Time

A driver stopped his car by the roadside to have a rest. When he lay down on the seat and closed his eyes, a person came up and knocked at the window to ask the time. The driver looked at his watch, saying, "8:05." Then he went to sleep again. But soon he was waken up again, seeing a second person knocking at the window. "Sir, do you know the time?" he asked. The driver looked at his watch again, and told him it was half past eight.

In order to have a good rest, he stuck a note on the window, on which it said, "I don't know the

time." Again he lay down for his sleep. A few minutes later, a third person came and knocked at the window. "Hey, sir," he said. "It's a quarter to nine!"

五、学以致用

假定你是李华,去年夏天你和你的父母第一次到美国旅游,因为“restroom”和“WC”的误解,发生了一件趣事。请你根据以下内容用英语写一篇 80 词左右的小故事。要点如下:

1. 餐馆吃饭,寻找 WC;
2. 服务生提醒没有 WC,有 restroom;
3. 你的感悟。

【参考范文】

Last summer, I went abroad to the USA for a trip with my parents. On the first day my parents went to a restaurant and looked around for a toilet. However, they didn't find it. When they asked the waitress for help, she indicated a sign to the "restroom". But my parents didn't want to rest. Then I asked for the "WC", but the girl said they didn't have one. We were confused. At last, she understood what we wanted. She laughed and so did we. From this experience, I made up my mind to study English harder.

课后素养评价(十)

I. 单句语法填空

1. While travelling in France, I came across a famous actor.
2. The difference may be so small that no one is aware of it.
3. After the typhoon (台风), people found some tall trees, measuring (measure) more than 10 metres, lying on the ground.
4. Being abroad for so many years, I always look forward to hearing (hear) from my family.
5. There followed a list of places where Hans intended to visit (visit).
6. Your grade will be based on four papers and a final exam.

7. Today he is recognised as one of the greatest writers.
8. Some puzzles look difficult but are actually (actual) quite simple.
9. He reminded me to turn (turn) off the lights when I went out.
10. At twenty to six I was waiting by the entrance (enter) to the station.

II. 完成句子

1. I would rather start early than leave everything to the last minute.

我宁愿早开始,也不愿意把所有的事情都留到最后才做。

2. It is difficult for us to imagine what life was like for slaves in the ancient world.

我们很难想象古代社会里奴隶的生活是什么样子的。

3. As you can see, the number of cars keeps rising these days.

如你所见,如今汽车数量持续上升。

4. The professor comments that it's rather necessary to learn how to use the learning resources.

这位教授评论说,学会如何使用学习资源是相当有必要的。

III. 语法填空

What does “barking up the wrong tree” mean? In this article, let's learn the **1. expression** (express).

The phrase “barking up the wrong tree” means **2. following** (follow) a mistaken plan of action. The phrase comes from the old hunting (捕猎) practice in which dogs would bark to show they have made other animals up trees unable **3. to run** (run) away. Sometimes the dogs were mistaken, and the animals had **4. actually** (actual) run away. When this happened, the dogs were barking up the wrong tree.

This phrase first began appearing in **5. written** (write) works after the 1820s, and was later widely used by Western writers. It was used to describe a person **6. who/that** was following a wrong lead.

Below is an example of how to use the phrase. Recently **7. a** friend of mine needed a large amount of money **8. for** his new business idea. So he went to an event to meet possible investors (投资者). However, the people he met **9. were** (be) those also looking for money. Then we can say that he was barking up the wrong tree!

When using the phrase, avoid these **10. mistakes** (mistake) in spelling. For example, don't write it as “barking up in the wrong tree”.

IV. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是高一学生李华,为了提高学生学习英语的兴趣,你校学生会要举办一场英语晚会。请你用英语给外教 Johnson 写一封信介绍此次活动并邀请他参加,内容包括:

1. 时间:9月20日晚上6:30—8:00;
2. 地点:学校体育馆(stadium);
3. 内容:朗诵英文诗歌、演唱英语名曲等。

注意:1. 80词左右;

2. 可适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

Dear Johnson,

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面的材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Devin was 16 years old, who was a most hard-working boy. He took things seriously and always went all out for what he was doing. Recently, he had led his soccer team to the big game—championship game, which was scheduled on Thursday afternoon.

For Devin, Thursday would be huge—the big soccer game in the afternoon, and the school's autumn concert in the evening. Ms Poltis had chosen him to sing a brief solo. Devin couldn't wait till Thursday.

As the team gathered after daily training on Tuesday afternoon, Coach said, “Be here by 6:30 on Thursday to warm up.” “Six thirty?” Devin asked. That didn't sound right. Coach explained that it would be a night game and that they would play under the lights.

Devin's heart sank. The concert was at 7:00, which was almost the same time as the game. He couldn't possibly do both. He sat on the bench, pulling off his cleats (球鞋). His teammates were super excited. They were on the edge of a champion, and Devin was a big reason why. He led the league in scoring, and his soccer knowledge made him like a coach on the field. He couldn't let his team down by skipping the game.

Devin frowned (皱眉). He would tell Ms Poltis in the morning. There were other kids who could sing the solo. He wasn't the best singer anyway, and he knew it.

That night, Devin lay in bed, staring at the ceiling. “No matter how hard the struggle is, I will never let you down...” The lyrics of the solo flew into his mind. The solo was only four lines in the middle of a song that the entire choir would sing, but every time he sang the song, he would be full of strength to carry on. His team was counting on him. The soccer game was a perfect excuse. But so was Ms Poltis. It was a long time before he fell asleep.

注意:续写 150 词左右。

In the morning, hardly eating any breakfast, Devin went to school and straight to the music room.

The big day came and so many people came to watch tonight.

【参考范文】

第一节 应用文写作

Dear Johnson,

How are you doing?

I'm writing to sincerely invite you to our English party which will be held on September 20th, at the school stadium in order to display our English talent and motivate students' interest in English learning. During the party, you will enjoy various activities, including reciting English poems and singing famous English songs. Besides, I'd like to remind you that the party starts at 6:30 p.m. and ends at 8:00 p.m. So please come on time if it is convenient for you.

Looking forward to sharing with you the pleasant time at the party.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

In the morning, hardly eating any breakfast, Devin went to school and straight to the music room. Noticing Devin looked worried, Ms Poltis let him sit down and asked if he was nervous for the concert. Devin looked up at her, eyes filled with tears. Ms Poltis smiled warmly and told him it was no secret that several other choir members had better singing voices than he did, but she chose him because he worked hard, like the person in the song. "Don't be nervous. Be proud," Ms Poltis cheered him up.

The big day came and so many people came to watch tonight. Devin had made a difficult choice. He liked the song and he appreciated how kind Ms Poltis always was. There would be other championship games. He told Coach he had to miss the game and gave advice to his teammates on how to work together. The bright lights came on. Devin stayed calm, singing with confidence. "No matter how hard the struggle is..." Devin finished the solo and smiled at Ms Poltis. He was proud of the choice he made.

读后续写技能养成

「技能概述」

1. 外貌描写:是指从人物的体貌特征(包括人物的容貌、衣着、体型、姿态等)进行描写,以揭示人物的主要特点,表达作者的爱憎情感,加深读者对人物的印象。
2. 续写技巧:在描写时,可以抓住人物的性别、年龄、职业等特征进行详细的描写。此外,在描写时,还可以使用比喻和夸张等修辞手法。

「范例体悟」

I watch him as he makes his way towards the stage. He is of medium height and has blond hair that falls in waves over his forehead. The shock of the moment is registered on his face, and you can see his struggle to remain emotionless, but his blue eyes show the alarm I've seen so often in prey. Yet he climbs steadily onto the stage and takes his place.

人物描写之外貌描写

找出文中描写人物外貌的词汇并写下来。

medium height; blond hair that falls in waves;
blue eyes

「词句储备」

I. 好词积累

(一)脸型

1. round *adj.* 圆的
2. square *adj.* 方的
3. long *adj.* 长的

(二)体型

4. thin *adj.* 瘦的
5. chubby *adj.* 胖的
6. slim *adj.* 苗条的

(三)头发

7. straight *adj.* 直的
8. curly *adj.* 卷曲的
9. pigtail *n.* 辫子
10. crew cut *n.* 平头(发型)

11. bald *adj.* 秃头的
 12. jet-black *adj.* 乌黑发亮的
 13. blond(e) *adj.* 金(黄)色的
 14. golden *adj.* 金色的
 15. grey *adj.* 灰(白)色的
 16. shoulder-length *adj.* 齐肩的

(四)五官

17. deep-set *adj.* (眼睛)深陷的,深邃的
 18. eyelash *n.* 睫毛
 19. eyebrow *n.* 眉毛
 20. straight *adj.* (鼻子)挺直的
 21. flat *adj.* 扁平的
 22. hooked *adj.* 钩状的

(五)服饰

23. elegant *adj.* 优雅的
 24. fashionable *adj.* 时髦的
 25. tidy *adj.* 整洁的
 26. well-dressed *adj.* 衣着讲究的

II. 佳句背诵

1. When he laughs, we see his even teeth.
他笑时,我们看见他有一口整齐的牙齿。
 2. His chin is covered by a thick and short beard.
他下巴上长满浓而短的胡须。
 3. She eats too much these days, so her face is getting round.
她最近吃得太多,所以她的脸变圆了。
 4. His eyes are deep-set because he has worked till midnight for a long time.
他眼睛深陷,因为他很长时间以来一直工作到半夜。
 5. Mother was now getting old and her hair was almost entirely white although she was still under fifty.
母亲一天天见老,虽然不到五十岁,但她的头发已几乎全白了。

「技能达标」

I. 完成句子

1. Jenny is pretty, of slim build, with blue eyes.
珍妮非常漂亮,身材苗条,有一双蓝眼睛。
 2. There is still a heart of loving beauty under her wrinkled face.
她沧桑的面容下依然保持着一颗爱美的心。
 3. He was a kind old man with grey beard, blue eyes and a voice that the birds loved.
他是一位和蔼、善良的老人,有灰白色的胡子,一双蓝色的眼睛和小鸟都喜欢的嗓音。
 4. Her waist was slender, her hair thick and jet-black, her eyes liquid and her eyebrows drawn out towards her temples.
她腰肢纤细,头发浓密、乌黑,两眼如秋水般明丽,双眉画入鬓角。
 5. She is neither tall nor short, with a round face, a wide mouth and humorous grey eyes, looking very kind.
她不高不矮,圆脸,大嘴,一双滑稽的灰眼睛,看上去和蔼可亲。

II. 用人物外貌描写完成下面的语段

A young lady was coming towards him.

1. Her figure was long and slim (她的身材修长且苗条); 2. her blonde hair lay back from her ears (她的金发从耳朵上向后耷拉着); 3. her eyes were blue as flowers (她的眼睛蓝蓝的,美如鲜花); 4. her lips and chin had a kind of gentle firmness (她的嘴唇和下巴温柔而坚定), and 5. in her pale green suit/clothes (穿着淡绿的衣服) she was like springtime coming alive. He went towards her, entirely forgetting to notice that she was not wearing a rose. As he moved, 6. a middle-aged woman (一位中年妇女) whispered, "Going my way, sir?"

第二单元质量评估

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

I. 阅读理解(共15小题;每小题2.5分,满分37.5分)

A

Job Chances in Top Schools

Throughout China

Interested in teaching in a foreign country?
Schools all over China are looking for skilled

teachers interested in teaching English. There are chances all over the country. Apply today!

Necessary conditions

Native speaker of English

BA degree or higher (English and Education major preferred)

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了由于语言差异而造成误解的故事。

4. What aspect did my Spanish friends want advice in?

- A. Driving their car on English roads.
- B. Going to England by car.
- C. Finding places to stay in England.
- D. Learning English.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“Before they left, they asked me for advice about how to find accommodation (住所).”可知,作者的西班牙朋友想要作者给他们提供一些在英国找住处的建议。

5. Why did I suggest that they stay at “bed and breakfast houses”?

- A. Because it would be much cheaper than staying at hotels.
- B. Because it would be convenient for them to have dinner.
- C. Because they would be able to practise their English.
- D. Because there would be no problem in finding accommodation there.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“... because this kind of accommodation gives a foreign visitor a good chance to speak English with the family.”可知,作者建议他的西班牙朋友们住“住宿加早餐”的房子是因为这是个很好的练习他们的英语的机会。

6. What does “NO VACANCIES” mean in English according to the passage?

- A. Free rooms.
- B. No free rooms.
- C. Not away on holiday.
- D. Holidays.

B 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“‘So they did not go to houses where the sign outside said ‘VACANCIES’, which in English means there are free rooms.’”可知,在英语中“VACANCIES”的意思是“有空的房间”,因此“NO VACANCIES”在英语中的意思是“没有空的房间”。

7. When someone offered me more coffee and I said “Thank you” in French, what did I mean?

- A. I wanted them to take the coffee pot away.
- B. I didn't really want any more coffee.
- C. I wanted to express my politeness.
- D. I really wanted some more coffee.

D 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“Once in Paris, when someone offered me some more coffee, I said ‘Thank you’ in French. I meant that I would like some more.”可知,作者想再要一些咖啡。

C

Any foreigner who has tried to learn Chinese can tell how hard it is to master the tones required to speak and understand. And anyone who has tried to learn to play the violin or other instruments can report similar challenges.

Now researchers have found that people with musical training have an easier time learning Chinese. Writing in the online edition of *Nature Neuroscience*, researchers from Northwestern University say that both skills draw on the same parts of the brain that help people discover changes in pitch (音调).

One of the study's authors, Nina Kraus, said the findings suggested that studying music “actually tunes our sensory system”. This means that schools that want children to do well in languages should hesitate before cutting music programmes, Dr Kraus said. She said music training might also help children with language problems.

Mandarin (普通话) speakers have been shown to have a more complex encoding (编码) of pitch patterns in their brains than English speakers do. This is because in Mandarin and other Asian languages, pitch plays a central role. A single-syllable word can have several meanings depending on how it is intoned.

For this study, the researchers looked at 20 non-Chinese-speaking volunteers, half with no musical background and half who have studied an instrument for at least six years.

As they were shown a movie, the volunteers also heard an audio tape of the Mandarin word “mi” in three of its meanings: squint, bewilder and rice. The researchers recorded activities in their brain stems to see how well they were processing the sounds. Those with a music background showed much more brain activities in response to the Chinese sounds.

The lead author of the study, Patrick C. M. Wong, said it might work both ways. It appears that native speakers of tonal languages may do better at learning instruments.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了目前有研究人员发现,受过音乐训练的人学习语言更容易。

8. When learning Chinese, what will a foreigner find?

- A. He/She has a difficult time learning music at the same time.
- B. He/She has an easier time learning music at the same time.
- C. It is hard to master the tones required to speak and understand.

D. It is easy to use the brain to help him/her discover changes in pitch.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“Any foreigner who has tried to learn Chinese can tell how hard it is to master the tones required to speak and understand.”可知,任何一个学过汉语的外国人都知道掌握说话和理解所需要的声调很难。

9. Why does Chinese learning have something to do with music training?

A. Because there is the same difficulty in learning Chinese and music.

B. Because skills to learn the two make use of the same parts of the brain.

C. Because music training might help people with language study.

D. Because people who do well in Chinese study do well in music.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“researchers from Northwestern University say that both skills draw on the same parts of the brain that help people discover changes in pitch (音调)”可知,学习汉语和音乐训练用到的是大脑的相同部位。这些部位有助于人们发现音调中的变化。故选B。

10. Which word can replace the underlined word “intoned” in the fourth paragraph?

A. Created.

B. Spelled.

C. Seemed.

D. Pronounced.

D 词义猜测题。根据第四段中的“This is because in Mandarin and other Asian languages, pitch plays a central role. A single-syllable word can have several meanings depending on how it is intoned.”可知,在普通话和其他亚洲语言中,音调起着中心作用。对一个单音节词而言,当人们对这个词发出不同的音调时,这个词就表达出不同的意思。在第六段中以“mi”为例,这个词不同的音调就代表着不同的意思。故画线单词意为“发音”。

11. What would be the best title for this passage?

A. Mandarin Speakers Are Smarter than English Speakers

B. Skilled Ear for Music May Help Language Study

C. Pitch Plays a Central Role in Chinese Learning

D. Schools Need to Develop Music Programmes

B 标题归纳题。通读全文可知,研究表明,经过音乐训练的人,在学汉语方面会更加容易。音乐训练和汉语学习均用到了大脑的相同部位。该部位可以帮助人们更好地发现语调的变化,有助于人们学习语言。所以短文的最佳标题是“熟练的音乐听觉有助于语言学习”。

D

As an English teacher, I found that English slang (俚语) can be more difficult for those who

learn English as a second language to understand. This became clear when I was talking to one of my students, Cathy, in Japan. “Excuse me, Miss White. I want to go to buy a notebook outside the school.” “It’s bucketing outside,” I said. It is an English slang expression which means “It is raining.” However, she didn’t seem to understand what I said.

The point I’m trying to get across is that being puzzled about English slang at the beginning is rather natural because it is what makes the language special. But learning some slang is a fantastic way of understanding the culture of a country. English does have some interesting slang. Here is some of my favourite slang which is common in Northern Ireland.

To keel over: If someone keels over, it basically means that he/she has fallen over because he/she has passed out or died.

To be in bed with your head: This is used to describe someone who has gone to bed because he/she has a headache.

To upset the apple cart: This means that someone has caused trouble or upset someone’s plans.

Dead on: This means “exactly right” “perfect”, or shows that someone agrees with what you’ve said.

Slang can be difficult to learn but it’s really impressive when you get it right! Slang also helps you sound friendly, so it’s great for making friends. If you can use some of these English expressions in a conversation, people will be amazed!

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了英语俚语的作用,同时解释了几个英语俚语的意思。

12. How did Cathy feel when the author said “It’s bucketing outside.”?

A. She was unhappy.

B. She was surprised.

C. She was worried.

D. She was puzzled.

D 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“However, she didn’t seem to understand what I said.”可知,作者说“‘It’s bucketing outside.’”的时候,Cathy好像不理解。由此可推断出,Cathy很困惑。故选D。

13. What does the author think of English slang according to Paragraph 2?

A. It tells us the history of a country.

B. It is created by language teachers.

C. It shows the culture of a country.

D. It is used to impress foreigners.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“‘But learning some slang is a fantastic way of understanding

D 根据下文中的“I called several amusement 23 to see if there was a half-price event during the summer”可知,作者生活很拮据,所以这里的意思是“我”不能负担得起(afford)带他们去任何地方玩。

22. A. disappointed B. satisfied
C. shocked D. delighted
D 根据前文“It’s a surprise!”可知,孩子们听到暑假会有惊喜,自然很开心(delighted)。

23. A. schools B. shops
C. parks D. libraries
C 根据后文“if there was a half-price event during the summer”可知,作者是给游乐园(amusement parks)打电话询问优惠事宜。

24. A. hope B. luck
C. attitude D. hobby
B 根据后文“I tried everything, with no success”可知,作者尽力了,但是没有成功。由此可知,作者说自己运气(luck)不好。

25. A. come up with B. face up to
C. look forward to D. step away from
A 根据下文内容可知,作者和其他的妈妈决定为她们的孩子想出(come up with)一些有趣的事情去做。

26. A. discovered B. enjoyed
C. created D. controlled
C “我们”创造了(created)一个被称为“playcation”的活动。

27. A. teacher B. doctor
C. gardener D. grocer
C 根据后文“They would play games using plants and 28. They also planted vegetables and 29 them grow over the summer.”可知,这位母亲是一位园艺爱好者(gardener)。

28. A. books B. vegetables
C. sweets D. toys
B 根据后文“They also planted vegetables and 29 them grow over the summer.”可知,他们用植物和蔬菜(vegetables)做游戏。

29. A. guessed B. watched
C. affected D. felt
B 他们也种植蔬菜,并且在整个夏天观察(watched)它们的生长。

30. A. easily B. patiently
C. correctly D. hurriedly
C 根据空后的“got a penny”可知,回答正确(correctly)的小孩会获得一美分的奖励。

31. A. indoor B. outdoor
C. mountain D. speech
B 根据下文“The kids also walked a balance beam and raced through large cardboard boxes

taped together.”可知,作者用备用轮胎对孩子们进行了户外(outdoor)障碍物训练。

32. A. Thursdays B. Saturdays
C. Sundays D. Mondays

A 上文依次介绍了孩子们在星期一、星期二、星期三这三天的活动安排,下文介绍了周五的活动,故本空应介绍孩子们在星期四(Thursdays)进行的活动。

33. A. hosted B. forced
C. avoided D. forbidden

A 每周星期五由一位使人愉快的单身父亲举办(hosted)活动。

34. A. hiding B. making
C. hunting D. donating

C 这位单身父亲用一个金属探测器,带着孩子们外出去玩寻找(hunting)宝物的游戏。

35. A. failure B. challenge
C. business D. success

D 根据后文“Okay, it wasn’t Disney World, but the kids didn’t miss anything. My son actually asked me, ‘Can we do this again next year?’”可知,这个暑假非常成功(success)。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

English language is closely related to the Frisian, German and Dutch. England is the first country **36. to speak** (speak) English and now English is the main language of the United States, the United Kingdom, Canada, Australia, Ireland, New Zealand, and many island nations in the Caribbean Sea and the Pacific Ocean. It is also an **37. official** (office) language of India, the Philippines, Singapore, and many countries in sub-Saharan Africa **38. which/that** include South Africa. English is the first choice of foreign **39. languages** (language) in most countries around the world. **40. A/One** third of the world’s population now use English, which is **41. amazing** (amaze) to us.

English belongs **42. to** the Indo-European family of languages and is therefore related to most other languages spoken in Europe and Western Asia from Iceland to India. During the course of hundreds of years, English words have been **43. slowly** (slow) changed from the forms **44. found** (find) in Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, Russian and German to forms, as in Chinese and Vietnamese. The German and Chinese words for the word “man” **45. are** (be) a typical example. German has five forms: Mann, Mannes, Manne, Männer, Männern. Chinese has one form: ren. English stands in between, with four forms: man, man’s, men, men’s.

V. 写作(共两节, 满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

“深化文明交流互鉴, 推动中华文化更好走向世界”是二十大报告中的重要内容。假定你是李华, 你的英国朋友 Mary 打算到中国留学, 给你发邮件, 向你询问学习汉语的方法, 请你给她回复一封英文邮件。要点如下:

1. 学好汉语的建议;
2. 你的祝愿。

注意: 1. 80 词左右;

2. 可适当增加细节, 使行文连贯。

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读下面的材料, 根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段, 使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Robert and Henry were two friends in the same class. They always played together and went home together. One day Robert and Henry were going home from school, when, on turning a corner, Robert cried out, “A fight! Let’s go and see!”

“No,” said Henry. “Let’s go quietly home and not meddle with (插手) this quarrel. We have nothing to do with it and may get into trouble. Also our parents are expecting to have dinner with us together at home and I don’t want them to worry about me.”

“You are a coward (胆小鬼), and afraid to go,” said Robert, and he ran off. Henry went straight home, and in the afternoon went to school as usual.

But Robert had told all the boys that Henry was a coward, and they laughed at him a great deal. From then on, they looked down upon Henry and didn’t want to play with him together.

Henry was sad but he wasn’t angry with Robert for his rude behavior, because he learned that true courage is shown most in bearing misunderstanding when it was not deserved, and that he ought to be afraid of nothing but doing wrong. Thus, he just ignored the other boys’ laughter and continued to go to school and study as well. However, Robert didn’t invite Henry to go home with him anymore. Instead, he had some other boys who also thought Henry was a coward. Every day after school, they didn’t go home directly but went to the river or somewhere to play games and had a lot of fun.

A few days later, Robert was bathing with his new friends in a river, and got out of his depth. He struggled, and screamed for help, but all in vain. The boys who had called Henry a coward got out of the water as fast as they could, but they did not even try to help him.

注意: 续写 150 词左右。

Robert was fast sinking. _____

Thus, Robert’s life was saved. _____

【参考范文】

第一节 应用文写作

Dear Mary,

I am glad to know that you are coming to China for further study. As you are eager to learn Chinese well within a short time, I would like to offer some suggestions to you.

Firstly, you should have passion to learn Chinese. Besides, watching Chinese movies and listening to Chinese songs can make the learning process much more interesting. As a famous saying goes, “Practice makes perfect.” You should keep practising it as much as possible. Why not find a native speaker as a language partner, and meet him/her on a regular basis?

I do hope you will find these proposals practical. Best wishes!

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

Robert was fast sinking. It seemed as if Robert would be drowned. Just at the moment, Henry happened to be passing by. Hearing the screams, Henry ran to the riverside, threw off his clothes and jumped into the water without hesitation. He reached Robert just as he was sinking at the last moment. By great effort, and with much danger to himself, he brought Robert to the shore.

Thus, Robert’s life was saved. Robert and his new friends were ashamed at having called Henry a coward. They realised that Henry had true courage. They said sorry to Henry for their rude behavior and asked for his forgiveness. Henry forgave them happily. He and Robert were friends again and they went home together as usual. From this, Robert learned what true courage was: never be afraid to do good, but always fear to do evil.

Unit 3

Family matters

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas

Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点;
2. 阅读文章,理解文章大意,并根据文章内容准确理解标题的含义,为文章选择另一个合适的标题;
3. 初步了解不同国家的家庭文化及中外文化的异同;
4. 联系自身实际,简单描述和评价自己的家庭生活,引发对家庭生活主题的初步思考。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇和表达的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇和表达

1. character *n.* (书、剧本、电影等中的)人物,角色
2. approach *v.* 走近,靠近
3. chat *n.* 闲谈,聊天
4. focus *v.* (把……)集中(于)
5. respect *v.* 尊敬,敬重
6. ignore *v.* 忽视,不理
7. professional *adj.* 职业的,专业的
8. suit *v.* 适合
9. talent *n.* 天赋,才能
10. option *n.* 选择,可选择的東西
11. generation *n.* 一代(人)
12. gap *n.* 差距,差别

13. assume *v.* 假定,假设,认为
14. turn to... for 向……寻求/索要……
15. focus on 集中精力于……
16. calm down 镇定下来,平静下来
17. be proud of 以……为骄傲/自豪
18. take one's advice 采纳某人的建议/意见

(二)阅读词汇和表达

1. career *n.* 职业,事业
2. lawyer *n.* 律师
3. studio *n.* (音乐)录音室
4. court *n.* 法院,法庭
5. sigh *n.* 叹气,叹息(尤因厌烦、失望、疲倦等)
6. curtain *n.* (舞台上的)幕,帷幕
7. jump in with both feet 踊跃参加,全心全意投入
8. play music 音乐创作

「课文速览」

表格填空

Like Father, Like Son	
Son	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He decides not to go to 1. university. • He wants to 2. focus on his band and have a career in 3. music. • He wants to work in a 4. studio, not a court. • He thinks making music is a 5. job.
Father	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He wants his son to be a 6. lawyer. • He thinks lawyers help people and are 7. respected by others. • He believes that playing in a 8. band is not a job.
Grandfather	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He tells both the father and the son to 9. calm down. • He advises his 10. grandson to go to university.

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

1. What is the conversation mainly about?
 - A. The conflict between the father and the son about the career.
 - B. The advice from the grandfather.
 - C. The talent of the son.
 - D. The suitable career for the son.
2. What did the son want to be?
 - A. A lawyer.
 - B. A musician.
 - C. A soccer player.
 - D. An engineer.
3. What does the father think of a career as a lawyer?
 - A. Famous but tiring.
 - B. Important but boring.
 - C. Respectable and well-paid.
 - D. Demanding and challenging.
4. What did the grandfather advise his grandson to do?
 - A. To go to university and play music.
 - B. To be a professional musician.
 - C. To have three opinions.
 - D. To ignore adults' advice.
5. Which column may the passage be taken from?
 - A. Entertainment.
 - B. Employment.
 - C. Family.
 - D. Sports.

答案: 1~5 ABCAC

II. 课文语法填空

Grandpa and Father **1. are playing** (play) chess when Son comes in. Son tells his father that he doesn't want to go to university, **2. which** surprises his father. Father is a lawyer, and intends his son to choose the career as well, because it pays well. However, the son is **3. interested** (interest) in

playing music. Father doesn't understand his son and has an **4. argument** (argue) with him. Grandpa has no choice **but 5. to calm** (calm) both of them down. He reminds Father of his decision when Father **6. was** (be) his son's age. At that time, Father chose a career suiting his own talents. Grandpa didn't force Father to follow his will and was even proud **7. of** Father. Finally, Grandpa asks Son to take his advice **8. seriously** (serious) and suggests that he should go to university and play music at **9. the** same time. In his opinion, Son can make lots of new friends at university. Father accepts it, **10. saying** (say), "You can make lots of new lawyer friends."

III. 阅读升华

1. Is Son satisfied with the result? Give your opinion. (Answers may vary.)

According to the phrase "with a sigh" in the text, we can know that Son is not quite satisfied with the result.

2. Analyse the root of the problem in the play and try to voice your opinion. (Answers may vary.)

The old and the young in the family usually hold different opinions about the same topic. The generation gap arises. It is obvious that the generation gap is quite common and it is hard to distinguish who is right and who is wrong. The best way to deal with that problem is to communicate with each other face to face. Stating opinions freely with family members will result in the suitable solution. Additionally, narrowing the generation gap with children is essential to each family member.

课后素养评价(十一)

I. 阅读理解

When children do something wrong, parents expect an apology. Children often try to read their parents' mind or butter up (奉承) their parents by saying "I'm sorry". Even though they did not do anything wrong, they would act in that way because they are scared to make their parents angry. Children always look timid (胆小的) because they

have been anxious or nervous about being punished by parents.

When parents force them to apologise, they will lose the opportunity to think by themselves why they should apologise or what was wrong. So, how can we make them understand properly what was wrong?

If parents never give children a chance and say something like, "That's not good" or "Say you're sorry", children cannot learn to reflect their behavior. So, the first thing that parents should do is to listen to their children, asking questions such as what happened, why they did it. Once children have their parents' attention and feel at ease, they can easily accept their parents' words.

Children do not have enough skill to tell good or bad things, therefore, it is necessary for parents to teach them what was wrong. When parents explain what was wrong to children, short and simple words should be used as much as possible. Moreover, it would be more effective to tell children what kind of behavior makes parents feel a certain way. For example, it would be good to express a mum's feelings with something like "When you hit me, mommy will get hurt." "When you call me stupid, I feel sad."

In this way, children can understand that they hurt their mum or they make her sad, and therefore they will become able to apologise naturally. That would be more understandable for children why their behavior was wrong than being scolded by parents something like "Hitting is not good!" "You cannot say stupid to someone else".

Many people believe that children are too young to understand what parents say. However, children actually can understand parents' feelings if parents use simple words and speak calmly. Parents should avoid speaking one-sidedly and always try to listen to children. Talking to each other would be the best way.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了当孩子出现不当行为时,家长应该如何正确引导。

1. Why do children apologise when they don't want to?

- A. Because they want to show their politeness.
- B. Because they want to please their parents.
- C. Because they show regrets for their mistakes.
- D. Because they want to act like their parents.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“Children often try to read their parents' mind or butter up (奉承) their parents by saying 'I'm sorry'. Even though they did not do anything wrong, they would act in that way because they are scared to

make their parents angry.”可知,即使孩子没有认识到自己的错误,也会道歉,是因为他们想取悦父母。故选 B。

2. What is important for parents in making children apologise?

- A. Timeliness.
- B. Seriousness.
- C. Patience.
- D. Kindness.

C 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“*So, the first thing that parents should do is to listen to their children, asking questions such as what happened, why they did it. Once children have their parents' attention and feel at ease, they can easily accept their parents' words.*”可推知,父母的耐心是非常重要的。故选 C。

3. What should parents do when explaining children's wrongdoings?

- A. Speak briefly and clearly.
- B. Teach them the harm seriously.
- C. Do the same thing to children.
- D. Show what other children do.

A 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“*When parents explain what was wrong to children, short and simple words should be used as much as possible.*”可知,父母在解释孩子的错误行为时应该简洁、明了。故选 A。

4. What's the author's advice in correcting children's bad behaviors?

- A. Trying to let children listen to them.
- B. Communicating with them equally.
- C. Giving them a lesson about behaviors.
- D. Letting them alone because of small age.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“*Parents should avoid speaking one-sidedly and always try to listen to children. Talking to each other would be the best way.*”可推知,作者建议父母平等地与孩子沟通,以纠正孩子的不良行为。故选 B。

II. 七选五

Nowadays parents and their children are spending less and less time communicating with each other. 1 It is reported that American parents today spend about 40 per cent less time with their children than parents did a generation ago. To keep your family time creative and enjoyable, below is a list of helpful family time tips.

Eat together & listen to each other

Most children today don't know the meaning of a family dinnertime. Yet the communication and

unity built during this time is necessary to a healthy family life. Sharing a meal together allows parents and their children the opportunity to talk about each other's lives. 2

Read often

It's important for parents to read to their children. The latest research shows that reading to your children develops an interest in knowledge and contributes to language development. It also increases their concentration on things and helps them become more curious. 3 After reading, ask questions about what the books are about.

Start a hobby or project

Choose a fun activity that your children are interested in. Activities like cooking, fishing or bicycling can be their great hobbies. 4 Once a child learns a new skill, let him or her take the lead under your direction.

Plan a family outing

5 Jump into the family car and go for a drive. Prepare a picnic lunch and visit a local park. Take time to play or ride a bicycle. A slow and relaxing walk in the woods will help parents communicate with their children better. Also, a visit to the zoo or museum will inspire enthusiasm in a child and lead to long discussions.

- A. It is very important for children to exercise.
B. They can open the door to exciting family time.

- C. Sometimes getting out of the house is important.
D. Look for books that your children would enjoy reading.
E. New technology has made video games more popular with children.
F. This is also a time for parents to listen and give advice to their children.
G. As a result, many children are getting less love than their parents once got.

答案: 1~5 GFDBC

【微点写作】有关家庭回忆的记叙文

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. When you disagree with your parents, try to understand the situation from their point of view.
当你不同意你父母的观点时,试着从他们的角度去了解情况。
2. As a child I always hoped that I could grow up as soon as possible so that I could contribute to the construction of our country.
小时候我总是希望自己快点长大,以便能为祖国的建设作出贡献。
3. It can be difficult when your parents treat you like a child but expect you to act like an adult.
当你的父母把你当孩子看待,却期望你表现得像个成年人时,这可能会很困难。

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas

Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 能够准确获取关键信息,并掌握戏剧的文体特征、基本要素和常用的阅读方法;
3. 能够正确看待并妥善解决日常生活中的家庭矛盾,树立正确的家庭观,加深对单元主题的理解。

自主式预习

- I. 根据语境写出句中**黑体**单词的汉语意思
1. I often have a **chat** with my friends on the telephone. 聊天
 2. My sister is studying law in the university and she will become a **lawyer** in the future. 律师

3. Faulkner has been considered as the greatest American novelist of his **generation**. 一代(人)
4. The girl suffered a terrible pain in her knees, which made it impossible for her to continue her **career** as a tennis player. 职业,事业

5. "I'm afraid we don't have enough money to buy it," **sighed** the mother. 叹息
6. As you **approach** the town, you'll see the college on the left. 走近
7. A **studio** is a room where radio or television programmes are recorded, CDs are produced, or films are made. (音乐)录音室
8. Before the **curtain** fell, the audience rose to their feet and a storm of applause burst out. (舞台上的)幕,帷幕
9. These measures are aimed at narrowing the **gap** between the rich and the poor. 差距
10. Four people will appear in **court** today, charged with fraud (欺诈罪). 法院,法庭

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>assume</u> <i>v.</i> 假定,假设,认为	<u>assumption</u> <i>n.</i> 假定,假设,认为
<u>respect</u> <i>v. & n.</i> 尊敬,敬重	<u>respectful</u> <i>adj.</i> 礼貌的;恭敬的
	<u>respectable</u> <i>adj.</i> 体面的;令人尊敬的
	<u>respective</u> <i>adj.</i> 分别的,各自的
<u>ignore</u> <i>v.</i> 忽视,不理	<u>ignorant</u> <i>adj.</i> 无知的,愚昧的
	<u>ignorance</u> <i>n.</i> 无知,愚昧
<u>professional</u> <i>adj.</i> 职业的,专业的	<u>profession</u> <i>n.</i> 行业,职业
<u>suit</u> <i>v.</i> 适合	<u>suitable</u> <i>adj.</i> 适当的
<u>talent</u> <i>n.</i> 天赋,才能	<u>talented</u> <i>adj.</i> 有天赋的,有才能的

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>option</u> <i>n.</i> 选择,可选择的 东西	<u>optional</u> <i>adj.</i> 可选择的
<u>character</u> <i>n.</i> (书、剧本、电影等中的)人物,角色;个性,性格;特点,特征,特色;人格,品行;字,字体;符号	<u>characteristic</u> <i>adj.</i> 典型的,独特的 <i>n.</i> 特征,特色,特点

III. 补全短语

1. focus on 集中(注意力)于……;聚焦于……
2. be interested in 对……感兴趣
3. calm down 冷静下来
4. raise one's voice 提高嗓门
5. be proud of 以……为傲,对……感到自豪
6. in the end 最终,最后
7. take one's advice 采纳某人的建议
8. jump in with both feet 踊跃参加,全心全意投入
9. at the same time 同时
10. turn to... for 向……寻求/索要……

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式:完全倒装句
Oh look, here comes my boy.
哟,我的孩子来了。
2. 句型公式:because 引导表语从句
You just assume I want to be a lawyer, but that's only because you are a lawyer.
您以为我想当一名律师,可那只是因为您自己是一名律师。
3. 句型公式:动词-ing 形式作主语
Playing in a band is not a job.
搞乐队根本不是一份工作。

任务型课堂

1. approach *v. & n.* 走近,靠近

(教材原文)nervously **approaching** the table
小心翼翼地走近桌子

一感 读句子感悟用法

Panic swept through the swimmers as they saw the shark **approaching**.

当游泳者看到鲨鱼靠近时,他们惊慌失措。

All **the approaches to** the airport were blocked by the police.

所有通往机场的路都被警察封锁了。

The best approach to building up your body is to do exercise every day.

增强体质的最佳方法就是每天进行体育锻炼。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)approach sb/sth 靠近/接近某人/某物 with... approaching 在……快到的时候 (2)an/the approach to ……的方法/途径 the approach to _____ sth 做某事的方法 at/with the approach of 在快到……的时候 (3)approachable <i>adj.</i> 可接近的;能达到的;和蔼可亲的,平易近人的
探究结论	(2)doing

【易混辨析】way, means, manner, method 和 approach 都有“方法”之意,但用法、搭配不同

(做)……的方法	用这种方法
way to do/of (doing) sth	in this way
method of (doing) sth	with this method
means of (doing) sth	by this means
approach to (doing) sth	in this manner

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

- ① All the approaches to the palace were guarded by troops.
 ② The job market has changed and our approaches to finding (find) work must change as well.
 ③ At the meeting they discussed three different approaches (approach) to the study of mathematics.

(2) 一句多译

如果你用这种方法做,你会成功的。

- ① If you do it in this way, you'll succeed. (way)
 ② If you do it with this method, you'll succeed. (method)
 ③ If you do it by this means, you'll succeed. (means)
 ④ If you do it in this manner, you'll succeed. (manner)

2. assume v. 假定,假设,认为

(教材原文) You just **assume** I want to be a lawyer, but that's only because you are a lawyer. 您以为我想当一名律师,可那只是因为您自己是一名律师。

一感 读句子感悟用法

So we think it is reasonable to **assume** they lived in these caves, regardless of the cold.

因此,我们有理由认为他们不顾严寒,就住在这些洞穴里。

It is assumed that global warming and climate change could cause even more disasters in the future.

人们认为全球变暖和气候变化在将来会引起更多的灾难。

As far as I know, a great many people **make the assumption** that he is right.

据我所知,许多人认为他是正确的。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) assume sb/sth (to be) + <i>n./adj.</i> 假定/假设某人/某物为 _____ is (generally) assumed that... 人们(普遍)认为…… assume (that)... 认为……,假设…… (2) assumption <i>n.</i> 假定,假设 _____ an assumption/assumptions about 对……作出假设 on the assumption that... 在假定……的基础上 (3) assuming <i>conj.</i> 假如,假设……为真 assuming (that)... 假定…… (4) assumed <i>adj.</i> 假定的,假设的
探究结论	(1)It (2)make

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

- ① Let's assume his idea about the matter to be (be) right. What should we do to solve it?
 ② We are working on the assumption (assume) that everyone invited will turn up.
 (2) 根据提示补全句子
 ① A lot of people make an assumption that (对……作出假设) hunger only exists (存在) in that country.
 ② Assuming that (假定) the house is for sale, would you buy it?

3. suit v. 适合

(教材原文) Yes, and you have found the career that **suits** your talents.
 是的,而且你找到了适合你天赋的职业。

一感 读句子感悟用法

A good teacher **suits** his lesson **to** the age of his pupils.

优秀的老师会使他的授课适合学生的年龄特点。

Not all men **are suitable for** that kind of work.
 不是所有的人都适合从事那类工作。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) suit sb fine 很合某人的意;对某人很合适 suit sth _____ sth 使某事物适合于另一事物 (2) suitable <i>adj.</i> 适当的,相配的 be suitable _____ ... 适合于…… be suitable to do sth 适合做某事
探究结论	(1)to (2)for

【易混辨析】suit/fit/match

易混词	用法
suit	多指符合需要、口味、性格、条件等。尤其用来指衣着的样式、颜色、设计等适合
fit	多指大小、形状等适合
match	“相配,配得上”,指在品质、颜色、设计等方面相当或匹配

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① He can suit his conversation to whoever he is with.

② What aspects of your study habits are not suitable to match (match) your learning style?

(2) 一句多译

如果你想坐公共汽车去,我也没问题。

① If you want to go by bus, that suits me. (suit)

② If you want to go by bus, that is suitable for me. (suitable)

4. 完全倒装句

(教材原文) Oh look, **here comes my boy**.

哦,看呐,我的孩子来了。

[句式分析] 本句是由 here 引导的完全倒装句。

一感 读句子感悟用法

There goes the bell.

铃响了。

Here comes the bus.

公共汽车来了。

Out rushed a cat from under the bed.

从床底下跑出来一只猫。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	表示时间、地点、方位的副词或介词,如 here, there, now, then, up, down, in, out, off 等放在句首,主语是_____,且谓语动词是 be, lie, sit, stand, come, go, exist, live, rush 等不及物动词时,句子用完全倒装。
探究结论	名词

名师点拨 ■■■■

如果主语是人称代词,则不能进行完全倒装。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Here are (be) four common email accidents, and how to recover.

② At the meeting place of the Yangtze River and the Jialing River lies (lie) Chongqing, one of the largest cities in China.

(2) 句型转换

My tips for you are here.

→ Here are my tips for you.

课后素养评价(十二)

I. 单词拼写

- Absorbed in painting, John didn't notice evening approaching (临近).
- On no account can we ignore (忽视) the value of knowledge, as well as practical experience.
- They chatted (闲聊) about the film shown last night.
- Eight options (选择) were presented for consideration.
- If it's a legal matter, you need to seek professional (专业的) advice.
- Mickey Mouse has become one of the popular cartoon characters (人物) known all over the world.

- It is generally assumed (假设) that stress is caused by too much work.
- But in my heart, I want to be noticed and show my talent (才能).
- He was a scientist and was respected (尊敬) by all who knew him for his kindness.
- I don't think this coat really suits (适合) me. Please show me another one.

II. 短语填空

calm down; focus on; in surprise; in the end; be proud of

- She looked at the man in surprise and said she did not know him at all.

续表

5. Her speech made a profound **impact** on me. 作用, 影响
6. The **theme** of the project is “Protecting Health from Climate Change”. 主题
7. Taking everything into consideration, the **event** was a great success. 活动
8. There are a number of different points of view on this **issue**. 争论的问题
9. A **range** of activities have been introduced aimed at improving children's health. 一系列

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>currently</u> <i>adv.</i> 现时, 当前	<u>current</u> <i>adj.</i> 当前的, 现行的; 通用的; 流通的; 流行的 <i>n.</i> 水流; 气流; 电流; 思潮; 潮流
<u>regularly</u> <i>adv.</i> 经常	<u>regular</u> <i>adj.</i> 有规律的, 频繁的 <i>n.</i> 常客, 老主顾; 主力(或正式)队员
<u>responsible</u> <i>adj.</i> (对事故、错误、罪行等)负有责任的, 应承担责任的	<u>responsibility</u> <i>n.</i> 责任, 职责; 任务
<u>memory</u> <i>n.</i> 记忆, 回忆	<u>memorise</u> <i>v.</i> 记忆, 记住
	<u>memorable</u> <i>adj.</i> 值得纪念的, 难忘的
<u>nation</u> <i>n.</i> 国家	<u>national</u> <i>adj.</i> 国家的; 民族的
<u>aim</u> <i>v.</i> 力求达到	<u>aimless</u> <i>adj.</i> 没有方向的, 无目标的, 无计划的
	<u>aimlessly</u> <i>adv.</i> 漫无目的地
<u>observe</u> <i>v.</i> 庆祝, 过(节日、生日等); 观察; 遵守(法律、习俗等); 评论	<u>observation</u> <i>n.</i> 观察, 观测; 监视; (尤指据所见、所闻、所读而作的) 评论
	<u>observer</u> <i>n.</i> 观察者; 观察员

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>apologise</u> <i>v.</i> 道歉	<u>apology</u> <i>n.</i> 道歉
<u>stress</u> <i>n.</i> 重音, 重读 <i>v.</i> 强调, 重视	<u>stressful</u> <i>adj.</i> 充满压力的; 令人紧张的
	<u>stressed</u> <i>adj.</i> 感到有压力的; 焦虑不安的
<u>strength</u> <i>n.</i> 强烈程度; 力量, 力气	<u>strong</u> <i>adj.</i> 强壮的
	<u>strengthen</u> <i>v.</i> 加强

III. 补全短语

- in fact 事实上; 实际上
- even though/if 即使; 尽管
- in one's forties 在某人四十几岁时
- kind of 有点儿
- be related to 与……有关
- a wide range of 大范围的, 广泛的
- be busy with sth 忙于某事
- be worried about 担心……, 担忧……
- make up for 弥补, 补偿(令人不快的遭遇或损失)
- have a/an... impact on 对……有影响
- work on 忙于……; 从事于……

IV. 重点句式补全

- 句型公式: the same as...
In fact, we stayed at the same campsite as we did ten years ago.
事实上, 我们和十年前一样住在同一个营地。
- 句型公式: 虚拟语气
I wish she had come!
我真希望她来了!
- 句型公式: 不定式作目的状语
To make up for it, next week we plan to go to the countryside together.
为了弥补这一点, 下周我们计划一起去乡下。

任务型课堂

1. **responsible** *adj.* (对事故、错误、罪行等)负有责任的, 应承担责任的(教材原文) Who's **responsible**?

谁负责?

一感 读句子感悟用法

The pilot of the plane should **be responsible for**

the passengers' safety.

飞行员应对乘客的安全负责。

You are an adult now and you need to **take responsibility for** your actions.

现在你是成年人了, 你需要对自己的行为负责。

It is your responsibility to look after the children.

照看这些孩子是你的责任。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) be responsible _____ 对……负责, 是……的原因
	(2) responsibility <i>n.</i> 责任, 义务
探究结论	It's one's responsibility _____ sth 做某事是某人的责任
	have/take/shoulder responsibility for 为……负责
	a sense of responsibility 责任感
探究结论	(1) for (2) to do

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

① It's your responsibility to inform (inform) us of any changes.

② Cigarette smoking takes responsibility (responsible) for about 90% of deaths from lung cancer.

③ The storm is thought to be responsible for as many as four deaths.

2. aim *v.* 力求达到; 力争做到; 瞄准; 目的是; 旨在; 针对 *n.* [C] 目标; 目的 [U] 瞄准

(教材原文) It **aims** to deepen people's understanding of issues that are related to families.

它旨在加深人们对与家庭有关的问题的理解。

一感 读句子感悟用法

He **aimed** the gun **at** the bottle.

他举枪瞄准了瓶子。

The programme **is aimed at** teenagers.

这项计划的对象是青少年。

A science camp will be held next month **with the aim of** encouraging more students to throw themselves into scientific research.

下个月将举行一场科学夏令营, 目标是鼓励更多的学生投身科学研究。

You must **take aim at** the fierce animal carefully before you shoot.

射击凶猛的动物前你必须得仔细瞄准。

After several hours of **aimless** searching, they were getting low on fuel.

在经历了几个小时的漫无目的的搜寻之后, 他们的燃料不足了。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) aim... _____ ... 用……瞄准……; 使……针对……
	aim at/for... 力求获得……; 瞄准……; 目标是……
探究结论	aim at doing sth/aim to do sth 力争做某事
	be aimed at (doing) sth 旨在(做)某事
	_____ the aim of... 有……目标
探究结论	achieve one's aim 实现某人的目标
	(2) _____ <i>adj.</i> 无目的的, 无目标的
	(3) aimlessly <i>adv.</i> 漫无目的地
探究结论	(1) at; with (2) aimless

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

① In the newspaper of our school there is a column called "Foreign Cultures" aiming (aim) to introduce foreign customs.

② His life seems aimless (aim): he is just playing about, doing nothing.

③ The police found the boy wandering aimlessly (aim) in the street, not knowing where to go.

④ This is an activity aimed/aiming (aim) at improving the students' ability to listen and speak.

3. apologise *v.* 道歉

(教材原文) Act out the conversation to **apologise** to a family member.

表演一个向家人道歉的对话, 向家人道歉。

一感 读句子感悟用法

After a while, she **apologised for** the way she behaved at the beginning.

过了一会儿, 她为自己一开始的行为道歉。

I must **make an apology to him for not going** to his party.

没有参加他的聚会, 我得向他道歉。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)apologise to sb _____ (doing) sth 因(做)某事向某人道歉 (2)apology n. 道歉;辩白 make/offer an apology _____ sb for (doing) sth 因(做)某事向某人道歉 accept/refuse one's apology 接受/拒绝某人的道歉
探究结论	(1)for (2)to

三评 多维度评价测试

(1)单句语法填空

①You must apologise to her for keeping (keep) her waiting.②I offered her an apology (apologise), but she wouldn't accept it.

(2)一句多译

你应该为你的粗心向她道歉。

①You should make an apology to her for your carelessness. (apology)②You should apologise to her for your carelessness. (apologise)

语法探究

复习时态

「语法感知」

①Grandfather and Father, seated at the table, **are playing** chess.②You **know** you can always turn to your dad for a chat.③I've **decided** not to go to university.④I knew you'd **say** that.⑤I **told** you to calm down, both of you!⑥If you go to university and play music at the same time, you **will have** two options for your future.⑦She **had learned** some English before she came to the institute.⑧Jenny **was looking** for a seat when, luckily, a man got up and left.1. 句①中黑体部分的构成形式为“are+现在分词”,故其时态为现在进行时。2. 句②中黑体部分的构成形式为动词原形,表示一种客观事实,故其时态为一般现在时。3. 句③中黑体部分的构成形式为“have+过去分词”,表示过去发生的动作一直持续到现在,故其时态为现在完成时。4. 句④中黑体部分的构成形式为“would+动词原形”,故其时态为过去将来时。5. 句⑤中黑体部分的构成形式为动词过去式,故其时态为一般过去时。6. 句⑥中黑体部分的构成形式为“will+动词原形”,故其时态为一般将来时。7. 句⑦中黑体部分的构成形式为“had+过去分词”,表示过去的过去,故其时态为过去完成时。8. 句⑧中黑体部分的构成形式为“was+现在分词”,故其时态为过去进行时。

「语法精讲」

一、理解概念

在英语中,不同的时间里以不同方式发生的动作或存在的状态要用动词不同的形式表示,动词的这种不同形式构成了动词的时态。一般说来,发生在现在的事情用现在的时态进行描述;发生在过去的事情用过去的时态进行描述;将要发生的事情用将来的时态进行描述。

二、语法规则

(一)一般时态

1. 一般现在时

(1)构成

一般现在时主要由动词原形构成。动词 be 的第一人称单数形式用 am,第三人称单数形式用 is,其他人称形式均用 are。动词 have 的第三人称单数形式用 has。实义动词的第三人称单数形式的变化规则:

变化规则	例词
一般情况在动词后加-s	hate—hates
以 s, x, sh, ch 或 o 结尾的动词加-es	discuss—discusses fix—fixes wash—washes teach—teaches go—goes
以“辅音字母+y”结尾的动词,变 y 为 i 再加-es	carry—carries study—studies

(2)一般现在时的用法

①表示经常发生的、习惯性的、反复出现的动作或状态。常与表示习惯的副词(词组)always, every time, now and then, often, seldom, never, sometimes, usually, every day/night 等连用。

He **often goes** to work by bus, and he **takes** a walk with his wife after dinner **every day**.

他经常乘公共汽车去上班,而且每天晚饭后和妻子一块儿散步。

②按时间表、时刻表、日程表等安排将要发生的动作。只限于 go, arrive, leave, start, stay, return, begin, come 等动词。

Look at the timetable. Hurry up! Flight 4026 **takes off** at 18:20.

看看时间表。快点儿吧! 4026 航班 18:20 起飞。

③用在时间、条件或让步状语从句中表示将来。

If it **is** fine tomorrow, we will go there.

如果明天是晴天,我们就去那里。

2. 一般过去时

(1)构成

一般过去时由动词的过去式构成。动词的过去式的变化规则:

变化规则	例词
一般在动词后加-ed	look—looked
以 e 结尾的动词后加-d	hope—hoped like—liked
以“辅音字母+y”结尾的动词,变 y 为 i 再加-ed	study—studied try—tried
以重读闭音节或/r/音节结尾,词尾只有一个辅音字母时,双写词尾的辅音字母再加-ed	stop—stopped prefer—preferred admit—admitted permit—permitted

(2)一般过去时的用法

表示过去一段时间内经常性或习惯性的动作。常与 often, usually, seldom 等表示频度的副词连用。还可以表示在过去某一时间所发生的动作或存在的状态,与现在没有关系,常与 yesterday, the other day, last week, the day before yesterday 等表示过去的时间状语连用。

In 1931, Addams **became** the first American woman to win the Nobel Peace Prize.

1931年,亚当斯成为第一位赢得诺贝尔和平奖的美国女性。

3. 一般将来时

(1)构成

一般将来时由“shall/will+动词原形”构成。其中 shall 用于第一人称,will 用于各个人称。

(2)一般将来时的用法

表示现在看来以后要发生的动作或存在的状态,常与表示将来的时间状语 tomorrow, next year, “in+一段时间”等连用。“will+动词原形”还可以表示说话时临时作出的决定。

—What time is it?

——几点了?

—I have no idea. But just a minute, I **will check** it for you.

——我不知道。稍等,我给你查查。

(3)其他表示“将来”的结构及用法

①“be going to+动词原形”表示按计划、打算要做某事或根据某种迹象预示着要发生某事。

Look! Dark clouds are gathering. It **is going to rain** soon, I think.

瞧! 乌云正在聚集。我想快要下雨了。

②“be to+动词原形”表示按计划、约定或按职责、义务必须做的事或即将发生的动作。

You **are to hand in** your papers by 10 o'clock.

到十点钟你们就得交试卷。

③“be about to+动词原形”表示正要或即将要做某事,该结构不与表示具体的将来时间状语连用。

Tom **was about to close** the window when his attention was caught by a bird.

汤姆正要关上窗户,就在这时一只鸟引起了他的注意。

名师点拨 ■■■■

如果表示从过去某时看将要发生的动作或存在的状态,要用过去将来时(would/should+动词原形)。该时态主要出现在间接引语中。

I telephoned him yesterday to ask what I **would/should do** next week.

我昨天给他打电话,问他我下周干什么。

(二)进行时态

1. 构成

现在进行时由“am/is/are+现在分词”构成;过去进行时由“was/were+现在分词”构成;将来进行时由“will/shall+be+现在分词”构成;现在完成进行时由“have/has+been+现在分词”构成。现在分词的变化规则:

变化规则	例词
一般情况在动词后加-ing	ask—asking
以不发音的 e 结尾的动词, 去掉 e 再加-ing	write—writing take—taking face—facing
以重读闭音节结尾, 且末尾只有一个辅音字母时, 双写该辅音字母再加-ing	cut—cutting begin—beginning swim—swimming
以 ie 结尾的动词, 变 ie 为 y 再加-ing	lie—lying die—dying

2. 进行时的用法

(1) 现在进行时的用法

①表示说话时正在进行或表示现阶段正在进行的动作, 虽然此时此刻该动作不一定正在进行。

—I hear you **are working** in a pub. What's it like?
——我听说你在酒吧工作。感觉怎么样?

—Well, it's very hard work and I'm always tired, but I don't mind.

——哦, 工作很辛苦, 我也总是很累, 不过我不介意。

②表示按计划或安排即将发生的动作, 常用于 go, come, leave, start, arrive, return, work, sleep, stay, have, wear, run out 等动词(词组)。

Food supplies in the flood-stricken area **are running out**. We must act immediately before there's none left.

洪灾区的食物供给快要吃完了。我们必须在食物吃完前马上行动。

(2) 过去进行时的用法

①表示过去某一时刻或某一段时间内正在发生或进行的动作, 常与表示过去的时间状语从句以及 at that time, at that moment, at this time yesterday, at ten o'clock yesterday 等短语连用。

He must have sensed that I **was looking at** him. He suddenly glanced at me and said quietly, "Why are you staring at me like that?"

他一定感觉到了我正在看他。他突然瞥了我一眼, 轻声说: “你为什么那样盯着我看?”

②表示过去的两个动作中持续进行的一个, 常用在 “be doing... when...” 结构中。

Jack **was working** in the lab **when** the power cut occurred.

杰克正在实验室里工作, 这时突然断电了。

(3) 将来进行时的用法

表示将来某一时刻或某一段时间内正在发生或进行的动作, 常与一些标志性的时间状语连用, 如 at this time tomorrow, by then, from 1:30 to 4:30 tomorrow 等。

Jane can't attend the meeting at 3 o'clock this afternoon because she **will be teaching** a class at that time.

简不能参加今天下午三点的会议了, 因为她那个时间在授课。

(4) 现在完成进行时的用法

①表示发生在过去一直持续到现在的动作, 常与延续性动词连用。这个动作可能刚停止, 也可能仍继续下去。

She **has been writing** the letter since four o'clock in the afternoon.

从下午四点钟到现在, 她一直在写信。

②表示在现在以前的某个阶段重复发生的事情。

He **has been calling** me since 10 minutes ago.

十分钟前他就一直在给我打电话。

③强调动作延续时间长或表达某些感情色彩。

We **have been expecting** to see you for a long time. 我们盼望见到你已经很久了。

名师点拨 ■■■■

某些不能用于进行时的动词同样也不能用于现在完成进行时, 只能用于现在完成时, 如 see, hear 等表示感官的动词; have, be 等表示状态的动词; like 等表示喜好的动词和 know 等表示思维活动的动词。

(三) 完成时态

1. 构成

现在完成时由 “have/has + 过去分词” 构成; 过去完成时由 “had + 过去分词” 构成; 将来完成时由 “shall/will + have done” 构成, 第一人称用 shall/will, 其他人称都用 will。

2. 完成时的用法

(1) 现在完成时的用法

①表示发生在过去的动作或存在的状态到说话时刚刚完成或结束, 而对现在仍有影响。句中常用的单词或短语状语: already, just, yet, never, before, lately, recently, in the last/past few days/years, up to now, till now, so far 等。

He **has already received** three similar invitations this week.

本周他已经收到了三个相似的邀请。

②表示从过去某时开始而延续至今(可能还要延续

下去)的动作或状态。常用的时间状语:“since+时间点”“for+时间段”等。

—I remember you were a talented pianist at college. Can you play the piano for me?

——我记得你在大学时是一位极有才华的钢琴师。你能为我弹钢琴吗?

—Sorry, I haven't played the piano for years.

——抱歉,我好多年没有弹钢琴了。

③在条件和时间状语从句中,用现在完成时表示将来某时间前已完成的动作。

Will you come to my office when you **have finished** your work?

你完成工作后到我办公室来一下,好吗?

(2)过去完成时的用法

①表示在过去某一时间或某一动作之前完成的动作或存在的状态,即过去的过去。句中一般有明确的表示“过去的过去”的时间状语(从句)。

When walking down the street, I came across David, whom I **hadn't seen** for years.

沿街走时,我偶然遇见了戴维,我们已经有好几年没见了。

②表示从过去某一时间开始,一直延续到过去的另一时间的动作或状态,句中常用的词汇或表达: before, by then, by that time, by the end of, “by the time+从句”等。

It took me a long time **before** I was able to fully appreciate what they **had done** for me.

很久以后我才能够完全领会到他们为我做的一切。

③表示“愿望、打算”的动词(如 hope, want, expect, think, mean, suppose, plan, intend)用于过去完成时表示过去本打算实现而未实现的希望或计划。

I **had intended** to call on you yesterday, but I had an unexpected visitor.

昨天我本来打算去看你,但是来了一位不速之客。

(3)将来完成时的用法

①表示动作或状态延续到将来某一段时间,常用延续性动词。该时态多与 by, for, before 等词连用。

We **shall have walked** a long way **before** we reach there.

在我们到达那儿之前,我们将要走很长一段路。

②表示动作在将来某一段时间之前已结束,但其影响却持续到那一时间,常用终止性动作。

You **will have reached** Shanghai **by this time tomorrow**.

明天这个时候你应该已经到达上海了。

③在时间和条件状语从句中要用现在完成时代替将来完成时。

I will give my opinion **when I have read** the book through.

我读完这本书后,会给出我的意见。

(4)常使用完成时的句型

①This/It/That is the first/second... time + that sb has/have done sth.

This/It/That was the first/second... time + that sb had done sth.

这是/那是某人第几次做某事。

②It/This is/was the + 最高级 + 名词 + (that) 定语从句(从句中的谓语用完成时)

③It is/has been + 一段时间 + since sb did sth
It was/had been + 一段时间 + since sb had done sth.

自从……以来多久了。

④hardly/scarcely... when.../no sooner... than...
一……就……(主句用过去完成时,从句用一般过去时)

It was the third time (that) he had made the same mistake.

那是他第三次犯同样的错误了。

No sooner had I got home than the rain poured down.

我刚到家,大雨就倾盆而下。

「语法闯关」

I. 单句语法填空

- If it turns (turn) cold again, they'll dive back down. But they will come out again if it is warm.
- He was looking (look) for a house when he saw an advertisement in a newspaper one day.
- To the customers' satisfaction, teas of the same high quality are served (serve) in each shop every day.
- After everything was done (do) and just after he left the barber's, he saw a man in the street with long dirty hair.
- It's said that running regularly is (be) more effective at lengthening life than walking, cycling or swimming.

- Confucius believed knives would remind people of killings and were (be) too violent (暴力的) for use at the table.
- Ice Bucket Challenge (冰桶挑战) is a great success until now, and lots of money has been received (receive).
- By next Thursday, they will have completed (complete) the construction (建造) of the new school.
- One study in America found that students' grades improved (improve) a little after the school introduced uniforms.
- Sorry, I forgot (forget) to buy the book you need for you.
—Never mind. I will buy (buy) it myself after school.

II. 根据提示补全句子

- One day I saw an advertisement in a local newspaper. I rang up the company (打电话给公司), and I was given the job immediately.

- Mother promised she would buy me a bicycle (她会给我买一辆自行车).
- When summer comes (夏天到来时), they will invite their students to pick the fresh vegetables!
- Last summer I went to London for a holiday. I spent just a week (只度过一周的时间) there.
- The new secretary is supposed to (应该) report to the manager as soon as she arrives. (suppose)
- In 2020, I felt (我感觉) I needed a new challenge so I decided to take a film-making course.
- This is the first time I have come to Chengdu (我来成都) and I am truly impressed by the lifestyle of people here.
- When I was a child, I hoped to live in the city. I thought (我认为) I would be happy there.
- Hearing the strange noise, Tony was scared and began to cry (开始哭泣).
- A woman saw him crying and told him (告诉他) to wait outside a shop.

课后素养评价(十三)

I. 选词填空

regularly; theme; currently; be related to; observe; apologise; issue; memory; stress; event

- Can you tell me how the Spring Festival is usually observed in this country?
- We are currently advertising for a new sales manager.
- You misunderstood your brother so I think you should apologise to him.
- The theme of the book is the conflict (冲突) between love and duty.
- For your health, do remember to take the medicine regularly three times a day.
- In the future, pay increases will be related to productivity in our company.
- As he aged, he found that his memory got worse and worse.
- Too much time was spent discussing environmental issues.
- It's advised that we organise more social events.

- Only then did the mother realise the stress his son was under.

II. 单句语法填空

- Who do you think is responsible (responsibility) for the car accident that happened yesterday?
- Can I help you, Madam?
—No, thank you. I am waiting (wait) for my order.
- Can I call you back at two o'clock this afternoon?
—I'm sorry, but by then I will be flying (fly) to Beijing. How about five?
- I have read (read) half of the English novel, and I'll try to finish it at the weekend.
- Did you have difficulty finding Ann's house?
—Not really. She had given (give) us clear directions and we were able to find it easily.
- There were 120 students whose ages ranged from 10 to 18.
- The organisation aims to provide (provide) assistance to people in need.
- He hurried home, never once looking back to see if he was being followed (follow).

9. More efforts will be made (make) in the years ahead to get more progress.
10. Why didn't you tell me about your trouble last week? If you had told (tell) me, I could have helped.
11. There's no doubt that the invention of the computer has an impact on human society.
12. Cycling is good exercise. It strengthens (strong) all the muscles (肌肉) of the body.

III. 阅读理解

Whenever I made the 11-hour drive from Indiana to upstate New York, I was to expect a tasty hot meal upon arrival at my mum's. Even when well into her 90s, she was still cooking in more ways than one, with a kitchen and a refrigerator organised in a style the military could learn from.

In later years I usually arrived for family get-togethers a day or two ahead of my brother Dave, a retired and well-travelled lover of good food, who drove to upstate New York all the way from North Carolina. Within minutes of his customary late-night appearance at our old childhood home he would eat greedily Mum's reheated meal, and then begin bringing in the boxes and bags of groceries (食品杂货) he'd packed from home or stopped to pick up along the way, which included ingredients (材料) for at least one international feast for a dozen or more family members who lived in the area.

Generally, after several meals, my sister and I would clean up and up and up, as Dave lay before the TV on the family room floor by Mum in her easy chair.

When it was time for Dave to start his long journey home, he often left several large containers of leftovers. If I wasn't going to be around for a day or two longer, the kitchen garbage disposal would have a field day. Mum reluctantly, but determinedly, would drop her instinctual repugnance (本能的反感) for waste of any kind and clear the shelves of suspect content.

But if I stayed longer than Dave, I'd greedily preserve certain favourites for myself and the nieces and nephews who would continue to visit.

"Can I get rid of this, whatever it is?" Mum would sometimes ask.

"Noooo! I love that! I'll finish it. I promise," I'd plead (恳求), my mouth watering for those hot, spicy (辛辣的) noodles. Or: "I bet Meg or Mark will polish that off. Just let it sit in the cheese drawer until tomorrow."

And so the fridge gradually emptied.

When I drove off, I knew Mum would miss us, but I had little doubt that getting her kitchen and shelf space back took the sharp edge of longing right off.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。作者讲述了自己和兄弟姐妹回家聚会的美好经历。

1. What do we know about the author's mum?
 - A. She used to drive.
 - B. She was disorganised.
 - C. She was good at cooking.
 - D. She served in the military.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“a tasty hot meal upon arrival at my mum's... the military could learn from”可知,作者的母亲擅长烹饪。

2. What would Dave do after eating his late-night meal?
 - A. Watch TV.
 - B. Go to sleep.
 - C. Do the dishes.
 - D. Bring in groceries.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“then begin bringing in the boxes and bags of groceries (食品杂货) he'd packed from home or stopped to pick up along the way”可知,Dave 吃完夜宵后会把自己家带的或沿途买的各种食品杂货从车上拿进屋。

3. If the author and Dave left home on the same day, what would their mum do?
 - A. She would throw away lots of leftovers.
 - B. She would let them carry some leftovers.
 - C. She would try to finish the leftovers by herself.
 - D. She would share the leftovers with other families.

A 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“If I wasn't going to be around for a day or two longer, the kitchen garbage disposal would have a field day. Mum... clear the shelves of suspect content.”可

知,如果作者和 Dave 同一天离开,母亲会坚决清理掉厨房大量的剩饭。

4. What would the author do if he stayed longer than his brother?

- A. Get rid of all the leftovers quickly.
B. Make good use of the leftovers.
C. Cook more food for his mum.
D. Take his mum out for a drive.

B 推理判断题。根据第五段中的“I'd greedily preserve certain favourites for myself and the nieces and nephews”,第七段中的“I bet Meg or Mark will polish that off.”及第八段中的“the fridge gradually emptied”可推断,如果作者比 Dave 晚走,他会充分利用剩饭,避免浪费。

【微点写作】有关家庭回忆的记叙文

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

- The key to keeping the peace is regular and honest communication.
保持和平的关键是定期且诚实的交流。
- Chinese children grow up with warnings against wasting a single grain of rice, out of respect for farmers' labour.
中国的孩子在很小的时候就受到教育,不能浪费每一粒粮食,这是出于对农民劳动的尊重。
- How I wish I had not wasted so much time when I was young!
我真希望我小时候没有浪费这么多时间!

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

学习任务及目标

- 识记本课时的重要语言点;
- 能够理解课文内容,复述 Brownlee 兄弟的故事,掌握新闻特写的基本特征和常用的阅读方法;
- 对家庭生活、家庭成员关系等话题有更深入的理解;
- 掌握短信的用词和语气以及非连续性文本的阅读方法与策略。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇和表达的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇和表达

- admire *v.* 钦佩,赞美,羡慕
- judge *v.* 认为,判断
- settle *v.* 和解,结束(争论)
- feature *n.* (报纸或杂志的)特写
- typically *adv.* 一般,通常
- individual *adj.* 独特的,与众不同的(一般含褒义)
- style *n.* 风格
- extra *adj.* 额外的,另外的
- detail *n.* 细节,细微之处
- contain *v.* 包含,含有
- summary *n.* 总结,概要
- powerful *adj.* 强有力的,有影响(感染)力的
- obviously *adv.* 明显地,显而易见地
- athlete *n.* 运动员,田径运动员
- medal *n.* 奖牌,勋章

- series *n.* 系列比赛
 - despite *prep.* 尽管,虽然
 - throughout *prep.* 在整个期间,自始至终
 - entire *adj.* 全部的,整个的
 - million *num.* 许多,无数
 - somehow *adv.* 用某种方法,不知怎的
 - indeed *adv.* 当然,确实(用于强调陈述或回答)
 - settle for 勉强接受,将就
 - in the lead 领先
 - now and then 偶尔,有时
 - leave... behind 不管;把……落下/留下/落在后面
- (二)阅读词汇和表达

- track *n.* 跑道
- media *n.* 新闻媒体,传媒
- triathlon *n.* 铁人三项运动
- onto *prep.* 到……上,向……上,朝……上
- enormously *adv.* 非常,极其
- disqualify *v.* (因犯规而)取消……的资格
- finish line 终点线

「课文速览」

表格填空

JUST A BROTHER			
The 1. final part of the 2016 World Triathlon Series	During the race	Just 2. <u>700</u> metres to go	Alistair was in 3. <u>third</u> place and Jonny was in the lead.
		Around the 4. <u>corner</u>	Jonny was about to fall onto the track and Alistair helped to pull him towards the 5. <u>finish line</u> .
	The result	Jonny was in 6. <u>second</u> place and Alistair in third.	
After the race	The public's opinions	The brothers should be 7. <u>disqualified</u> or highly praised for their actions.	
	Alistair's opinion	The 8. <u>brotherly</u> love is more important.	

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- What can we infer from the passage?
 - Alistair was in the lead when his brother was about to fall.
 - Alistair was younger than his brother.
 - Alistair may have won the race.
 - Alistair thought what he did was wrong.
- Why does Alistair think that having a brother is “an advantage”?
 - Because he can't leave his brother when they train.
 - Because he likes arguing with his brother over stupid things.
 - Because his brother sets him a good example to learn from.
 - Because his brother can bring him positive force in everything.
- From Alistair's explanation for his decision, what can we know?
 - Alistair is afraid of his mother.
 - Alistair really treats himself as a brother.
 - Alistair's mother loves his brother more than him.
 - Alistair doesn't like others' opinions on his actions.
- What does the text mainly tell us?
 - People's different opinions about the Brownlee brothers.
 - Love and competition are equally important in the match.

C. The value of brotherly love.

D. Love is precious.

答案: 1~4 CDBC

II. 课文语法填空

In the 2016 World Triathlon Series in Mexico, when Alistair came round the corner, he saw his brother Jonny about 1. to fall (fall) onto the track. He ran towards Jonny, caught him and 2. started (start) pulling him towards the finish line. The move put Jonny in second place and Alistair 3. himself (he) in third. It was 4. an unexpected end to the race, but Alistair did not want to discuss it 5. with the media. He just wanted to see his younger brother, 6. who had been rushed to the medical area. Despite 7. arguments (argument) over “stupid things” now and then, Alistair agrees that 8. having (have) a brother is an advantage.

9. Watched (watch) by millions, the ending to the race has divided opinions: should the brothers have been disqualified or 10. highly (high) praised for their actions? But for Alistair, his decision was easy to explain. At that moment, he was no longer an athlete aiming for a medal—he was just a brother.

III. 阅读升华

How many opinions were there when the match ended and what are they?

Two divided opinions. One is that the brothers should be disqualified, and the other is that the brothers should be highly praised.

课后素养评价(十四)

I. 单词拼写

1. They produced two reports, neither of which contained (包含) any useful suggestions.
2. During your working day what kind of work might you typically (通常) do?
3. The first paragraph should give a brief summary (总结) of the paper.
4. His speech is so powerful (强有力的) that all the people present are deeply moved.
5. When he lost his job, his entire (全部的) world was turned upside down.
6. Obviously (显而易见地) the boy is interested in music as well as in painting.
7. For further details (细节) about the course, please call the following number.
8. It will take a few more years to judge (判断) the impact of these ideas.
9. I don't agree with her, but I admire (钦佩) her for sticking to her principles.
10. If you want to improve your situation, you must adopt a positive (积极的) attitude.
11. The second part introduces the individual (独特的) feature of Debussy's music.
12. Despite (尽管) her problems, she carried on working as usual.
13. The little girl sat next to her mother throughout (在整个期间) the meal.
14. He could have finished it on schedule, but somehow (不知怎的) he fell behind.
15. The direct costs of such packages are indeed (确实) large.

II. 短语填空

a series of; settle for; now and then; end up; in the lead

1. If he carries on driving like that, he'll end up in prison.
2. Now that I am in the lead, I believe I can win this race!
3. The government has taken a series of measures to improve the air quality.
4. The road is so narrow that there are bound to be traffic jams now and then.
5. He had to settle for a low-paid job because he needed a job very much.

III. 完成句子

1. The young woman, with a baby sleeping in her arms, was wandering in the street.
那位年轻的女士,抱着一个熟睡的婴儿,漫步在大街上。
2. Even though/if we completely differ from each other in character, we are still great friends.
虽然我们在性格上完全不同,但是我们仍然是很要好的朋友。
3. We cannot wait to see them!
我们迫不及待地想要见到他们!
4. I was about to hand in the paper when I found another mistake and then corrected it carefully.
我正要交卷,这时我发现了另一个错误,然后仔细地改正了它。
5. We'd better leave things as they are until the police arrive.
在警察到来之前,我们最好什么也别动。

IV. 七选五

The clothes you wear. The food you eat. The colour of your bedroom walls. Where you go and how you get there. The people you hang around with. What time you go to bed. What do these things have in common? You're asking. 1

As a kid, you didn't have a say in everything; your parents made decisions about everything from the cereal you ate in the morning to the pajamas you wore at night. 2 Kids need this kind of protection on their own.

But finally, kids grow up and become teens. And part of being a teen is developing your own identity—one that is separated from your parents'. But as you change and grow into this new person who makes your own decisions, your parents have a difficult time adjusting.

3 And issues like the type of friends you have or your attitudes to partying can cause bigger argument, because your parents still always want to protect you and keep you safe, no matter how old you are.

The good news is that in many families the arguing will lessen as their parents get more comfortable with the idea that their teens have a right to certain opinions. It can take several years for parents and teens to adjust to their new role, though. 4

Sometimes this can feel impossible—like they just don't see your point of view and never will. But talking and expressing your opinions can help you gain more respect from your parents. Keep in mind, too, that your parents were teens once. 5

- A. And it's a good thing, too.
- B. Meanwhile focus on communicating with your parents.
- C. So, in most cases, they can relate to what you are going through.
- D. So don't be shy to share these annoying problems with your parents.
- E. In many families, this adjustment can cause a lot of fighting between teens and parents.
- F. There are always arguments about various things between you and your parents in daily life.

G. They're just a few examples of many hundreds of things that your parents controlled for you.

答案: 1~5 GA EBC

【微点写作】有关家庭回忆的记叙文

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. My brother showed a talent for music when he was very young.
我弟弟在很小的时候就表现出音乐天赋。
2. We should tell them what to do when they make mistakes.
当他们犯错误时,我们应该告诉他们如何去做。
3. Heated arguments and cold silences are common between teenagers and their parents.
激烈的争论和冰冷的沉默在青少年和他们的父母之间很常见。

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 通过文本学习和复述,初步了解回忆类故事的基本内容、文体特征和写作手法,能够运用所学知识简单记述一段难忘的家庭往事;
3. 能够联系自身实际,加深对单元主题意义的理解,正确认识家人之间的亲情与相互支持的关系;
4. 能够叙述家庭往事,用本单元所学知识判断与评价不同人物的观点,反思自己与家人的关系,自觉传承中国家庭的优良传统,形成正确的人生观、价值观,积极探索构建现代和谐家庭的新方式。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. I always have some **extra** cash with me for emergencies. 额外的,另外的
2. He is the first Chinese player to win the gold **medal** at the Olympic Games. 奖牌,勋章
3. Look at the students who are running on the **track**. 跑道
4. The **media** play a major role in influencing people's opinions. 新闻媒体,传媒
5. She was good at physics **despite** the fact that she found it boring. 尽管

6. She was **disqualified** after failing a drug test. (因犯规而)取消……的资格
7. He has his own **individual** method of organising his work. 独特的,与众不同的
8. *The Sunday Times* is running a long **feature** on the football match. (报纸或杂志的)特写
9. His **style** of painting has been imitated (模仿) by other artists. 风格
10. A **summary** is a short statement that gives the main information about something, without giving all the details. 总结,概要

11. The two teams finished level on points at the end of the **series**. 系列比赛
12. There was a strained atmosphere (紧张气氛) **throughout** the meeting. 在整个期间,自始至终
13. The morning and evening tides (潮汐) on the Qiantang River are **indeed** a very impressive scene. 确实
14. Don't worry; we'll get the money back **somehow**. 用某种方法
15. One of the people I've **enormously** admired in recent years is Qian Xuesen. 非常,极其

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>admire</u> <i>v.</i> 钦佩, 赞美, 羡慕	<u>admiration</u> <i>n.</i> 钦佩, 赞美, 羡慕
	<u>admirable</u> <i>adj.</i> 可钦佩的, 值得赞赏的, 令人羡慕的
<u>judge</u> <i>v.</i> 认为, 判断 <i>n.</i> 法官, 裁判员	<u>judgement</u> <i>n.</i> 判断力, 识别力; 判决, 裁决
<u>settle</u> <i>v.</i> 和解, 结束(争论); 解决; 定居	<u>settler</u> <i>n.</i> 定居者
	<u>settled</u> <i>adj.</i> 稳定的, 固定的; 定居的
<u>detail</u> <i>n.</i> 细节, 细微之处	<u>detailed</u> <i>adj.</i> 详细的; 细致的; 精细的
<u>contain</u> <i>v.</i> 包含, 含有	<u>container</u> <i>n.</i> 容器, 集装箱, 货柜
<u>powerful</u> <i>adj.</i> 强有力的, 有影响(感染)力的	<u>power</u> <i>n.</i> 力量; 权力
	<u>powerfully</u> <i>adv.</i> 有力地; 强大地; 强烈地
<u>positive</u> <i>adj.</i> 好的, 积极的	<u>positively</u> <i>adv.</i> 积极地, 肯定地; 明确地
	(反) <u>negative</u> <i>adj.</i> 消极的, 负面的
<u>athlete</u> <i>n.</i> 运动员, 田径运动员	<u>athletic</u> <i>adj.</i> 运动的
	<u>athletics</u> <i>n.</i> 体育运动
<u>typically</u> <i>adv.</i> 一般, 通常; 典型地, 具有代表性	<u>typical</u> <i>adj.</i> 一贯的, 平常的; 典型的, 有代表性的

III. 补全短语

1. settle for 勉强接受, 将就
2. in the lead 领先
3. now and then 偶尔, 有时
4. leave... behind 把……剩下, 把……落下
5. at that moment 在那时
6. no longer 不再
7. throw away 扔掉
8. end up doing sth 以做某事为结束
9. meet up (朋友)碰头, 相聚
10. pick up 捡起; (开车)接人; 偶然学会; 继续; 振作精神

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: with 复合结构

With just 700 metres to go, Alistair Brownlee was in third place and his younger brother, Jonny, was in the lead.

离终点只有七百米了, 阿利斯泰尔·布朗利名列第三, 他的弟弟乔尼领先。

2. 句型公式: 过去分词作状语

Watched by millions, the ending to the race has divided opinions: should the brothers have been disqualified or highly praised for their actions?

数百万人观看了这场比赛, 对于比赛的结果也是众说纷纭: 兄弟二人是应该因他们的行为被取消比赛资格, 还是应该受到高度赞扬?

3. 句型公式: 主语 + be + *adj.* + 动词不定式

But for Alistair, his decision was easy to explain. 但对于阿利斯泰尔来说, 他的决定很容易解释。

4. 句型公式: 现在分词(短语)作定语

At that moment, he was no longer an athlete aiming for a medal—he was just a brother.

在那一刻, 他不再是一名想赢得奖牌的运动员——他只是一位兄长。

任务型课堂

1. admire v. 钦佩, 赞美, 羡慕

一感 读句子感悟用法

We **admire** the old scientist **for** his great contributions to the country.

我们钦佩这位老科学家对国家作出的巨大贡献。

We **expressed/had admiration for** the soldiers, who behaved bravely in the action.

我们对士兵在这次行动中英勇的表现表示钦佩。

His perseverance to his English study is **admirable**.

他对英语学习的坚持令人钦佩。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) admire sb _____ (doing) sth 因(做)某事羡慕/钦佩某人 (2) _____ n. 钦佩, 赞美, 羡慕 have/express admiration for 对……/表达对……的钦佩 (3) _____ adj. 可钦佩的, 值得赞赏的, 令人羡慕的
探究结论	(1)for (2)admiration (3)admirable

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

① The boy was admired by his classmates for his bravery in the earthquake.

② I'd like to express my admiration (admire) for the courage and uncomplaining spirit of the firefighters (消防员).

③ He has made admirable (admire) achievements in medical research.

2. judge v. 认为, 判断 n. 裁判员, 评委; 法官

一感 读句子感悟用法

Don't **judge** a book **by** its cover.

勿以貌取人。

As far as I can judge, this book is useful.

据我判断, 这本书有用。

Judging by/from her last letter, they are having a wonderful time.

从她的上一封信来看, 他们过得非常愉快。

In my judgement, it is necessary to pay him a visit.

在我看来, 有必要拜访他一次。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) judge... from/by... 从……来判断…… as far as I can judge 据我判断; 我认为 (2) judging _____ 从……来看; 根据……判断 (在句中作状语) (3) judgement n. 判决; 判断力; 评价 _____ one's judgement 在某人看来
探究结论	(2)by/from (3)in

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 写出下列句中 judge 的词性和含义

① The **judges** had different ideas about the results, so it was two hours before the results were declared. n. 裁判员, 评委

② The **judge** sentenced him to five years in prison. n. 法官

③ It will take a few more years to **judge** the impact of these ideas. v. 判断

(2) 单句语法填空

① Judging (judge) by what he said, I think it's very unlikely that he'll be able to support your application.

② In my judgement (judge), it's still hard for him to get a job in the company.

3. settle v. 和解, 结束(争论); 定居

一感 读句子感悟用法

She **settled in** Shanghai after her father's death.

在她的父亲死后, 她就在上海定居了。

(2023·新高考II卷改编) It's been an honor to see the pandas **settle into** their new home.

很荣幸看到这些熊猫迁入新家。

The chairman tried to **settle** the audience **down**.

主席尽力让观众安静下来。

Negotiators are looking for a peaceful **settlement** to the dispute.

谈判双方正寻求和平解决争端的办法。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) settle _____ 在……安家,定居,落户 settle into 迁入(新居) settle _____ 定居,安顿下来;平静下来;集中精力做,开始认真做 settle on 选择,选定 settle for 勉强接受,将就 (2) settler <i>n.</i> 移民;定居者 (3) settlement <i>n.</i> (解决纷争的)协议;解决;处理;(关于钱财转让的)协议(书)
探究结论	(1) in; down

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① After the excitement I tried to settle myself down.

② With a lot of difficult problems to settle (settle), the newly-elected president is having a hard time.

(2) 完成句子

He found it hard to settle down to work.

他发现很难平静下来工作。

4. 主语+be+adj.+动词不定式

(教材原文) But for Alistair, **his decision was easy to explain**: “Mum wouldn't have been happy if I'd left Jonny behind.”

但对于阿利斯泰尔来说,他的决定很容易解释:“如果我把乔尼留下,妈妈肯定会不高兴的。”

[句式分析] 本句中 his decision was easy to explain 为“主语+be+adj.+动词不定式”结构。

一感 读句子感悟用法

As the old saying goes, “Flowers **are pleasant to look at** but hard to grow.”

正如俗语所说:“看花容易栽花难。”

This city **is really comfortable to live in**.

在这个城市生活很舒适。

The long sentence **is difficult for you to remember**.

这个长句对你来说很难记。

I'm glad to be told this good news.

我很高兴你能告诉我这个好消息。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) 常用于该句型的形容词多为表示主语性质、特征 的词,如 hard, difficult, pleasant, easy, comfortable, interesting 等; (2) 动词不定式和主语在逻辑上为动宾关系,不定式用 _____ 表示被动意义;当不定式中的动词为不及物动词时,要加上适当的介词; (3) 不定式有时会带上自己的逻辑主语,并由 _____ 引出; (4) 表示喜、怒、哀、乐等情感的形容词,后跟不定式表原因,不可用不定式的主动形式表示被动意义。
探究结论	(2) 主动形式 (3) for

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① This machine is very easy to operate (operate). Anybody can learn to use it within a few minutes.

② The armchair looks rather hard, but it is very comfortable to sit (sit) in.

③ There is a party tonight in honour of our new president, and I am honoured to be invited (invite).

(2) 句型转换

I find it difficult to work out this problem in such a short time.

→ The problem is difficult for me to work out in such a short time.

写作探究**有关家庭回忆的记叙文****一、写作指导**

本单元的写作任务是写一篇有关家庭回忆的叙事类记叙文。该类作文以叙述事件为主,要通过完整的情节和生动形象的语言,使读者在阅读故事情节的同时有所感悟。

在写叙事性记叙文时要注意以下几个方面:

1. 四定:定内容——确定叙述要点;定关键词——确定所用词、词组;定人称——第一人称还是第三人称;定时态——一般过去时、一般现在时还是一般将来时。

2. 三步骤:(1)开头(the beginning)——交代必要的背景,如时间、地点、人物等。(2)主体(the body)——交代故事情节(事情的主体),如事件的发生、发展和前因后果(可以使用表示时间或空间的连接词,使文章连贯,如 at first...; then...; few minutes later...)(3)结尾(the ending)——事情的结果或感想、愿望等。所表达的感想或愿望应与所记叙的内容有关系,起到扣题或点题作用,使文章结构紧凑。好的结尾往往不仅有完美的结局,还能令人深思、回味。

3. 叙述方式:可根据不同情况采用顺叙、倒叙或插叙等方式。

二、典题示例

上周五是你的生日,父亲送你一份生日礼物。下面是对这份特殊礼物的描述。请你以“Father's Gift for My Birthday”为题,用英语讲述这个故事。要点如下:

1. 上周五早晨,父亲带我去了家乡的一所乡村学校;
2. 唯一的教室里有 21 个学生,教室小而昏暗(dim);
3. 虽然那里的条件很差,但学生学习很努力;
4. 你的感想:原来这就是父亲给我的特殊的生日礼物……

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 除要求的内容外,可酌情自由发挥。

Father's Gift for My Birthday

三、审题谋篇

文体	记叙文
时态	以一般过去时为主
人称	以第一人称为主
要点	1. 交代事件的缘由 2. 具体描述事件的经过 3. 抒发自己的感想或表明自己的态度

四、遣词造句

(一)核心词汇和表达

- ①bring sb to 带某人去……
- ②not only... but also... 不仅……而且……
- ③be made of 由……制成
- ④listen to 听……

⑤attentively *adv.* 专心地

⑥be struck by 被……打动

(二)完成句子

①Last Friday morning, my father brought me to a village school (带我去了一所乡村学校) in our hometown.

②The school had just one classroom, and the classroom was not only small but also dim (不仅小而且昏暗)。

③All the desks and chairs were made of (由……制成) rough boards.

④There were only 21 students and they were listening to the teacher attentively (正专心地听老师讲课)。

⑤Although their study conditions were poor, all the students studied very hard (学习很用功)。

⑥I was deeply struck by (被……深深地打动了) their stories.

⑦I did not realise that it was my father's special birthday gift for me (我父亲送给我的特殊的生日礼物) until then.

(三)句式升级

①将(二)中句②升级为含有定语从句的句子

The school had just one classroom which was not only small but also dim.

②将(二)中句④升级为含有定语从句的句子

There were only 21 students who were listening to the teacher attentively.

③将(二)中句⑦升级为 not until 置于句首引起的部分倒装句

Not until then did I realise that it was my father's special birthday gift for me.

(四)连句成篇

Father's Gift for My Birthday

My birthday of this year fell on last Friday. My father gave me a special gift.

Last Friday morning, my father brought me to a village school in our hometown. The school had just one classroom which was not only small but also dim. All the desks and chairs were made of rough boards. There were only 21 students who were listening to the teacher attentively. Although their study conditions were poor, all the students studied very hard.

I was deeply struck by their stories. Not until then did I realise that it was my father's special birthday gift for me.

五、学以致用

党的二十大报告强调,弘扬中华传统美德,加强家庭家教家风建设。假定你是李华,请你用英语谈一谈自己和家人庆祝春节的经过。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 开头已给出,但不计入总词数。

参考词汇:对联 couplet; 春晚 the Spring Festival Gala

I like the Spring Festival _____

【参考范文】

I like the Spring Festival because all the family members will get together and have fun with each other.

Several days before the Spring Festival, we had a thorough cleaning of our house and put up new couplets on our doors, hoping for good luck in the coming year. Then we went shopping and bought a lot of food. On the eve of the Spring Festival, all my family had a big feast together and then watched the Spring Festival Gala, chatting and laughing. We can receive lucky money from our parents and the elders.

In the following days, we went to visit our neighbours and relatives and gave them our best wishes.

课后素养评价(十五)

I. 单句语法填空

- Do you know the boy who/that is standing over there?
- I tried to speak to him, but he made off in a hurry.
- Due to his efforts, he made more than three million (million) *yuan* last year.
- Obviously (obvious), the nice girl was taken in by what the young man said.
- Tickets for such events will typically (typical) cost around thirty dollars.
- It's believed that the media has a powerful (power) influence on public opinion.
- He gave a detailed (detail) description of what happened last night.
- I have always had the greatest admiration (admire) for the famous scientist.
- Judging (judge) from his worried face, we knew that he must have had some trouble.
- When we went to 3 : 1, we should have settled for that.
- Some of us may be eating food containing (contain) GM ingredients without realising it.
- The theory which is based on a series of wrong assumptions is wrong.
- As babies, we depend entirely (entire) on others for food.

14. Thinking positively (positive) is one way of dealing with stress.

15. The hotel located in the centre of the town has 100 individually (individual) designed bedrooms.

16. Our team was in the lead at half time.

17. When the other kids were taken to the zoo, he was left behind.

II. 补全句子

1. 因为淋了一场大雨,所以他全身湿透了。(过去分词短语作状语)

Caught in a heavy rain, he was all wet.

2. 一天,我正要去买东西时,他打电话找我。(be about to do... when...)

One day, I was about to go shopping when he telephoned me.

3. 老人修车修了三十年了。(现在完成进行时)

The old man has been repairing cars for thirty years.

4. 这篇文章很容易理解。(主语+be+adj.+不定式)

The passage is easy to understand.

5. 想要去徒步旅行的学生要在这里签名。(现在分词短语作定语)

Students wishing to go hiking should sign their names here.

III. 语法填空

As is known to all, a positive parent-child relationship is **1. beneficial** (benefit) to the physical and mental **2. growth** (grow) of children. However,

keeping a healthy parent-child bond **3. needs** (need) the efforts of both parties.

Parents should take the responsibility **4. to improve** (improve) their relationships with the children. What matters is spending quality time with their children, **5. however** tight their schedule is. For instance, they can eat **6. meals** (meal) together, go to sporting events together or watch their children's favourite TV shows together, **7. which** can contribute greatly to making their children feel safe and **8. loved** (love). Children, on the other hand, should let their parents know they appreciate what their parents **9. have done** (do) for them. If possible, they can give their parents a gift on a special day or help with housework **10. on** a regular basis.

No healthy parent-child relationship is without conflict. But as long as parents and children make a joint effort, they can settle the conflict and enjoy their time together.

IV. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华, 你的英国笔友 Alex 发来邮件, 提到他总是因为缺乏耐心而和家人争吵, 这让他感到非常苦恼。请你根据所给提示, 用英语给他回一封邮件, 内容包括:

1. 表示理解;
2. 提出建议。

注意: 1. 80 词左右;

2. 可适当增加细节, 使行文连贯。

Dear Alex,

Yours,
Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面的材料, 根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段, 使之构成一篇完整的短文。

I live in a city where jobs are difficult to get and if you want to find a well-paid job, it will be even harder. Therefore, it is not surprising for you to see many people in our city walk a long way because they can't even afford an old used car.

It was a cold windy day. I saw one of these people who often have to walk from and to work every day, when I was driving after work. A middle-aged man wearing only a thin overcoat was walking

down the road and trying to ask for a ride from the passing cars. Unluckily, there was no driver willing to stop their cars. When I saw two cars in front of me pass him by, I wanted to do the same. But the sight of that poor man remained in my mind for quite a moment. I felt as if a big hand was dragging me and forcing me not to leave. Finally I drew back and gave him a ride.

As I drove along, we had a conversation, during which he told me something about himself and his family. I learnt that the man was doing everything he could to support his family using the limited salary from several part-time jobs. As you could imagine, every coin he earned was going to be used to pay for the house and food.

It was a long drive before we got to his home. All the way, I could feel his hardship and tiredness. But as we came close to the house where he was living, I saw his tired eyes grow bright and the whole body was lit up. His lovely girl was playing in the front yard. Seeing her father was out of the car, she ran to him as quickly as possible, reaching out her two small hands. He held the girl with his two strong hands, laughing and kissing her cheeks. I was lost in that happy moment. I smiled, said goodbye to them, wished them the future happiness and then drove off.

注意: 续写 150 词左右。

On my way home, something came into my mind. _____

Half an hour later, I got home. _____

【参考范文】

第一节 应用文写作

Dear Alex,

I understand how upset you must be feeling and I'd like to give you some advice.

When you start to feel impatient, you can take a few deep breaths or leave the room for a while before doing or saying anything. That can help you regain control of yourself, calm down and think clearly. Besides, getting enough sleep at night, eating healthy meals and getting plenty of exercise can also help people feel relaxed and peaceful throughout the day. You can have a try.

I hope my advice will be helpful to you.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

On my way home, something came into my mind. I thought of my lovely daughter and my happy family. Usually, as a manager of a small firm, I was so busy that I had broken many promises to have dinner with my family. Even I had never seen my honey girl for ten days. Because every night when I got home, she had fallen asleep and the

next morning when I left, she was still in her dream. I felt quite sorry for everything I had done before.

Half an hour later, I got home. My daughter was shocked to see me go home so early. But quickly a big smile spread on her face. She put down her toy, flew to me and hugged me tightly. “Dad, am I dreaming?” she asked. “Of course not.” I told her what had happened today and promised to spend more time with her and her mum as they are the most valuable treasures in the world to me.

读后续写技能养成 || 人物描写之性格描写

「技能概述」

1. 性格描写:是指对人的神态和情绪的描写。人物性格是指人的态度和行为方式中较为稳定的心理特征,它是人经常性、习惯化的态度和行为方式。
2. 续写技巧:描写时,要根据人物的性别和年龄等特征写出人物的个性,尽可能多地使用反映人物内外品质的形容词或名词刻画人物形象。

「范例体悟」

Though faced with the most challenging event of my life, I'm full of courage and confidence. With the generous help of my teachers, friends and classmates, I have made huge progress in study.

找出文中描写人物性格的词汇并写下来。

full of courage and confidence; generous

「词句储备」

I. 好词积累

1. shy *adj.* 害羞的
2. kind *adj.* 善良的
3. mean *adj.* 吝啬的
4. active *adj.* 活泼的
5. honest *adj.* 诚实的
6. friendly *adj.* 友好的
7. outgoing *adj.* 外向的
8. easy-going *adj.* 随和的
9. generous *adj.* 慷慨的
10. devoted *adj.* 忠诚的
11. creative *adj.* 有创造力的
12. committed *adj.* 尽心尽力的
13. humorous *adj.* 幽默的

14. promising *adj.* 有前途的
15. determined *adj.* 坚定的
16. ambitious *adj.* 志向远大的
17. hard-working *adj.* 勤劳的
18. warm-hearted *adj.* 热心肠的
19. good-tempered *adj.* 脾气好的
20. strong-willed *adj.* 意志坚强的

II. 佳句背诵

1. My mother is a hot-tempered person.
我妈妈是一个脾气火爆的人。
2. He is adaptable, flexible, and a good company.
他适应力强、办事灵活,是一个好伙伴。
3. He is outgoing in character and a man with a real sense of commitment to almost everything.
他性格外向,且是一个对几乎一切有着奉献精神的人。
4. Tom is a humorous man who often cuts a joke in the middle of the conversation.
汤姆是一个幽默的人,经常在谈话中加入笑话。
5. John is an adventurous man, never afraid of danger.
约翰是一个爱冒险的人,从不惧怕危险。
6. I am patient and logical and I will not jump to conclusions quickly.
我有耐心,逻辑性强,不会急于下结论。
7. This is my best classmate, a warm and kind little boy!
这就是我最好的同学,一个热情又善良的小男孩!
8. He is really an optimistic character, worthy of our study.
他真是一位性格乐观、值得我们学习的人。

「技能达标」

I. 完成句子

1. He is frank and outspoken and never beats about the bush.
他为人坦率且直言不讳,从不转弯抹角。
2. He is an ambitious young man full of enthusiasm and vitality.
他是个充满热情与活力且有着远大抱负的青年。
3. My grandfather is in his seventies now. He is a kind and warm-hearted old man.
我爷爷现在七十多岁了。他是一位和蔼、热心的老人。
4. Alex, who is from Sheridan High School, is a

friendly and generous person and he is always more concerned about others than himself.

亚历克斯来自谢里丹高中,他友好、慷慨,他总是关心别人胜过关心自己。

II. 用人物性格描写完成下面的语段

Mrs Peterson is my tenth-grade biology teacher, a cool woman in her late twenties. She has taught us for several months. She **1. is an easy-going and nice teacher** (是一个随和、善良的老师) that **2. loves to walk into our hearts** (喜欢走进我们的内心) and **3. often cares about us** (经常关心我们). And she has a wonderful way of **4. making the most boring lessons fun** (让最枯燥无味的课变得有趣味). All of these make her popular with all of us students.

第三单元质量评估

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

I. 阅读理解(共15小题;每小题2.5分,满分37.5分)

A

Now Enjoy Brilliant College Courses in Your Home or Car Scientific Secrets for a Powerful Memory

Why does our memory fail us? And how can you fix it? In *Scientific Secrets for a Powerful Memory*, you'll explore research on how memory functions—and then apply these findings to help you make better use of your memory abilities. Tap into scientifically proven strategies to process information more effectively and increase your powers of memory.

Course No.1965

6 Lectures (30 Minutes/Lecture)

DVD ~~\$99.95~~ NOW \$9.95

How Conversation Works: 6 Lessons for Better Communication

Successful conversations help you advance professionally and make, maintain, and deepen relationships. In just six lectures, *How Conversation Works: 6 Lessons for Better Communication* will teach you key strategies that can surely improve your ability to speak with anyone from strangers to your manager.

Course No.9382

6 Lectures (30 Minutes/Lecture)

DVD ~~\$99.95~~ NOW \$9.95

CD ~~\$94.95~~ NOW \$9.95

The Art of Public Speaking: Lessons from the Greatest Speeches in History

In *The Art of Public Speaking: Lessons from the*

Greatest Speeches in History, Professor Hale teaches you how to be a more effective public speaker. He shows time-tested techniques and strategies used by history's greatest public speakers—Lincoln, Gandhi, and many others!

Course No.2031

12 Lectures (30 Minutes/Lecture)

DVD ~~\$199.95~~ NOW \$9.95

CD ~~\$134.95~~ NOW \$9.95

The Secrets of Mental Math

In *The Secrets of Mental Math*, award-winning Professor Benjamin teaches you the basic strategies of mental mathematics. This powerful ability to perform mental calculations will give you an edge in business, at school, at work or anywhere else that you come across math.

Course No.1406

12 Lectures (30 Minutes/Lecture)

DVD ~~\$199.95~~ NOW \$9.95

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍的是在家里或车里能读的大学课程。

1. What do Course No. 9382 and Course No. 2031 have in common?
 - A. They are the cheapest courses of all.
 - B. Their readers have the same purpose.
 - C. They both teach some strategies for speaking.
 - D. They share the same discount for every lecture.

5. What is one of the changes the author finds in her children?

- A. Tom has less difficulty in speaking.
- B. Sam holds her hand more often.
- C. The boys become better followers.
- D. The daughter acts like a leader.

A 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“My stuttering (口吃的) son, Tom, doesn't stutter once during our activities since he doesn't have to struggle for a chance to speak.”可知,在“我们”独处时,“我”口吃的儿子汤姆一次也没有结巴过,因为他不用努力获得说话的机会。因此可知,汤姆讲话没有那么费劲了。故选 A。

6. Which of the following ideas may the author agree with according to the passage?

- A. Having brothers and sisters is fun.
- B. Every child needs parents' full attention.
- C. It's tiring to look after three children.
- D. Parents should watch others' children.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“Every child deserves (应得) to be an only child at least once in a while.”可知,作者认为每个孩子都值得得到父母全部的关注,哪怕只有一会儿。故选 B。

7. What is the text mainly about?

- A. The experience of the only child being with his/her mother.
- B. The happy life of two families.
- C. The advantage of spending time with one child at a time.
- D. The basic needs of children.

C 主旨大意题。通读全文,结合最后一段中的“The ‘Mommy and Me’ time allows us to be simply alone and away with each child—talking, sharing, and laughing, which has been the biggest gain.”可知,本文讲述了和每一个孩子独处带来了许多好处。故选 C。

C

Children who spend more time reading with their parents have a greater chance of becoming better readers than those who don't. With help from their parents, children can learn techniques to improve their reading skills.

“A lot of parents think after their children learn to read, they should stop reading to them,” Donna George said. “They are sadly mistaken.”

George offers her services to parents at the Title I Learning Centres. She said reading aloud to children may be the most valuable thing parents can do. “It is better for children to hear things at a high

level than where they are,” George said. “Parents are their children's first teachers.” Parents help their children build listening, phonics, comprehension and vocabulary skills when they read aloud to them.

Before parents can identify reading problems, they should escape the enemy—television and limit the time their children spend watching television. George suggested not allowing kids to have a TV in their bedrooms, setting a schedule of when kids can watch or keeping a list of how many programmes children watch. Louise Jones said that while her 14-year-old daughter and 10-year-old son enjoy reading, the television sometimes becomes a distraction. So she tries to build the situation by suggesting books the entire family will enjoy reading together.

Parents who do not read themselves should not count on their children being enthusiastic about it. If parents would read to their children at least 15 minutes every day, children would not have so many problems in school. It is the parents' job to help build that desire in their children, and of course to know what kind of book to read is also important.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了父母如何使孩子成为更好的阅读者。

8. According to George, reading aloud to children _____.

- A. helps them correct mistakes
- B. is helpful to their reading
- C. is parents' first duty to their children
- D. can get children out of television's attraction

B 细节理解题。根据第三段最后一句可知,家长给孩子大声地阅读,会帮助他们建立听力、发音、理解和词汇技能,即家长给孩子大声地阅读对孩子的阅读是有帮助的。

9. The underlined word “distraction” (in Paragraph 4) means something that can _____.

- A. improve children's reading skills
- B. help children form the right habit of reading
- C. make children interested in reading
- D. stop children concentrating on reading

D 词义猜测题。根据第四段第一句可知,电视是影响孩子阅读的敌人,所以当 Louise Jones 14 岁的女儿和 10 岁的儿子享受阅读的快乐时,电视有时就会成为使他们分心的东西,故画线词 distraction 意为“能阻止孩子专心阅读的东西”。

10. What is important according to the fourth paragraph?

- A. Reading skills.
- B. The reading speed.
- C. Reading materials.
- D. The reading environment.

D 推理判断题。第四段主要讲了为了避免电视成为孩子阅读的障碍,不建议在孩子的卧室安装电视,而且列举了 Louise Jones 两个孩子的例子,由此可知阅读环境是很重要的。

11. Which would be the best title for the passage?

- A. Children Spend More Time Reading with Parents
- B. Parents Are Their Children's First Teachers
- C. How Parents Make Their Children Better Readers
- D. How to Improve Children's Reading Ability

C 标题归纳题。根据第一段的内容可知,本文主要介绍了经常与父母一起阅读的孩子更容易成为优秀的阅读者。在父母的帮助下,孩子会提高阅读技巧。文章详细阐述了父母如何使孩子成为更好的阅读者,所以文章最好的标题是选项 C。

D

A few years ago, my sister-in-law started to feel concerned about her teenage daughter. What was she doing after school? Where was she spending her time? My niece was an excellent student, and took part in all kinds of after-class activities. Even so, her mum decided to put a tracking app (跟踪应用程序) on the kid's phone.

At first, this made my sister-in-law "feel better". Then the good situation suddenly ended. She recalled, "I found out that she was someplace that she said she wasn't. I went out in the middle of the night and found her walking without shoes in the middle of the street with some friends." Things went quickly downhill for the mother and the daughter after that.

With 73% of teens having their own smartphones now, according to a study, more and more of their parents are facing the question: To watch or not?

Ana Homayoun, founder of Green Ivy Educational Consulting, has advised many parents and their kids about this. "I've found teens are more acceptable to tracking apps when it is included as part of a family agreement to improve safety than when it is placed as a secret tool to watch them," she said.

Mark Bell, a father of a teenage girl, said, "We don't have tracking apps, but we have set some ground rules that my daughter must follow in exchange for us providing a smartphone," he said. For example, his daughter must "friend" him on social media so that he can read posts, and must share all passwords.

When you're trying to build trust, you need to create an environment that encourages it. So, to win their trust, you always need to be straight with your

children. "Parents must let children know how and when they'll be watching them," said Doctor Pauleh Weigle. If they're not open about it, he warns, it can "greatly damage the parent-child relationship".

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。在现代社会中有一些家长为了了解自己的孩子在孩子的手机中安装追踪应用程序。文章对此进行了阐述。

12. What's result of the author's sister-in-law using the app?

- A. She felt good with knowing her daughter's after-school activities.
- B. She wasn't worried about her daughter anymore.
- C. She had more communication with her daughter.
- D. She had more conflicts with her daughter.

D 推理判断题。根据第二段中的 "Then the good situation suddenly ended." 和 "Things went quickly downhill for the mother and the daughter after that." 可知,使用了跟踪应用程序后母女之间的关系不好了,故推测她们之间有了更多的冲突。故选 D。

13. What can we learn about today's teens from Homayoun?

- A. They doubt family agreements.
- B. They are worried about online safety.
- C. They dislike being watched secretly with tracking apps.
- D. They welcome the use of tracking apps.

C 细节理解题。根据第四段中的 "I've found teens are more acceptable to tracking apps when it is included as part of a family agreement to improve safety than when it is placed as a secret tool to watch them" 可知,孩子们不喜欢被应用程序秘密地监视。故选 C。

14. Why are Mark Bell and his daughter mentioned in Paragraph 5?

- A. To show how to use smartphones safely.
- B. To give an example of being straight with children.
- C. To teach how to put tracking apps on phones.
- D. To tell the importance of being children's friend.

B 细节理解题。根据第五、六段的内容可知,第五段的例子是为了说明第六段中的 "So, to win their trust, you always need to be straight with your children.", B 项符合以上说法。故选 B。

15. What should be done before using a tracking app according to Weigle?

- A. Teach the kid how to use it.
- B. Check the kid's phone.
- C. Tell the kid about it.
- D. Advise the kid to use his phone less.

C 根据第三段中的“*Our once-beautiful plant died*”可知,作者的绿植最后死了。由此可知,作者从没想过有一天会失去(losing)这棵植物。

23. A. made B. recorded
C. collected D. discovered

D 然而,两周前,“我们”发现(discovered)它的叶子发生了一些变化,叶子开始失去颜色。

24. A. disappointedly B. carefully
C. quickly D. happily

B 根据上文中的“*Our family enjoyed a beautiful house plant for over thirty years.*”可知,作者一家很喜欢这棵植物,因此在它出现问题时会仔细地(carefully)给它浇水,照顾它。

25. A. recovery B. strength
C. trouble D. growth

A 根据后文“*We finally picked a few almost dead leaves*”可知,这棵植物没有恢复(recovery)的迹象。

26. A. roots B. leaves
C. branches D. plants

C 根据下文“*these branches planted in the new pot*”可知选C。

27. A. amazed B. disappointed
C. embarrassed D. bored

A 句意:让我们吃惊(amazed)的是这些被移植到新盆子里的枝叶长得很强壮。

28. A. happy B. useful
C. energetic D. clear

D 句意:对我们来说,原因变得清晰(clear)了——它的树根很乱,完全绞在了一起。

29. A. depend on B. look for
C. wait for D. turn down

B 根据下文“*they outgrow their environment*”可知,这些人是经常寻求(look for)个人成长和发展的。

30. A. suggestions B. studies
C. explanations D. changes

D 既然这些人寻求个人成长和发展,就必然想作出改变(changes)。

31. A. take off B. fall down
C. calm down D. set up

A 根据后文“*Their views become larger and they need 32 environment to live in.*”可知,他们想要突然成功,离开现在的环境。

32. A. warmer B. larger
C. safer D. taller

B 根据前文“*Their views become larger*”可知,他们需要更宽广的生存环境,句中的两个larger前后呼应。

33. A. chances B. promises
C. time D. room

D 由常识可知,成长是需要空间的,此空与上句中的“environment”呼应。

34. A. satisfied B. accepted
C. mentioned D. protected

A 上文提到了他们的需求,这句话肯定是说如果需求得不到满足(satisfied),就会有问题。

35. A. refuse B. order
C. realise D. prove

C 句意:因此,如果你发现新的成长使得你摒弃旧的方法,你就需要意识(realise)到你现在更加强大了。

IV. 语法填空(共10小题;每小题1.5分,满分15分)

Last week, Jack 36. was told (tell) by his parents that his grandpa would retire after working for forty years. They were going to have a surprise party for him.

Jack loved his grandpa and wanted to do something special 37. for him. He remembered the business card his grandpa 38. had given (give) him two years before. He knew that his grandpa would no longer have the position on that card, so he decided 39. to build (build) a new one for his grandpa.

When 40. the big day came, Jack was ready. But he didn't want to put his gift together with others'. When all the other people left, he took his grandpa's both 41. hands (hand) and gave him the gift. His grandpa smiled, “Well, it must be a beautiful gift. May I open it now?” “Sure!” Jack said 42. excitedly (excited).

As Grandpa opened the gift, tears filled his eyes. Jack gave him the greatest gift he had ever got! It was a business card on 43. which was his new position: FULL-TIME GRANDPA!

“Well, how much do I get paid?” his grandpa asked, 44. smiling (smile). “As many hugs as you want!” With these words, Jack gave Grandpa a hug. “Well, I guess that means I'm the 45. richest (rich) man in the world!” said Grandpa.

V. 写作(共两节,满分40分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分15分)

某英文网站正在就“青少年的秘密是否应该让父母知道”这一话题展开讨论,征求网友意见。假定你是李华,请你用英语给该网站写一封电子邮件,谈谈对该问题的看法。内容需包括以下几点:

1. 你的观点和做法;
2. 你的理由;
3. 你父母的反应。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 可适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

Dear Sir or Madam,

I'm writing to _____

Yours sincerely,
Li Hua

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读下面的材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

The Meredith family lived in a small community. As the economy was in decline, some people in the town had lost their jobs. Many of their families were struggling to make ends meet. People were trying to help each other meet the challenges.

Mrs Meredith was a most kind and thoughtful woman. She spent a great deal of time visiting the poor. She knew they had problems, and they needed all kinds of help. When she had time, she would bring food and medicine to them.

One morning she told her children about a family she had visited the day before. There was a man sick in bed, his wife, who took care of him and could not go out to work, and their little boy. The little boy—his name was Bernard—had interested her very much.

“I wish you could see him,” she said to her own children, John, Harry, and Clara. “He is such a help to his mother. He wants very much to earn some money, but I don't see what he can do.”

After their mother left the room, the children sat thinking about Bernard. “I wish we could help him to earn money,” said Clara. “His family is suffering so much.”

“So do I,” said Harry. “We really should do something to assist them.”

For some moments, John said nothing, but, suddenly, he sprang to his feet and cried, “I have a great idea! I have a solution that we can all help accomplish (完成).”

The other children also jumped up all attention. When John had an idea, it was sure to be a good one. “I tell you what we can do,” said John. “You know that big box of corn Uncle John sent us? Well, we can make popcorn (爆米花), and put it into paper bags, and Bernard can take it around to the houses and sell it.”

注意:续写 150 词左右。

When Mrs Meredith heard of John's idea, she thought it was a good one, too. _____

With everything ready, Bernard started out on his new business. _____

【参考范文】

第一节 应用文写作

Dear Sir or Madam,

I'm writing to express my attitude towards the topic “Whether teenagers' secrets should be kept from their parents”.

As a teenager, I don't see anything wrong in keeping secrets to ourselves. It can provide us with a chance to experience the world on our own, which will surely have a positive effect on our future development.

As for me, I do have my little secrets and rarely share them with my family. My parents are very understanding. Instead of building a generation gap, this makes us feel even closer to each other.

Yours sincerely,
Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

When Mrs Meredith heard of John's idea, she thought it was a good one, too. So she said, “It definitely is a great idea, but you have to do what you said that you will make popcorn, put it into paper bags and bring it to Bernard every morning. If you mean it, we will help you.” “Of course, I mean it. I do want to help Bernard to earn money,” replied John, and he kept his word. These children were divided into two groups; One group were busy popping the corn, and the other took charge of buying paper bags and putting popcorn into them. When they finished all the work, they went to Bernard's house.

With everything ready, Bernard started out on his new business. At first, he was a little nervous for he didn't know how to sell it. But all things will be hard in the beginning. Bernard took courage and started out on his new business. What out of his expectation was that neighbours were all friendly to him and his basket was empty in a short time. Never had he earned so much money before in his life. He was too excited to speak, and then he ran to home happily. People began to watch for the “little popcorn boy”, and every week he had at least fifty cents to take home, and often more. Bernard thanked John from the bottom of his heart.

Unit 4

Friends forever

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—
Comprehending

学习任务及目标

- 识记本课时的重要语言点；
- 阅读课文，能够熟悉话题语境，获取课文的主旨大意，判断作者对网络交友的态度；
- 能够理解课文结构及内在逻辑关系，梳理相关的细节信息；
- 了解友谊的重要性及中外文化中关于友谊的描述，并结合自身经历，思考“朋友”的含义。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇和表达的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇和表达

- forever *adv.* 永远
- familiar *adj.* 熟悉的
- adventure *n.* 历险(经历), 奇遇
- prefer *v.* 更喜欢
- deliver *v.* 递送, 传送
- advance *n.* 进步, 进展
- significantly *adv.* 重大地, 显著地
- maintain *v.* 保持, 维持
- acquire *v.* 获得, 得到
- digital *adj.* 数字的, 数码的
- enable *v.* 使可能, 使发生
- unusual *adj.* 异常的, 不平常的
- tend *v.* 易于做某事, 往往会发生某事
- goods *n.* 商品
- prove *v.* 证明, 证实

16. lose track of 不了解……的情况, 不了解……的动态

17. thanks to 归功于……, 多亏……

18. stay in touch with 与……保持联系

19. be up to 忙于; 由……决定; 是……的责任; 胜任

20. connect... with... 使……与……连接; 把……与……联系起来

21. keep in mind 记住, 牢记

(二)阅读词汇和表达

1. click *v.* 点击(鼠标)

2. wi-fi *n.* 无线网络, 无线上网

3. site *n.* 网站

4. update *n.* 最新消息

5. saying *n.* 格言, 谚语, 警句

6. criminal *n.* 罪犯

7. illustrate *v.* (举例)说明, 阐明

8. diagram *n.* 图解, 示意图

9. throw the baby out with the bathwater
不分良莠一起抛弃

10. social media 社交媒体

「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details	
Part 1 (Para. 1 — Para. 3)	The ways of making friends	In the past	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Moving to a new town meant 1. losing track of friends. To get news from faraway friends, people had to 2. write letters.
		At present	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Advances in 3. technology have changed the way of making friends significantly. Social media tools help us remain friends and maintain friendships just with a 4. wi-fi connection. The digital age also enables us to find people who 5. share our interests.

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 2 (Para. 4 — Para. 7)	Online friendship; real or not	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If people always exchange 6. true personal information online, these friendships can be real and 7. meaningful. • On social media sites, people tend to post only 8. positive updates that make them appear happy and friendly.
Part 3 (Para. 8)	How to treat making friends online	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Technology has changed the way we acquire friends, but the meaning of friendship and our 9. longing for friends remain the same. • No one would choose to live 10. without friends, even if he had all other goods.

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- The title “CLICK FOR A FRIEND?” means “_____”.
 - Is it necessary to find a friend online?
 - Is it possible to find a real friend online?
 - Is it easy to find a real friend online?
 - Is it more popular to find a friend online now than before?
- Which of the following plays a more important part in maintaining our friendship in modern society?
 - Writing letters.
 - Social media tools.
 - Collecting model cars.
 - Playing an unusual instrument.
- What does “they” in the last sentence of Paragraph 3 refer to?
 - People moving to a new town.
 - People on the other side of the world.
 - People sharing the same hobbies with us.
 - People moving around the world.
- What is the main idea of the passage?
 - It is dangerous to make friends online.
 - Making friends online is the best way of making friends.
 - Making friends online is much easier than in traditional ways.
 - There are advantages and disadvantages of making friends online.

答案: 1~4 BBCC

II. 课文语法填空

How would you feel if moving to a new town meant **1. losing** (lose) track of your friends? What if the only way of getting news from faraway friends was writing letters that took **2. ages** (age) to be delivered? Thanks to advances in technology, how we make friends and communicate with them has changed **3. significantly** (significant).

The digital age **4. enables** (enable) us to find people who share our interests, such as collecting model cars or playing an unusual instrument. Whatever our hobbies, the Internet can connect us with others **5. who** also enjoy doing them, even if they live on **6. the** other side of the world.

On social media sites, people tend **7. to post** (post) only positive updates that make them appear happy and **8. friendly** (friend). But smiling photos can hide real problems. Remember the saying: on the Internet, nobody knows you're a dog. A young person could be old; a woman could be a man; we could even be sharing our information **9. with** criminals.

But this doesn't mean that we should throw the baby out with the bathwater. Although technology has changed the way we acquire friends, the **10. meaning** (mean) of friendship and our longing for friends remain the same. As Aristotle said, no one would choose to live without friends, even if he had all other goods.

III. 阅读升华

- What advantages and problems are there when you are making friends online?

Advantages: It can help us remain friends and maintain friendships without missing a beat and it enables us to find people with the same interests and hobbies.

Problems: What we see is often not the whole truth about a person. We'll be cheated if we don't watch out.

- How do we keep safe when chatting online? (Answers may vary.)

Keep our personal information such as our names, addresses, telephone numbers and pictures secret.

课后素养评价(十六)

I. 阅读理解

I like my close friends a lot. And yet, on an almost daily basis, they shock me. I have a friend who thinks voting is a waste of time; I have another friend who never takes any arrangement to meet at a given time and place seriously.

It's generally held that friends are people with whom we choose to develop relationships because we find their personalities agreeable, or similar to our own, and yet experience regularly contradicts this. What is a friend, really? All that one can safely say is that a friend is someone one likes and wishes to see again.

The truth is that we don't know our friends. Numerous studies show that we tend to assume our friends agree with us more than they really do. The striking part is that the problem doesn't appear to lessen as a friendship deepens. When the researchers Michael Gill and Bill Swann questioned students sharing rooms, they found that, as time passed, people became even more confident in the accuracy of their judgments about the other, and yet, in reality, the judgments grew no more accurate. Two people might become dear friends, yet remain ignorant about vast areas of each other's inner lives.

This seems strange, until you consider, that many of the benefits that friendship provides don't necessarily depend on perfect familiarity; they come from something closer to reliability. Friendship may be less about being drawn to someone's personality than about finding someone willing to keep you company, or lend an ear. A friend provides the "social-identity support" we desire. You needn't be a close match with someone, nor deeply familiar with their mind. And once a friendship has begun, you want to like it, if only to confirm that you made the right decision. We don't want to know everything about our friends. We don't base friendships on what we learn about people; we decide what to learn about people, and what to ignore, based on having decided to be friends.

Perhaps there's something moving about viewing friendship as an agreement to keep each

other company, ignore each other's faults and not probe (盘问) too deeply in ways that might weaken the friendship. Perhaps a true friend is someone who doesn't ask many awkward questions.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。文章主要论述了真正的友谊和朋友是什么样的。

1. Why does the author tell the stories of his two friends in the first paragraph?

- A. To provide background information.
- B. To introduce the topic of the passage.
- C. To stress the importance of friendship.
- D. To show the difference between friends.

B 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“I have a friend who thinks voting is a waste of time; I have another friend who never takes any arrangement to meet at a given time and place seriously.”和第二段中的“It's generally held that friends are people with whom we choose to develop relationships because we find their personalities agreeable, or similar to our own, and yet experience regularly contradicts this. What is a friend, really?”可知,第一段的目的是引出话题。故选 B。

2. What can be concluded from the passage?

- A. Close friends usually know each other in depth.
- B. Real friends are people you like but don't wish to see often.
- C. We do not necessarily share personalities with close friends.
- D. The longer we stay with friends, the more accurately we judge them.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“It's generally held that friends are people with whom we choose to develop relationships because we find their personalities agreeable, or similar to our own, and yet experience regularly contradicts this.”可知,我们和亲密的朋友不一定有相同的性格。故选 C。

3. Which statement about friends will the author probably accept?

- A. Stay friends but keep a distance.
- B. It takes a long time to grow an old friend.
- C. Real friends will tell you when your face is dirty.
- D. True friends know all about you and still like you.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可知,作者认为朋友之间应当保持适当的距离。故选 A。

II. 七选五

How to Make Friends at a New School

Starting with a new school can be difficult. Everything seems to be different, and you don't even know where to go for your own classes. 1 However, if you use these skills, you can quickly turn some of those strangers into friends.

Be yourself.

2 If some people don't accept you, they're not the kind of friends you need. People often stay together because they have similar interests. For example, someone who does a lot of sport may make friends with those who also run or swim a lot.

3

Remember to be nice to the people you meet at your new school. If you think that you will say something that may make them feel sad, do not say anything and just nod your head if they talk to you. Also, remember to be as helpful as possible!

Believe in yourself.

A smile goes a long way. When you walk in the halls, don't keep your eyes on the floor. Raise your head and make eye contact with other people. 4 Introduce yourself. Tell them your name and where you're from.

Remember people's names.

You like it when people use your name, and so do other people. 5 Besides, ask them in a kind way if they have a nickname (昵称). You'd be surprised how often this might come in handy.

- Be friendly to others.
- Making new friends can be hard, too.
- Join after-school activities you like.
- Never change who you are to try and fit in.
- If you see someone you know, smile or say "Hi".
- People may become angry if you just begin by saying "Hey" each time.
- Don't sit at the back of the classroom where other people don't notice you!

答案:1~5 BDAEF

【微点写作】续写故事

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

- I've lost track of all my old friends.
我与所有的老朋友都失去了联系。
- Only in these ways can we win others' respect and friendship.
只有通过这些方式我们才能赢得别人的尊重与友谊。
- To build a good relationship, we should trust each other first.
要建立良好的关系,我们首先应该彼此信任。

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas

Language points

学习任务及目标

- 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
- 初步了解论说文的文体特征;
- 能够使用本课时的所学知识描述朋友间的相处与情感,丰富对友谊的认知,深化对友谊的理解与感悟;
- 基于课文内容联系生活实际,运用与话题相关的语言知识,辩证地认识并评价网络交友的现象,提高语言的综合运用能力。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- Charlie Chaplin is a figure **familiar** to people all over the world. 熟悉的
- It is important to **maintain** a constant (恒定的) temperature inside the greenhouse. 保持,维持

- When you have selected the file you want, you can **click** here to download (下载) it. 点击(鼠标)
- I'll need regular **updates** on the progress of the project. 最新消息
- The teacher drew a **diagram** showing how the

续表

blood flows (流) through the heart.

图解,示意图

6. The shop which is next to my apartment sells a wide range of **goods**.

商品

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>adventure</u> <i>n.</i> 历险(经历), 奇遇	<u>adventurous</u> <i>adj.</i> 有冒险精神的; 新奇的; 惊险的
<u>prefer</u> <i>v.</i> 更喜欢	<u>preference</u> <i>n.</i> 偏爱; 爱好
<u>deliver</u> <i>v.</i> 递送, 传送	<u>delivery</u> <i>n.</i> 传送, 递送; 交付; 分娩; 演讲方式
<u>advance</u> <i>n.</i> 进步, 进展	<u>advanced</u> <i>adj.</i> 先进的; 高级的; 高等的
<u>significantly</u> <i>adv.</i> 重大地, 显著地	<u>significant</u> <i>adj.</i> 有意义的; 重要的
	<u>significance</u> <i>n.</i> 意义; 含义; 重要性
<u>enable</u> <i>v.</i> 使可能, 使发生	<u>able</u> <i>adj.</i> 有能力的
	<u>ability</u> <i>n.</i> 能力; 才能
<u>unusual</u> <i>adj.</i> 异常的, 不平常的	<u>usual</u> <i>adj.</i> 通常的
	<u>usually</u> <i>adv.</i> 通常; 正常地; 经常
<u>tend</u> <i>v.</i> 易于做某事, 往往会发生某事	<u>tendency</u> <i>n.</i> 倾向; 趋势
<u>criminal</u> <i>n.</i> 罪犯	<u>crime</u> <i>n.</i> 犯罪活动; 罪行
<u>prove</u> <i>v.</i> 证明, 证实	<u>proof</u> <i>n.</i> 证据, 证明 <i>adj.</i> 防……的, 抗……的
<u>illustrate</u> <i>v.</i> (举例) 说明, 阐明	<u>illustration</u> <i>n.</i> 图解; 图示; 解释

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>acquire</u> <i>v.</i> 获得, 得到	<u>acquired</u> <i>adj.</i> 获得的, 得到的
	<u>acquisition</u> <i>n.</i> 获得; 技能; 学到的东西

III. 补全短语

- lose track of 不了解……的情况, 不了解……的动态
- thanks to 归功于……, 多亏……
- connect... with... 使……与……连接; 把……与……联系起来
- stay in touch with 与……保持联系
- be up to sth 正在做着或忙于某事
- keep in mind 记住, 牢记

IV. 重点句式补全

- 句型公式: “疑问词+ever”引导让步状语从句
Whatever our hobbies, the Internet can connect us with others who also enjoy doing them, even if they live on the other side of the world.
 不管我们的爱好是什么, 互联网都能把我们和其他喜欢做这些事情的人联系起来, 即使他们生活在世界的另一端。
- 句型公式: what 引导名词性从句
 But we need to keep in mind that what we see on social media is often not the whole truth about a person.
 但我们需要谨记, 我们在社交媒体上看到的往往不是一个人的全部真面目。
- 句型公式: even if 引导让步状语从句
 As Aristotle said, no one would choose to live without friends, even if he had all other goods.
 正如亚里士多德所说的: 没有人会选择没有朋友的生活, 即使他拥有其他所有财富。

任务型课堂

1. prefer *v.* 更喜欢

(教材原文) How do you **prefer** to make friends?
你更喜欢怎样交朋友?

一感 读句子感悟用法

I **prefer wearing/to wear** clothes made of natural fibers.

我更喜欢穿天然纤维做的衣服。

Unlike fast-food places, fine dining shops **prefer customers to stay** longer and spend.

与快餐店不同的是, 高档餐厅更喜欢顾客逗留更长时间, 消费更多。

The old **prefer** classical music **to** pop music.
比起流行音乐, 老年人更喜欢古典音乐。

I **prefer doing** something useful outside **to staying** at home.

比起待在家里, 我更喜欢在外面做一些有用的事情。

I **prefer to rent** such an apartment **rather than buy** one.

与其买房子我更愿意租一套这样的公寓。

He is interested in all subjects, but he **has a particular preference for** English.

他对所有科目都感兴趣,但是对英语尤其喜好。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)prefer doing/to do sth 更愿意做某事 prefer sb _____ sth 宁愿某人做某事 prefer (doing) sth _____ (doing) sth = prefer to do sth rather than do sth 宁愿(做)某事 ……也不愿(做)某事 (2)preference <i>n.</i> 偏爱,爱好 have a preference _____ 喜好……,偏爱……
探究结论	(1)to do; to (2)for

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

- I prefer him to come (come) to see me right now.
- Nowadays many children prefer surfing (surf) the Internet at home to taking exercise outdoors.
- I have a preference (prefer) for coffee while my father likes tea.
- He always prefers riding (ride) a bicycle to taking a crowded bus.

2. advance *n.* 进步,进展

(教材原文)Thanks to **advances** in technology, how we make friends and communicate with them has changed significantly.

得益于科技的进步,我们结交朋友、与朋友沟通的方式发生了很大的变化。

一感 读句子感悟用法

We have **made great advances in** developing our ship-building industry.

我们在发展造船工业方面有了很大的进步。

I would like to warn you **in advance** that if you smoked here you would be fined.

我想提前警告你,如果你在这里吸烟,你就会被罚款。

Having shown you around our school, I will introduce our most **advanced** science lab to you.

领着您参观我们学校后,我将向您介绍我校最先进的科学实验室。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)make an advance/advances _____ 在某方面有进步/发展 (2)_____ advance(=ahead of time) 提前 (3)_____ <i>adj.</i> 高级的;进步的;先进的
探究结论	(1)in (2)in (3)advanced

名师点拨 ■■■■

advance 还可用作动词,意为“前进;促进”;用作形容词时,意为“预先的,事先的”。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1)写出下列句子中 advance 的词性和含义

- There have been great **advances** in medicine in the last ten years. *n.* 进步,进展
- This will further **advance** the friendly relations between the two countries. *v.* 促进
- It is a popular show, so **advance** booking is essential. *adj.* 预先的

(2)单句语法填空

- Advances (advance) in medical science have made it possible to cure many diseases.
- This restaurant is usually full at mealtimes, so you'd better book a table in advance.
- We should learn their advanced (advance) experience in management.

3. tend *v.* 易于做某事,往往会发生某事

(教材原文)On social media sites, people **tend** to post only positive updates that make them appear happy and friendly.

在社交网站上,人们倾向于只发布正面的信息,塑造自己快乐且友善的形象。

一感 读句子感悟用法

Men who had been under stress **tended to take** more risks while women responded in the opposite way.

男性在压力下更容易冒险,然而女性却完全相反。

Several nurses carefully **tended (to)** the sick man.
几位护士悉心照料那个病人。

There is a **tendency** for the rate of profit to fall.
利润率有下降的趋势。

People **have a tendency to choose** the safety of the middle-ground reply.

人们倾向于选择一种安全的不偏不倚的回答。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) tend _____ sth 易于做某事, 往往会做某事 tend (to) sb 照顾某人 (2) _____ n. 倾向; 趋势 have a tendency to do sth 倾向于做某事
探究结论	(1) to do (2) tendency

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① There is a growing tendency (tend) for people to work at home instead of in offices.

② We tend to make (make) mistakes when we do things in a hurry.

(2) 一句多译

她紧张时往往说话很快。

① She tended to talk fast when she was nervous. (tend)

② She had a tendency to talk fast when she was nervous. (tendency)

课后素养评价(十七)

I. 单词拼写

- We have always maintained (维持) good relations with our customers.
- The new plastic enables (使可能) us to make our products more cheaply.
- It tends (往往会发生某事) to be very wet at this time of year.
- Garbage collectors have improved significantly (显著地) over the past ten years.
- This can become a driving force for social advance (进步).
- We have lots of goods that need to be delivered (递送) in three days.
- I set off for a new adventure (冒险) in Alaska on the first day of the new year.
- Tests have proved (证实) that the system works.
- He spent years acquiring (获得) his skills as a doctor.
- It is unusual (不寻常的) for this kind of flower to come out in winter.
- The man looks so familiar (熟悉的) but I can't remember his name.
- One student commented that she preferred (更喜欢) literature to social science.

II. 短语填空

lose track of; communicate with; keep in mind; connect... with...; stay in touch with; long for; make friends; thanks to

- Thanks to your help, we finished the task in time.
- I don't know how to communicate with strangers.
- Keep in mind that the bank will be closed tomorrow.
- A pedestrian bridge now connects the parking garage with the mall.
- Helen is a very shy girl and it is not easy for her to make friends with others.
- Freedom is perhaps what we all long for.
- Stay in touch with those who matter to you.
- We used to be friends, but lost track of each other afterwards.

III. 完成句子

- Whatever happens, you shouldn't lose heart.
无论发生什么事,你都不要丧失信心。
- It's up to you to decide whether we buy this set of furniture or not.
由你决定我们是否买这套家具。
- What if it rains tomorrow?
倘若明天下雨将会怎样呢?
- Even if you read English easily, you'll find it is another cup of tea to make conversations in English.
即便你读起英语来很容易,你会发现用英语进行对话是另外一回事。
- The way (that/in which) he teaches us in class is very interesting.
他给我们上课的方式非常有趣。

B 根据上文“when there's been a storm or a sports event”和后文“We talk about health, finances”可知,他们交谈的内容越来越私人化。故选 B。

13. A. crossed up B. let on
C. kept to D. consisted of

A 根据下文“They haven't gone to a game or had a coffee together.”可知,有两次他们计划拜访对方,但是现实情况打乱了他们的计划。cross up“搅乱,彻底破坏”。故选 A。

14. A. forgets B. mentions
C. imagines D. minds

D 根据下文“as picking up the phone is enough”可知,他们都不介意没有见过彼此。故选 D。

15. A. heard B. thanked
C. met D. left

C 根据语境可知,John 和 Phil 他们两个人从来都没有见过面,因此 John 说他最好的朋友是他尚未见过的人。故选 C。

【微点写作】续写故事

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. Putting ourselves in their shoes is of great significance when we have conflicts with friends.

当我们和朋友发生冲突的时候,换位思考是十分重要的。

2. The moral of the story is: spare no effort to acquire knowledge and never get discouraged easily however difficult the situation may be.

这个故事的寓意是:要不遗余力地获取知识,不管情况多么困难都不要轻易气馁。

3. Accompanied by his friends, he went to the teachers' office to admit what he had done was wrong.

在朋友的陪伴下,他去了老师的办公室,承认他所做的是错误的。

Section III Using language

学习任务及目标

- 通过了解限制性定语从句的结构和表意功能,掌握关系代词的用法,并能够在真实语境中运用;
- 掌握并能够自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
- 掌握并能够恰当地使用描述朋友行为和品质的词汇,讨论朋友的行为和品质;
- 能够听懂与友谊相关的一般性话题内容,并能够恰当地运用功能表达向朋友提出建议;
- 初步认识友谊的重要性,掌握与朋友相处的方法,形成健康、和谐的人际关系。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. Since his parents died early, he had to earn his own living when he was a **teenager**.

青少年,十几岁的孩子(13 到 19 岁之间的孩子)

2. **Pour** the honey into the bowl and mix it thoroughly with water. **倒**

3. You should put some water into the **pot** before adding the rice. **锅**

4. A person should have at least 200 **grams** of fruit and vegetables every day. **克**

5. We are still looking for someone who combines all the necessary **qualities**. **素质,品德**

6. Let's **postpone** making a decision until we have more information. **使(事件、行动等)延期,推迟**

7. The man went into the shop and bought a **pack** of cigarettes which cost him \$4. **小盒,小包**

8. To keep slim, she only had a **slice** of bread for her breakfast. **片,薄片**

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
inspiring <i>adj.</i> 鼓舞人心的,启发灵感的	inspire <i>v.</i> 鼓舞;激励
	inspiration <i>n.</i> 鼓舞;启示;灵感

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>comfort</u> <i>n.</i> 安慰, 慰藉	<u>comfortable</u> <i>adj.</i> 使人舒服的; 舒适的, 舒服的; 自在的
<u>patience</u> <i>n.</i> 耐心	<u>patient</u> <i>adj.</i> 耐心的 <i>n.</i> 病人
	<u>patiently</u> <i>adv.</i> 耐心地
<u>passion</u> <i>n.</i> 强烈的情感, 激情	<u>passionate</u> <i>adj.</i> 热诚的; 狂热的
<u>generosity</u> <i>n.</i> 慷慨, 大方	<u>generous</u> <i>adj.</i> 慷慨的, 大方的; 宽宏大量的, 仁慈的
<u>humour</u> <i>n.</i> 幽默感	<u>humorous</u> <i>adj.</i> 幽默的
<u>anxious</u> <i>adj.</i> 焦虑的, 不安的	<u>anxiously</u> <i>adv.</i> 焦虑地
	<u>anxiety</u> <i>n.</i> 焦虑, 担心; 渴望
<u>distance</u> <i>v.</i> 使与……保持距离, 撇清和……的关系 <i>n.</i> 距离	<u>distant</u> <i>adj.</i> 遥远的; 冷漠的

III. 补全短语

1. ask sb for help 向某人寻求帮助
2. be open to 对……开放
3. feel down 感到沮丧, 情绪消沉

4. come up 出现; 发生; 被提出; 上升, 升起
5. mix... with... 把……和……混合
6. up to 高达
7. agree on sth 对某事(物)有同样看法, 商定(同意)某事
8. at first 最初, 首先
9. according to 根据

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: it 作形式主语

At first it was difficult to communicate with her.
起初和她交流很困难。

2. 句型公式: it 作形式宾语

This makes it clear to the other person that you are giving them a choice.

这能向其他人清楚地表明, 你正在给他们一个选择。

3. 句型公式: How about...?

How about sending him funny postcards from every place we visit?

从我们参观的每一个地方寄给他有趣的明信片怎么样?

任务型课堂

1. anxious *adj.* 焦虑的, 不安的

(教材原文)... the ability to wait without becoming **anxious** or angry

等待时不会变得焦虑或生气的的能力

一感 读句子感悟用法

The couple **were anxious for/about** their children when they didn't come back home from school.

孩子们放学后没有回家, 这对夫妇非常担心。

She **was** very **anxious to get** away from cities and back to nature.

她特别渴望离开城市, 回归自然。

We **are anxious for** the news of your safe arrival.

我们渴望得到你安全到达的消息。

She was waiting for his son's return **with anxiety/ anxiously.**

她正焦虑地等待着她儿子的归来。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) be anxious about/for 为……担心/忧虑 be anxious _____ sth 渴望/急于做某事 be anxious for 渴望得到…… (2) _____ <i>adv.</i> 焦急地, 忧虑地 (3) anxiety <i>n.</i> 焦虑, 忧虑, 担心 _____ anxiety 焦急地, 忧虑地
探究结论	(1) to do (2) anxiously (3) with

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

① As is known to all, everyone is anxious for success.

② These students were anxious to know (know) the results of the exam.

③ Music seemed to quiet her anxiety (anxious) and loneliness.

④ After the college entrance examination, the students were all waiting anxiously (anxious) for the results.

2. distance v. 使与……保持距离,撇清和……的关系 n. 距离

(教材原文)... use a past tense to **distance** yourself from the suggestion: *I was wondering whether...*
用过去时使自己远离这个建议:我想知道……

一感 读句子感悟用法

The author **distanced** himself **from** some of the comments in his book.

作者使自己书中的某些评论不带个人色彩。

Farther **in the distance**, I could enjoy the view of snowy mountains.

在远处我能看到雪山。

The railway station is **at a distance of** two miles away from our school.

火车站离我们学校有两英里路程。

The sound of the car was growing more and more **distant**.

汽车的声音渐行渐远。

The sun **is distant from** the earth.

太阳距地球很遥远。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) distance sb _____ sth 使某人远离某事,使某人撇清和某事的关系 _____ the distance 在远方,在远处 at a distance 稍远处;隔一段距离 _____ a distance of 相距……,在……远的地方
	(2) distant <i>adj.</i> 遥远的;冷漠的 be distant _____ 离……遥远
探究结论	(1) from; in; at (2) from

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

- The noise of the car died away in the distance.
- Now and then he stepped back to look at his work at a distance.
- The dog looked dangerous, so I decided to distance myself from it.
- The time we spent together is now a distant (distance) memory.

语法探究

关系代词引导的定语从句

「语法感知」

① The digital age also enables us to find people **who** share our interests, such as collecting model cars or playing an unusual instrument.

② On social media sites, people tend to post only positive updates **that** make them appear happy and friendly.

③ Born in 476 BC, he came from a family **which** was very poor.

④ Do you know the girl **whose** English is excellent?

⑤ The woman (**whom**) you saw just now is our teacher.

⑥ Nowadays, we can move around the world and still stay in touch with the people (**that**) we want to remain friends with.

- 在句子①②③中,定语从句的关系词 who, that, which 是关系代词,均在定语从句中充当主语,不可省略。
- 在句子④中,定语从句的关系词 whose 是关系代词,在定语从句中充当定语,不可省略。
- 在句子⑤⑥中,定语从句的关系词 whom, that 是关系代词,在定语从句中充当宾语,可以省略。

名师点拨 ■■■■

定语从句、先行词、关系词的概念:

- 在复合句中,修饰某一名词、代词或整个主句的从句叫作定语从句。
- 被定语从句修饰的名词或代词叫作先行词。
- 连接先行词和定语从句的词叫关系词。关系词的主要作用是连接主句和从句,同时指代先行词,并在从句中充当一定的句子成分。关系词分为关系代词和关系副词两种。

「语法精讲」

一、关系代词的指代及功能

关系代词	在从句中所作成分	先行词
who	指人,在定语从句中作主语、宾语和表语	指人的名词
whom	指人,在定语从句中作宾语,可以省略也可用 who/that 代替	指人的名词
whose	指人或物,在定语从句中作定语,相当于“the+名词+of which/whom”和“of which/whom+the+名词”的形式	指人或物的名词
that	指人或物,在定语从句中作主语、宾语或表语,作宾语时可以省略	指人或物的名词
which	指物,在定语从句中作主语、宾语,作宾语时可以省略	指物的名词

There is a girl **who** wants to see you.

有一个女孩儿想见你。

The old man **who/whom/that** you saw yesterday is a thinker.

你昨天见到的那位老人是一个思想家。

This is the scientist **whose** name is known all over the country.

→This is the scientist **the name of whom** is known all over the country.

这就是那位全国知名的科学家。

Please pass me the book **whose** cover is green.

→Please pass me the book **the cover of which** is green.

请递给我那本绿色封面的书。

Please find a room **which/that** is big enough for all of us to live in.

请找一间足够住下我们所有人的房间。

This is the house (**which/that**) we bought last month.

这是我们上个月买的那幢房子。

二、在限制性定语从句中,关系代词用 **that** 不用 **which** 的情况

1. 当先行词为 all, everything, nothing, anything, little, much 等不定代词或先行词被这些词修饰时,如:

Can you give me anything **that** has no sugar inside?

能不能给我点儿里面没有糖的东西?

2. 当先行词是序数词、形容词最高级或先行词被序数词或形容词最高级修饰时,如:

This is the first two-storey bus **that** runs in our city.

这是第一辆运行于我市的双层公交车。

3. 当先行词被 the only, the very, the same, the right 等修饰时,如:

Guilin is the most beautiful city **that** I have ever visited.

桂林是我游览过的最美丽的城市。

This is the very scarf **that** Mother has been looking for.

这就是妈妈一直在找的那条围巾。

4. 当先行词既有人又有物时,如:

Can you tell me the people and events **that** you saw in Britain?

你能告诉我你在英国见到的人和事吗?

5. 当先行词在定语从句中作表语时,如:

Shanghai is no longer the city **that** it used to be.

上海已不是它过去那个样子了。

6. 当主语是以 which 开头的疑问句时,如:

Which are the books **that** you bought for me?

哪些是你为我买的书?

三、关系代词用 **which** 不用 **that** 的情况

1. 在定语从句中作介词的宾语,且介词位于关系代词前时,如:

This is the room in **which** he lives.

这是他住的房间。

2. 引导非限制性定语从句时,如:

Tom came back, **which** made us very happy.

汤姆回来了,这使我们很高兴。

3. 在限制性定语从句中,如果有两个定语从句,其中一句的关系代词是 that,那么另外一句的关系代词就要用 which,避免重复,如:

Let me show you the novel **that** I borrowed from the library **which** was newly open.

让我给你看看那本刚刚从新开的图书馆借来的小说。

「语法闯关」

I. 单句语法填空

1. The first thing that he did after arriving home was doing his homework.

2. My father bought a new bicycle for me whose price added up to more than 1,000 yuan.

3. Anyone who has helped to save the drowning girl is worth praising.
4. Do you still remember the chicken farm that/which we visited three months ago?
5. All that we need is enough rest after long hours' work.
6. On the train I saw a girl who/that I thought was your sister.
7. I wish to thank Professor Brown, without whose help I would never have got this.
8. I missed the teachers and the kindergarten that my parents thought highly of.

II. 完成句子

1. I do have a few suggestions which/that you should pay attention to.
我的确有几条建议需要你注意。
2. The old man whom/who/that they are waiting for is Professor Li.
他们正在等的那位老人是李教授。
3. In senior high school, you will study more courses which/that are different from your junior middle school courses.
在高中,你将学习更多不同于初中的课程。

课后素养评价(十八)

I. 选词填空

in comfort; at a distance of; anxious;
patient; passion; teenager; inspiring; quality

1. The sound of the waterfall can be heard at a distance of two miles.
2. They are collected from the airport upon arrival and brought to their accommodation in comfort.
3. Sue was anxious about her son because it was the first time that he had lived abroad alone.
4. What inspiring news this is!
5. We would like to thank them for their patience and understanding.
6. The few hours I spent in the library had brought back my passion for reading.
7. Nowadays most teenagers find it difficult to stop playing computer games.
8. I'm not sure whether the shirt is of good quality, but I'll buy one online anyhow.

II. 单句语法填空

1. When the girl studied in England, she lived with a host family whose members always helped her.
2. The man is talking about the teachers and things that encouraged him greatly in school.
3. The man who/that is talking with my father is a policeman.
4. The professor who/that/whom you wish to see has gone abroad.
5. Do you have anything that is important to tell me?
6. A shop should keep a stock (储备物) of those goods which/that sell best.

7. Please send us all the information that you have about the interviewees for the position.
8. Let's postpone making (make) a decision until we have more information.
9. We make it a rule to visit (visit) the old every weekend.

III. 阅读理解

Growing up with movies such as *High School Musical* and *Grease*, which presented the ideal (理想的) high school friendships, we sometimes expect a perfect relationship. Indeed, some high school friendships can be real and simple; while still some high school students will meet a friend who causes trouble. With failed friendships come lessons and experiences learned for the future. You will know the influence after you leave high school.

"I was always worried about what my friends thought about me. Sometimes my friends would make fun of what I wore or what I would do. I always tried to get along well with them, but I realised how happy I was once I stopped contacting them after high school," said Elisha, Class of 2020.

Most teens have not realised the big question when dealing with high school problems. In five years, will this still matter? It is hard to look at the big picture when the problems are in front of you, which is understandable. However, most teens need a moment to reflect (反思) and question if the problem matters in a long time.

Briana, a high school teacher, said, “Now, I am in contact with two high school friends. I think the friendship experiences I had in high school shaped who I am because I learned to be open-minded and befriend all kinds of people. I learned to see people for who they are, not what they wear or who they play with. I learned most of all how to be a good friend.”

High school is a small part of your life, but it has a huge influence on who you will become and where you will go. Friendships and relationships help shape who you are, whether they are good or bad. Lessons are brought, and lessons are learned.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。文章主要论述了高中的友谊会塑造青少年。

1. Why did the author mention the two movies in the first paragraph?

- A. To introduce the topic of the passage.
- B. To explain what a high school friendship is.
- C. To recommend these two movies to readers.
- D. To attract readers' attention to these two movies.

A 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“Indeed, some high school friendships can be real and simple; while still some high school students will meet a friend who causes trouble. With failed friendships come lessons and experiences learned for the future. You will know the influence after you leave high school.”以及后文对高中友谊的论述可推知,第一段提到这两部电影是为了引出本文的主题——高中的友谊塑造了青少年。故选 A。

2. What did Elisha think of her “friends”?

- A. They made her unhappy.
- B. They cared about her behavior.
- C. They got along well with her.
- D. They were always worried about her.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段 Elisha 所说的话“I was always worried about what my friends thought about me. Sometimes my friends would make fun of what I wore or what I would do. I always tried to get along well with them, but I realised how happy I was once I stopped

contacting them after high school”可知,Elisha 认为她的“朋友”让她不开心。故选 A。

3. Why did Briana think her friendship experiences shape her?

- A. Because she learned to play with her friends.
- B. Because she learned to make different friends.
- C. Because she learned to shape her friends' minds.
- D. Because she learned to wear just like her friends.

B 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段 Briana 所说的话“I think the friendship experiences I had in high school shaped who I am because I learned to be open-minded and befriend all kinds of people.”可知,Briana 认为她的友谊塑造了她,是因为她学会了与各种各样的人交朋友。故选 B。

4. What's the passage mainly about?

- A. Failed friendships make teens worried.
- B. Good friendships greatly influence teens.
- C. High school friendships help to shape teens.
- D. Friendships are difficult for teens to deal with.

C 主旨大意题。根据文章的主要内容,尤其是第一段中的“Indeed, some high school friendships can be real and simple; while still some high school students will meet a friend who causes trouble. With failed friendships come lessons and experiences learned for the future. You will know the influence after you leave high school.”和最后一段的内容可知,本文主要论述了高中的友谊会塑造青少年,无论好坏。故选 C。

【微点写作】续写故事

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. I didn't realise the importance of friendship until I went to a new school.
直到我去了一所新学校我才意识到友谊的重要性。
2. The key to successful small talk is learning how to communicate with others.
成功的闲聊的关键在于学会如何与他人交流。
3. Do you want a friend whom you could tell everything to, like your deepest feelings and thoughts?
你想要一个你可以向其倾诉所有的一切,包括你内心深处的情感和想法的朋友吗?

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点；
2. 能够理解课文内容，明确故事中的人物形象和特点，评价人物的行为；
3. 初步掌握小说类文体的基本特征和常用的阅读方法；
4. 对友谊这一话题有更深入的理解，能够形成自己的友谊观；
5. 了解英语辩论的基本方法，能够运用恰当的表达方式进行辩论，阐述自己对友谊的理解并举例证明，提高语言的综合运用能力，锻炼逻辑思维能力。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇和表达的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇和表达

1. ordinary *adj.* 普通的, 平常的
2. fortune *n.* 大笔的钱, 巨款
3. correspond *v.* 通信
4. partner *n.* 伙伴, 搭档
5. appointed *adj.* 约定的, 指定的
6. strike *v.* 划(火柴)
7. plain *adj.* 简单的, 朴素的
8. scene *n.* 场景
9. bitterly *adv.* 痛苦地, 愤恨地
10. ashamed *adj.* 感到不好意思的, 难为情的
11. unfold *v.* (卷着的东西) 展开, 打开
12. location *n.* 地点, 位置
13. surroundings *n.* 周围的事物, 环境
14. personality *n.* 个性, 性格
15. atmosphere *n.* 气氛, 氛围, 环境

16. make one's fortune 发财
17. ought to 应该, 应当
18. turn up (意外地或终于) 出现
19. work out 设法弄懂; 制订出; 计算出; 做出; 解决; 锻炼; 发展; 成功; 产生结果
20. hear from 收到……的来信

(二) 阅读词汇和表达

1. scar *n.* 伤疤
2. dine *v.* 进餐
3. chum *n.* 好朋友
4. chap *n.* 小伙子, 家伙
5. drag *v.* 拖, 拉
6. destiny *n.* 命运, 天命
7. proposition *n.* 事业, 生意
8. hustle *v.* 拼命干, 努力干
9. staunch *adj.* 坚定的, 忠实可靠的
10. excerpt *n.* 摘录, 节录
11. cigar *n.* 雪茄烟
12. leave work 下班

「课文速览」

表格填空

After Twenty Years	
Setting	The short story is set in 1. <u>New York</u> on a cold, dark night.
Characters in the story	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The man with a 2. <u>scar</u> on his face is waiting for his friend. • A 3. <u>policeman</u> checking the area sees the man.
The appointment made twenty years ago	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The man and his friend Jimmy were good friends and they 4. <u>dined</u> at “Big Joe” Brady’s twenty years ago. • The man decided to go to the West to make his 5. <u>fortune</u>. Jimmy could not go along with him. • They agreed that they would meet at “Big Joe” Brady’s twenty years later no matter what might happen.

After Twenty Years	
The policeman's attitude to the appointment	• It's rather a long time between 6. <u>meets</u> .
The man's attitude to the appointment	• Jimmy would meet him there if he was 7. <u>alive</u> . • Jimmy would never 8. <u>forget</u> .

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- What's the writer's purpose of writing this passage?
 - To change people's usual impression of friendship.
 - To tell us how difficult it is to meet a person.
 - To warn us not to be late for meeting friends.
 - To show the friendship between the two former friends.
- What was the policeman doing when seeing a man?
 - Searching for a criminal.
 - Going on a patrol (巡逻).
 - Dealing with an urgent thing.
 - Helping the man in need.
- What promise did Jimmy and the man make before they parted?
 - Making a large fortune.
 - Working out their destiny.
 - Meeting again at the same place.
 - Not giving up the hope of living.
- What do we know about Jimmy?
 - He had a special feeling for New York.
 - He didn't know other places in the world.
 - He wanted to live a meaningful life alone.
 - He had no idea of what his future would be like.

答案: 1~4 DBCA

II. 课文语法填空

The story *After Twenty Years* is set **1.** in New York on a cold, dark night. It is about two friends named Bob and Jimmy. Twenty years ago, Bob

2. dined (dine) at a restaurant with his friend Jimmy. He decided to leave for the West **3.** to make (make) his fortune, but Jimmy would rather stay in New York. They made a promise that they would meet at the place **4.** where they had dined.

During the twenty years, Bob kept hustling around over the West pretty lively and Jimmy became **5.** a policeman. Bob kept the **6.** appointment (appoint) and came back, believing that Jimmy would come if he was alive, because he was the **7.** truest (true), staunchest old chap in the world. He struck a match to light his cigar, **8.** waiting (wait) for his friend. Jimmy arrived at the appointed place but found Bob was just the man **9.** wanted (want) in Chicago.

However, Jimmy couldn't catch his best friend **10.** himself (he), so he asked a plain clothes policeman to do it.

III. 阅读升华

- What did the man experience in the past twenty years?

He kept hustling around over the West pretty lively.
- Do you know the end of the story?

Yes. The policeman was Jimmy. He came for the appointment, but arrested his friend eventually.

课后素养评价(十九)

I. 单词拼写

- I differ with my partner (伙伴) sometimes but we usually agree.
- I wonder whether he is corresponding (通信) with his pen friend.

- Unfortunately, the illness can lead to changes in personality (性格).
- A new chapter in a novel is something like a new scene (场景) in a play.
- The atmosphere (气氛) at lunch was relaxed.

- Now cars have entered into ordinary (普通的) families.
- It suddenly struck (突然想起) me that we ought to make a new plan.
- I'm ashamed (难为情的) to tell my parents that I failed the test.
- These houses which are in a really good location (位置) cost a lot of money.
- Appreciate your surroundings (环境) and live life as wonderful as you can.

II. 短语填空

work out; turn up; make a fortune;
hear from; ought to; on earth

- Do you think that he didn't turn up by accident or by design?
- Have you heard from Jane since she moved to Beijing?
- Now there are many young men in our society dreaming of making a fortune by themselves.
- After they discussed for several days, they finally worked out a new plan.
- What on earth did you tell her? The expression on her face suggested that she was more than angry.
- We ought to work hard to make our dreams come true.

III. 完成句子

- But for the encouraging cheers from the audience, our team couldn't have won such an important match.
要不是观众们鼓励性的欢呼,我们队不可能赢得这么重要的比赛。
- To get more information, you can visit our website.
想获取更多信息,你可以访问我们的网站。
- Whatever/No matter what happens, I will always carry this joy with me.
不管发生什么,我会让这份快乐一直伴随着自己。
- Unfortunately, he had his right leg injured during the training.
不幸的是,他在训练中把右腿弄伤了。
- His new book based on a true story is to be published next week.
他的新书以真实的故事为蓝本,将于下周出版。

IV. 七选五

Ways to Build Strong Friendships

Be loyal to a friend.

Part of being a friend is being prepared to devote your time and energy to helping out your friends. If a friend needs help with an unpleasant thing, or if he or she just needs a shoulder to cry on, be there for him or her. 1 This is a good way to attract the kind of friend you want in your life.

2

When you say you'll do something, do it. When your friend tells you a secret, keep it secret from others. Be someone that people know that they can rely on. If you show this quality to your friends, they will appreciate it and will be reliable in return.

Be a good listener.

Many people think they have to appear very interesting. 3 Listen carefully to what people say, remember important details about them, ask questions about their interests, and take the time to learn more about them.

Stress your good qualities.

Show others what makes you stand out from the crowd. Talk about your interests and hobbies. Everyone has interesting stories to tell—don't be afraid to share yours. 4 People love to be around someone who makes them laugh.

Choose your friends wisely.

As you make friends with more people, you may find that some are hard to get along with. Sometimes you may even realise that certain friendships are unhealthy. 5 Cherish those friends who are a positive influence in your life, and do your best to be a positive influence in theirs.

- Be a reliable friend.
- Keep your promise to your friend.
- Be respectful of their decisions and share yours with them.
- Besides, a little humour always keeps a conversation light and happy.
- In this case, walk your way out of the friendship as gracefully as possible.
- Being a loyal friend will attract other people to you who value this quality.
- What is more important than that, however, is the ability to show that you're interested in others.

答案:1~5 FAGDE

【微点写作】续写故事

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

- Friendship is like sunshine. It keeps us warm and helps us grow.
友谊就像阳光,它让我们温暖,帮助我们成长。
- A friend in need is a friend indeed.
患难见真情。
- I like to choose people who are kind, honest and helpful as my friends.
我喜欢选择善良、诚实、乐于助人的人成为我的朋友。

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 了解欧·亨利的短篇小说和“欧·亨利式”结尾的特点;
3. 了解故事结尾的特点,并能够根据故事情节的发展合理续写结尾;
4. 通过联系自身实际,进一步深入理解友谊的意义和内涵,辩证地思考情与法之间的关系,树立正确的友情观,在生活中珍惜友谊、正确交友。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. She managed to **drag** the single bed to her bedroom.
拖,拉
2. Find a **partner** and practise these new dance steps.
伙伴,搭档
3. The man **struck** a match and made a fire in the cave.
划(火柴)
4. **Plain** and simple clothes are appropriate for school wear.
朴素的
5. I like that restaurant because it has a relaxing **atmosphere**.
气氛,氛围,环境
6. Strange things sometimes happen to **ordinary** people.
普通的
7. He complained **bitterly** that he had been unfairly treated.
痛苦地,愤恨地

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
fortune <i>n.</i> 大笔的钱, 巨款	fortunate <i>adj.</i> 幸运的 fortunately <i>adv.</i> 幸运地
correspond <i>v.</i> 通信	correspondence <i>n.</i> 一致,符合;通信联系;往来书信 corresponding <i>adj.</i> 符合的,相应的,相关的
appointed <i>adj.</i> 约定的,指定的	appoint <i>v.</i> 安排,确定(时间、地点);任命,委派 appointment <i>n.</i> 预约,约定;任命,委派

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
location <i>n.</i> 地点,位置	locate <i>v.</i> 找出……的准确位置;确定……的准确地点;把……安置在(或建造于) located <i>adj.</i> 位于……的,坐落在
scene <i>n.</i> 场景,场面;(戏剧中的)一场;发生地点,现场;景色,景象	scenery <i>n.</i> 风景,景色 scenic <i>adj.</i> 景色优美的

III. 补全短语

1. be set in 以……为背景
2. start for 出发去
3. make one's fortune 发财
4. ought to 应该,应当
5. hear from 收到……的来信
6. turn up (意外地或终于)出现
7. be ashamed of 为……感到羞耻
8. long for 渴望
9. work out 设法弄懂;制订出;计算出;做出;解决;锻炼;发展;成功;产生结果
10. come up with 提出,想出(计划、想法等);追赶上

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式:不定式作目的状语

The next morning I was to start for the West to make my fortune.

第二天一早我就要去西部赚大钱了。

2. 句型公式: have sth done

We figured that in twenty years each of us ought to have our destiny worked out and our fortunes made, whatever they were going to be.

我们当时觉得,不管要做什么,二十年的时间足够自己找到出路、赚到钱。

3. 句型公式: 现在分词作状语

Stepping out of jail into the cold wind, Bob, now 58, felt lost and helpless.

从监狱里出来走在寒风中, 现年五十八岁的鲍勃感到茫然无助。

任务型课堂

1. ashamed *adj.* 感到不好意思的, 难为情的; 羞耻的, 惭愧的

(教材原文) Was he **ashamed** of having a friend like me?

他为我有这样的朋友感到耻辱吗?

一感 读句子感悟用法

I **was ashamed of being watched** like a bird in a cage.

像一只笼中鸟一样被观赏让我觉得很丢脸。

He **was ashamed to have made** some careless mistakes.

他因出了一些很粗心的差错而感到惭愧。

It is a shame that/What a shame that we should have lost such an important customer!

我们丢失了这么重要的客户, 真是太遗憾了!

Such **shameful** behavior will certainly derogate from his fame/reputation.

这种可耻的行为必将毁坏他的声望。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) be/feel ashamed _____ (doing) sth 对(做)某事感到不好意思/难为情/惭愧/羞耻 be ashamed _____ sth 耻于做某事
	(2) shame <i>n.</i> 惭愧, 羞耻, 羞愧; 让人遗憾的事 <i>vt.</i> 使蒙羞, 使惭愧 _____ that.../What a shame that... 真遗憾/多可惜……
	(3) shameful <i>adj.</i> (行为)可耻的; 不道德的
探究结论	(1) of; to do (2) It's a shame

名师点拨 ■■■■

ashamed 指人感到羞耻、惭愧、不好意思;
shameful 指事情或行为本身可耻、不道德。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① He was ashamed of asking (ask) such a simple question.

② It's shameful (shame) the way some people treat their pets.

(2) 完成句子

① I feel/am ashamed of my shameful behavior; I apologise to you.

我为自己可耻的行为感到惭愧; 我向你道歉。

② I'm ashamed to tell you that I lied to her.

我很惭愧地告诉你, 我对她撒了谎。

③ It's a shame that/What a shame that you can't stay for dinner!

你不能留下来吃晚饭真遗憾!

2. surroundings *n.* 周围的事物, 环境

(教材原文) Settings: time, location and descriptions of the environment or **surroundings** help your readers picture the scene.

背景: 可以帮助读者想象场景的时间、地点以及对环境或周围事物的描述。

一感 读句子感悟用法

He **surrounds** himself **with** people who support his opinions of himself.

他身边的人都是支持他观点的人。

Our school is beautiful. Our teaching building **is surrounded with** trees and flowers.

我们学校环境优美。我们的教学楼被花草树木簇拥着。

At the right depth, these blood-filled veins reflect less red light than the **surrounding** skin, making them look blue by comparison.

在合适的深度, 这些充满血液的静脉比周围的皮肤反射的红光要少, 使得它们相比之下看上去是蓝色的。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) surround <i>v.</i> 环绕, 围绕; 包围 surround... _____ ... 用……包围/围绕…… be surrounded _____ ... 被……包围/围绕 (2) _____ <i>adj.</i> 附近的; 四周的
探究结论	(1) with; by/with (2) surrounding

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Some insects take on the colours of their surroundings (surround) to protect themselves.

② It attracts travellers to come over to cycle and walk through the surrounding (surround) forests.

(2) 完成句子

Surrounded with/by trees and flowers, the villa looks very beautiful.

这座被花草树木环绕的别墅看起来很漂亮。

3. “have sth done”结构

(教材原文) We figured that in twenty years each of us ought to **have our destiny worked out and our fortunes made**, whatever they were going to be.

我们当时觉得, 不管要做什么, 二十年的时间足够自己找到出路、赚到钱。

[句式分析] “have sth done”结构是“have+宾语+宾补”结构的形式之一, 意为“使某事被做”, 还可以表示“遭受/经历某种不幸的事”(此时违背主语的心愿)。

一感 读句子感悟用法

He wants to **have his eyes examined** tomorrow.

他明天想去检查眼睛。

I will **have him help** me with my English.

我想让他帮我学英语。

I can't **have you speaking** to your mother in a rude manner. You must apologise to her immediately.

我不允许你一直用那种粗鲁的方式跟你的母亲说话。你必须立刻向她道歉。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	“have+宾语+宾补”结构的其他形式: (1) have sb do sth 让某人做某事 (2) have sb _____ sth 让某人一直做某事(强调动作一直在持续)
探究结论	(2) doing

名师点拨 ■■■■

have sth to do 意为“有某事要做”, to do 作定语, 修饰前面的名词, 不定式的动作由主语发出, 不定式虽为主动形式, 但表示被动意义。

I have a lot of things to do today.

今天我有很多事要做。

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

①—My computer is out of function again.

—You can go to the customer service centre and have it repaired (repair).

②The manager had her assistant buy (buy) some hot dogs for the meeting.

③How could you have her standing (stand) in the cold all night?

④I have a composition to write (write), so I can't go out with you.

写作探究

续写故事

一、写作指导

本单元的写作任务是写一则故事的结尾, 属于读后续写的范畴。文章题材多样, 但多为情节丰富的小故事, 趣味性和逻辑性较强。

1. 在读懂原文的基础上, 紧扣原文中心, 以原文的结局为起点, 写出故事情节的发展和变化。

2. 对原文故事没有写出的情节展开合理的推想, 打开

思路。多角度地想象几种情况或结局, 并从中选择最优项。

3. 要注意前后照应, 符合逻辑, 防止自相矛盾。必须与上文紧密联系, 使上下文融为一体。

4. 原文的主要角色, 在续文中都要有“戏”, 但不要引入影响事件结局的新角色。

注意确保四个一致:

- (1)要与原文的主题或作者的本来意图保持一致;
- (2)要与原文的体裁、结构、写作手法保持一致;
- (3)要与原文的语言特点和叙事风格保持一致;
- (4)主要人物的思想行为、性格特点要与原文保持一致。

二、典题示例

阅读下面的材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Jenny was the only child in her family. She had a quarrel with her mother that afternoon and she ran out of the house angrily. She couldn't help weeping sorrowfully when she thought of the scolding from her mother. Having wandered aimlessly in the street for hours, she felt a little hungry and wished for something to eat. She stood beside a stand for a while, watching the middle-aged seller busy doing his business. However, with no money in hand, she gave a sigh and had to leave.

The seller behind the stand noticed the young girl and asked, "Hey, girl, do you want to have the noodles?"

"Oh, yes, but I don't have any money," she replied.

"That's OK. I'll treat you today," said the man. "Come in."

The seller brought her a bowl of noodles, and the smell was so attractive. As she was eating, Jenny cried silently.

"What is it?" asked the man kindly.

"Nothing. Actually I was just touched by your kindness!" said Jenny as she wiped her tears. "Even a stranger in the street will give me a bowl of noodles, while my mother drove me out of the house. She showed no care for me. She is so merciless compared to a stranger!"

Hearing the words, the seller smiled, "Girl, do you really think so? I only gave you a bowl of noodles and you thanked me a lot. But it is your mother who has raised you since you were a baby. Can you number the times she cooked for you? Have you expressed your gratitude to her?"

Jenny sat there, speechless and numb with shock; she remembered her mother's familiar face and rough hands. "Why didn't I think of that? A bowl of noodles from a stranger made me feel indebted. Why haven't I thanked my mum for what she has done for me?"

On the way home, Jenny made up her mind to make an apology to her mother for her rudeness as soon as she arrived home.

注意:续写 150 词左右。

Approaching the doorway, _____

A gentle touch on her hair called her mind back.

三、审题谋篇

文体	记叙文
时态	以一般过去时为主
人称	以第三人称为主
要点	1. Jenny 到家门口后的情景 2. Jenny 向妈妈道歉,母女俩相互原谅的过程

四、遣词造句

(一)核心词汇和表达

- ①sad *adj.* 伤心的,难过的
- ②angry *adj.* 生气的
- ③scene *n.* 场景
- ④realise *v.* 意识到
- ⑤apologise *v.* 道歉
- ⑥hug *v. & n.* 拥抱
- ⑦take a deep breath 深吸一口气
- ⑧knock at/on the door 敲门
- ⑨take care of 照顾;照料
- ⑩can't help doing sth 禁不住做某事

(二)完成句子

- ①When she knocked at the door, she found the door locked (她发现门锁着) and her mother out.
- ②Tired and sad (又累又难过), she sat down in front of the house.
- ③Is she really so angry with me that (很生我的气以至于) she doesn't want to take care of me?
- ④Again, the scene of the quarrel (争吵的情景) appeared in her mind.
- ⑤The tears rolled down (滚落了下来).
- ⑥Jenny couldn't help hugging (禁不住抱住) her mother tightly.

(三)句式升级

- ①将(二)中句①升级为含有现在分词作状语的句子
When knocking at the door, she found the door locked and her mother out.

②将(二)中句⑤升级为完全倒装句

Down rolled the tears.

(四)连句成篇

Approaching the doorway, Jenny took a deep breath. When knocking at the door, she found the door locked and her mother out. Tired and sad, she sat down in front of the house. "Where might my mother be?" she wondered. "Is she really so angry with me that she doesn't want to take care of me?" Again, the scene of the quarrel appeared in her mind. She remembered her rudeness to her mother, and she just realised that all the scolding from her mother was because her mother really cared a lot about her. Down rolled the tears.

A gentle touch on her hair called her mind back. She raised her head to see the familiar face and the worried eyes. "You're back! I've been looking for you," came the tired voice. Jenny couldn't help hugging her mother tightly. "I'm sorry and thank you for all you have done for me." She expressed her sincere apology and gratitude to her mother. Then she felt the hug tightened.

五、学以致用

阅读下面的材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

There was a rich couple who was throwing a big new year party at their house. So they went shopping at the market where everything was of high cost and fixed price. They wanted to maintain their high living standards so they didn't mind paying a lot for it. After purchasing everything they needed, they called a porter to carry everything and drop it off at their home. The porter was of an old age, and was not very healthy-looking. His clothes were torn and he looked as if he wasn't even able to meet his daily needs.

They asked the porter about the charges for delivering their goods at their home. The old porter quoted just \$20, a price well below the market rate for delivering goods at the couple's home in his cart. Yet, the couple argued and bargained with the porter and finally settled for \$15. The porter was struggling to make money for every single meal so he needed anything he could earn.

The couple was very happy thinking how well they bargained with the poor porter and paid him \$15 in advance and left after giving the porter their address for delivery. They reached their home and one hour passed, two hours passed, but the porter still hadn't delivered their stuff.

The wife started to get angry at her husband, "I always tell you not to trust such a person but you never listen to me. Such a person is not even able to earn to feed himself for one time in a day, and you handed him everything we purchased for our big party. I am sure instead of delivering at our home, he must have disappeared with everything. We must immediately go back to the market to inquire and file the complaint against him."

They both left towards the market. On their way, near the market, they saw another porter. They stopped him to inquire about the old porter and noticed that he was carrying their stuff in his cart!

注意:续写 150 词左右。

The angry wife asked him, "Where is that old thief? This is our stuff." _____

Upon hearing this, the husband had tears in his eyes and turned to his wife. _____

【参考范文】

The angry wife asked him, "Where is that old thief? This is our stuff." The porter replied, "Madam, please calm down. That poor old man was sick since last month. He wasn't even able to earn enough to have a single meal of the day. He was on the way to deliver your stuff, but he, who was hungry and sick, didn't have the strength to go any further in this heat of the noon. He fell down and he handed me \$15. His last words were, 'I had taken an advance for this delivery, you take this and please deliver it to this address.'"

Upon hearing this, the husband had tears in his eyes and turned to his wife. "He was hungry and poor, but he was an honest man," the husband said. The wife felt quite ashamed that she was angry with her husband's decision. She had no courage to look her husband in the eye. Suddenly it dawned on her that honesty has no class. Respect everyone regardless of their financial and social status. It's always a good deed to give the one who deserves.

课后素养评价(二十)

I. 单句语法填空

- You ought to be ashamed of your foolish behavior in front of so many people.
- I was expecting him at ten, but he didn't turn up.
- The company is fortunate (fortune) to have such highly skilled workers.
- The surroundings (surround) in which a child grows up may have an effect on his/her development.
- Do I need to go through my doctor to get an appointment (appoint)?
- The importance of the town is due to its geographical location (locate).
- Ordinarily (ordinary), I find this job easy, but today I'm having problems.
- I think the company ought to do (do) something about the poor service.
- Surprisingly, he has worked out a new way of solving the problem.
- Nothing more was heard from him so that we began to wonder if he was dead.

II. 完成句子

- The Chinese film, set in the Tang Dynasty, is well received by many foreign film fans.
这部以唐朝为背景的中国电影广受外国影迷的欢迎。
- He drove so fast that the car disappeared in the distance right away.
他开得如此快以至于汽车很快消失在远处。
- We were anxious for the news of your safe arrival.
我们都渴望知晓你安全到达的消息。
- Your account of events does not correspond to/with hers.
你对事情的陈述与她说的不相符。
- The man lost his balance and fell down the stairs, having his legs injured.
男子失去了平衡,从楼梯上摔了下来,弄伤了双腿。

III. 语法填空

My heart is full of love. 1. Recently (recent), I am so grateful for the support and friendship of a very dear friend of 2. mine (my). With his help, I can realise my dream of 3. making (make) a kind acts project.

We live in Johannesburg, South Africa, where, as you all know, poverty (贫穷) and unemployment are huge 4. problems (problem). I have been looking forward to opening a soup kitchen for many years. I want to try my best to help those people in need.

We have created a webpage 5. called (call) Shadows and we usually share our kind acts activities with our friends on it. These days, I am making hearty soup while my friend is handing out blankets to 6. the homeless. There are so many people 7. living (live) in the street, which shocks me a lot.

We are calling on more people to join us. The act of love by giving has touched my heart greatly. Sometimes I'm 8. exhausted (exhaust) at the end of the day, 9. but I still love the journey I'm on. Because 10. of the project, my life becomes so beautiful. I just know what I'm doing now may make a difference to some people's life.

IV. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华,你收到英国笔友 Alex 的来信,他想与你交流一个好朋友应该具备哪些优秀品质。请根据以下要点给他回一封邮件:

- 写信目的;
- 你的观点和理由;
- 询问对方的看法。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 可适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

Dear Alex,

Yours sincerely,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面的材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Many years earlier, my mum knew that she could not send me to college and pay for it. She worked in a retail store and made just enough to pay

the bills and take care of the other children at home. If I wanted to go to college, it was up to me to find out how to get there.

I found that I qualified for some grants because of the size of our family, my mum's income and my SAT scores. There was enough to cover tuition and books, but not enough for room and board. I accepted a job as part of a work-study programme. While not attractive, it was one I could do. I washed dishes in the school cafeteria.

Just when I thought I was going to drop out of my college career, an angel appeared. "I heard that you need some help," he said. "What do you mean?" I asked, trying to figure out which area of my life he meant. "Financially, to stay in school." "Well, I make it okay. I just have trouble working all these hours and finding no time to study." "Well, I think I have a way to help you out."

He went on to explain that his grandparents needed help on the weekend. All that was required of me was cooking meals and helping them get in and out of bed in the morning and evening. The job paid four hundred dollars a month, twice the money I was making washing dishes. Now I would have time to study. I went to meet his grandparents and accepted the job.

My first discovery was his grandmother's great love for music. She spent hours playing her old, off-key piano. One day, she told me I didn't have enough fun in my life and took it upon herself to teach me the art. Grandma was impressed with my ability and encouraged me to continue. Weekends in their house became more than just books and cooking—they were filled with the wonderful sounds of the out-of-tune piano and two very out-of-tune singers.

注意:续写 150 词左右。

When New Year break came, Grandma got a chest cold, and I was afraid to leave her. _____

The envelope was from Grandma. _____

【参考范文】

第一节 应用文写作

Dear Alex,

I'm glad to receive your letter. When it comes to the fine qualities a good friend should have, I'd like to express my opinion.

First of all, a good friend should be honest, which is the most important. Honesty is where a good friendship starts. Secondly, a good friend should respect others, including their space and personal items. What's more, he or she must learn to forgive others. After all, anyone can make mistakes.

Would you like to share your idea about this topic? I'm looking forward to hearing from you.

Yours sincerely,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

When New Year break came, Grandma got a chest cold, and I was afraid to leave her. I hadn't been home since Labour Day, and my mother was anxious to see me. I agreed to come home, but for two weeks instead of four, so I could return to see Grandma and Grandpa. I said my goodbyes, arranged for their temporary care and returned home. As I was loading my car to go back to school, the phone rang. "Grandma died last night. I'm sorry." I hung up the phone feeling like my world had ended. I had lost my friend, and that was far worse than knowing I would have to return to washing dishes. I went back at the end of four weeks, asking to begin the work-study programme again. The financial aid advisor looked at me as if I had lost my mind. I explained my position, then he smiled and slid me an envelope. "This is for you," he said.

The envelope was from Grandma. She had known how sick she was. In the envelope was enough money to pay for the rest of my college year and a request that I take piano lessons in memory of her. Moved to tears, I determined to learn to play the piano by heart and my memory of Grandma motivated me to practise day and night. Now, years later, when I walk by a piano, I smile and think of Grandma.

读后续写技能养成 || 人物描写之对话描写

「技能概述」

1. 对话描写:是指通过直接引用两个或两个以上的人之间的谈话来刻画人物的性格或心理的一种写作手法,它包括单人、双人或多人对话。
2. 续写技巧:在写作对话描写时需要注意:①必须为推动故事情节服务,每段出现一两句即可;②必须能反映人物的心理与情感,刻画人物的性格;③侧重口语化词汇,避开生僻词汇,而且不宜过长;④要有画面感,尽量结合动作描写,明确言说对象。

「范例体悟」

When I opened my eyes at last, it was to a red-and-blue shirt. “You’re awake!” said an unfamiliar voice. It was Rough Lock, and I understood it was he who had saved me. “Thank you, Rough Lock!” I said, tears in my eyes. Kenji stuck his head out from behind Rough Lock and mumbled, “I’m sorry that I played a prank on you. I promise I will never do that again. We’re still friends, aren’t we?” I nodded, forcing a weak smile.

用不同的线标出人物对话,并写下引述词。

人物对话:(在原文中已用不同的线标出)

对话引述词:said; mumbled

「词句储备」

I. 好词积累

(一)引述词:

say, ask, answer, beg(请求), call, cry, shout(大喊), yell(喊叫), explain, apologise, reply(回答), suggest, advise, whisper(小声说), scream(尖叫), utter(说), scold(斥责), sigh(叹息说), think, complain(抱怨), announce(宣布), add(补充说), continue(继续说), repeat(重复道), demand(要求), declare(声明), remark(说), admit(承认), agree, gasp(气喘吁吁地说)等。

(二)在对话中可以加入表示情感、嗓音或情绪等类型的词汇:

① in a pleasant(愉悦的)/firm(坚定的)/rude(粗鲁的)/sad(悲伤的) tone;

② in a high/low/sweet/loud/soft/weak voice
用一个高/低/甜/响亮/柔软/弱的声音;

③ with embarrassment(尴尬地)/excitement(激动地)/anger/fury(愤怒地)等;

④ firmly(坚定地), happily, sadly, desperately(绝望地)等。

II. 佳句背诵

1. (2022·新高考I卷续写) At that moment, David’s classmates approached him and said, “Let’s run together.”
就在这时,大卫的同学走近他说:“我们一起跑吧。”
2. (2022·新高考I卷续写) “Come on, you can do it,” I whispered to him in a soft voice.
“加油,你能做到的。”我轻声对他说。
3. “I will never do that again,” I answered firmly.
“我再也不会那样做了。”我坚定地回答。
4. “I didn’t mean to,” she murmured in a low voice.
“我不是故意的,”她低声道。
5. “How much do we still need to pay for a new truck?” asked my mother.
“我们买一辆新卡车还需要付多少钱?”母亲问。

「技能达标」

I. 完成句子

1. I asked him, “Why not run?”
我问他:“为什么不跑呢?”
2. “What a brave boy!” I sighed and hugged him tightly with teary eyes.
“多么勇敢的孩子啊!”我叹了口气,热泪盈眶地紧紧抱住他。
3. “I would love to,” said Emily in a pleasant tone.
“我很乐意这样做,”埃米莉用一种愉快的语气说道。
4. I ran to him and shouted, “Get up and run!”
我跑向他,喊道:“起来,快跑!”
5. They hugged her and yelled, “Happy Mother’s Day, darling Mummy!”
他们抱着她说道:“亲爱的妈妈,母亲节快乐!”

II. 用人物对话描写完成下面的语段

Years afterwards Hiram learned that what he had thought was a diamond was only a bit of glass.
1. “Did you know it then, Mother?” he asked. (“你那时知道吗,妈妈?”他问。) His mother nodded. “And you never told me.”
2. “It was brighter to me than any real diamond,” she said. (“在我看来,它比任何真正的钻石都要亮,”她说。) “The brightness I saw flashing in it was the unselfish love of my boy.”
Indeed, nothing in the world is more precious than a sincere heart.

第四单元质量评估

(时间:100 分钟 分值:120 分)

I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 37.5 分)

A

Four Popular Children's Books

Que Cosas Dice Mi Abuela

Spanish-speaking parents will love this fun book—which is translated into “the things my grandmother says”—in which a grandmother teaches manners (规矩) to her grandchildren and their friends using traditional Spanish-language sayings. Written in the voice of a little boy talking about his regular day, this book will draw the interest of both adults and kids.

I Like Myself!

Parents won't mind reading the story over and over to their kids because they pass along the message that their kids are perfect just the way they are—no matter their untidy hair, or whether they are fast or slow, their kids will learn about confidence.

Dragons Love Tacos

While books with a deep message are great, sometimes you and your child just want to read something silly to get the laughs rolling. *The New York Times* bestseller, *Dragons Love Tacos* is a great read for kids and parents as it talks about how much dragons really love tacos, but when they eat something spicy (辛辣的) you had better watch out! The book has more words than some of the other picks on our list, so this might be fit for preschoolers and up.

Ten Little Fingers and Ten Little Toes

As everyone knows, nothing is sweeter than small baby fingers and cute baby toes. And here, from two of the most gifted picture books, readers could enjoy a different joyful world and also bring the happy feelings to everyone, everywhere, all over the world!

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍的是四本受欢迎的儿童读物的相关信息。

1. Who will choose the first book?

- A. Parents who want to make their children laugh.
- B. Parents who want their children to become polite.
- C. Parents who want their children to become more confident.
- D. Parents who want their children to read special stories.

B 细节理解题。根据 *Que Cosas Dice Mi Abuela* 部分中的“Spanish-speaking parents will love this fun book—which is translated into ‘the things my grandmother says’—in which a grandmother teaches manners (规矩) to her grandchildren and their friends using traditional Spanish-language sayings.”可知,希望孩子变得有礼貌的父母会选择第一本书。故选 B。

2. Why will parents like to read *I Like Myself!* to kids many times?

- A. Because it has more words than other books.
- B. Because it encourages kids to be confident.
- C. Because there are some beautiful pictures in it.
- D. Because it contains many funny games for kids.

B 推理判断题。根据 *I Like Myself!* 部分中的“because they pass along the message that their kids are perfect just the way they are—no matter their untidy hair, or whether they are fast or slow, their kids will learn about confidence”可知,父母喜欢多次给孩子读 *I Like Myself!* 是因为它鼓励孩子们变得自信。故选 B。

3. Which of the books will Tom choose if he's interested in animals?

- A. *Que Cosas Dice Mi Abuela*
- B. *I Like Myself!*
- C. *Dragons Love Tacos*
- D. *Ten Little Fingers and Ten Little Toes*

C 推理判断题。根据 *Dragons Love Tacos* 部分中的“*Dragons Love Tacos* is a great read for kids and parents as it talks about how much dragons really love tacos, but when they eat something spicy (辛辣的) you had better watch out”可知, *Dragons Love Tacos* 这本书讲了关于龙的事情, 因此如果汤姆对动物感兴趣, 他会选这本书。故选 C。

B

As I was walking home, a boy seemed to be singing a song in a very low voice, walking in front of me and carrying some of the same high school books I had with me. I caught up with him, and said “Hello”. I could tell he was startled, and dropped one of his books. I picked it up and as I handed it to him, he said “Thank you.” in a strange way, like with a strong accent.

We soon began walking together and talking. It turned out he was in my science class, and I didn't even know it!

His name is Ahmad, and his family had just moved here this school year. He invited me into his house, and his family treated me like a special guest, which made me feel very welcome. He said hospitality (好客) is very basic to his culture, and strangers were always treated very kindly. His mum brought out some great food, and offered me some tea. Ahmad's father and two sisters wanted to hear all about me and my family, and my schooling.

Ahmad's whole family had to leave their lifelong home because war had broken out, and it wasn't safe there anymore. They left with only what they could carry. His family was happy to feel safe, and they got used to American culture quickly. They seemed pleased that Ahmad had brought a friend home to meet them.

And as my friendship with Ahmad has continued, I now realise that the world is so much bigger than I thought! I also realise that your friends don't have to be just like you. Differences make the world go round.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。作者偶遇了来自另一个国家的男孩 Ahmad, 尽管他们之间有着很大的文化差异, 他们还是成了很好的朋友。

4. What does the underlined word “startled” in Paragraph 1 mean?

- A. Excited. B. Moved.
C. Surprised. D. Interested.

C 词义猜测题。根据画线词后的“and dropped one of his books”可知, 男孩不认识作者, 对作者的突然问候感到吃惊, 以至于掉了一本手里的书, 故画线词意为“吃惊的”。故选 C。

5. Why was the writer treated like a special guest by Ahmad's family?

- A. They liked strangers who came to their home for help.
B. They wanted to know more information about the writer.
C. Strangers were always treated very kindly in their culture.
D. The writer was an American and knew much about their culture.

C 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“He said hospitality (好客) is very basic to his culture, and strangers were always treated very kindly.”可知, 在 Ahmad 他们的文化中, 好客是一种基本的礼节, 他们总是善待陌生人。故选 C。

6. Where does the writer probably come from?

- A. Canada. B. America.
C. China. D. Australia.

B 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“and they got used to American culture quickly”可知, 这家人很快适应了美国文化, 因此作者可能来自美国。故选 B。

7. What can we learn from the passage?

- A. People from different countries can be good friends.
B. Friends need different cultures and different accents.
C. Your friends should have a lot of things the same with you.
D. You can't make friends with people from other countries.

A 推理判断题。本文讲述了作者偶遇了来自另一个国家的男孩 Ahmad, 尽管他们之间有着很大的文化差异, 他们还是成了很好的朋友。由此可推断出, 来自不同国家的人可以成为好朋友。故选 A。

C

A friend is better than money. A friend is worse than poison in some cases. The two sentences above have opposite meanings and seem to be unreasonable, but they can be explained as follows: the first refers to all good friends who drive us towards good while the second refers to all bad ones who lead us into bad ways.

My ideal (理想的) friend is of course a good friend whose goodness is shown below—he has no bad habits, such as smoking and drinking. He lives in frugality (节俭). He studies hard so as not to waste his golden time. At home he honours his parents and loves his brothers; at school he respects his teachers and shares the feelings with his classmates. He treats those truly who are true to him. In a word, he has all the good characteristics (特征) that I don't have. I can follow him as a model. With his help I can be free from all difficulties.

Indeed, if I have such a person as my friend, I shall never fear difficulty and I shall never know the existence of the word “failure”.

【语篇解读】好朋友比金钱更重要,而坏朋友却比毒药更糟糕。那么,我们理想的朋友应该是什么样的呢?在本篇文章中作者给出了自己的观点。

8. This passage mainly tells us _____.

- A. how to make friends with others
- B. how to help friends
- C. what kind of person the writer's friend is
- D. what kind of person we should make friends with

D 主旨大意题。通读全文可知,本文主要介绍的是我们应该与什么样的人做朋友。故选 D。

9. According to the writer, an ideal friend refers to _____.

- A. a friend without bad habits
- B. a famous man
- C. a perfect man
- D. a respectable man

C 细节理解题。根据第二段的内容可知,作者认为理想的朋友指的是没有坏习惯,生活节俭,学习用功,在家尊敬父母兄长,在校尊敬老师,不浪费黄金时间的人。故选 C。

10. From the second paragraph, we can infer the writer is sure that _____.

- A. friendship means a great deal to him
- B. nothing can be done without friends
- C. he who does not smoke or drink must be a good friend
- D. good friends should always help each other

A 推理判断题。根据第二段的内容可知,作者认为理想中的朋友应该有许多作者没有的好品质,作者可以向他学习,在他的帮助下作者可以免受所有的困难,因此对作者来说,友谊意味着很多。故选 A。

11. What can we learn from the passage?

- A. The writer and his ideal friends have a lot to learn from each other.
- B. The writer has a lot to learn from his ideal friend.
- C. The writer's ideal friend has a lot to learn from him.
- D. The writer has only a little to learn from his ideal friend.

B 推理判断题。根据第二段倒数第二句“I can follow him as a model.”可知,作者有许多地方要向理想中的朋友学习。故选 B。

D

Who needs friends? According to most psychologists (心理学家), we all do, especially nowadays when so many other aspects of modern life are changing. It seems that having friends keeps us both healthy and happy.

The number of TV series about groups of friends shows just how important friendship is to us. Psychologist Dorothy Rowe says that many of us now turn to our friends, instead of our families, for advice, comfort and security (安全). One woman named Rebecca she interviewed even told her that if she had got to choose between her husband and her friend, she would choose her friend.

Since our friends mean so much to us, it is not surprising that the happiest marriages are also friendships. “Once the romantic stage of a relationship has passed, it is friendship that holds people together,” says Rowe. If the couple do not

make some change, they will either get tired of each other and break up or stay together and seek friendship with others.

But is friendship equally important to women and men? According to author Rhonda Pritchard, women are more likely than men to have close friends. "You tell a friend things that you'd never tell a partner," says one woman she interviewed. For men, friendship is usually based on doing things together rather than the private conversations that are typical of women friends. Men share time and activities like building a fence or a business, running, riding a bicycle, fishing or watching football, but they don't often share their feelings.

Although many women find their relationships with a husband or boyfriend are not enough, many men say that their partner is their best friend. Even women who are very happily married are likely to become very unhappy without a close friend and can even find the breakup of a close friend as painful as the end of a marriage.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了朋友在我们生活中的重要性以及男性和女性对待友谊的不同态度。

12. What did Rebecca think about friendship?

- A. Families are reliable forever.
- B. Her friend means more to her than her husband.
- C. One needn't have too many friends.
- D. Friends are as important as families.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“One woman named Rebecca she interviewed even told her that if she had got to choose between her husband and her friend, she would choose her friend.”可知,Rebecca 认为朋友对于她来说比丈夫重要。故选 B。

13. Why do some couples look for friends outside their relationships?

- A. Because they are encouraged by their partners.
- B. Because they are not fairly treated by their partners.
- C. Because they don't get what they need from their partners.
- D. Because they think their friends are more romantic.

C 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“If the couple do not make some change, they will either get tired of each other and break up or stay together and seek friendship with others.”可推知,一些夫妻在他们的关系之外寻找朋友,是因为他们没有从伴侣那里得到他们需要的东西。故选 C。

14. What is the main difference between men's and women's friendships?

- A. Women often do things together.
- B. Women often talk about business with friends.
- C. Men seldom talk about their feelings.
- D. Men often talk to their friends about work and family.

C 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“For men, friendship is usually based on doing things together rather than the private conversations that are typical of women friends. Men share time and activities like building a fence or a business, running, riding a bicycle, fishing or watching football, but they don't often share their feelings.”可知,男性与女性的友情的区别在于男性不会像女性那样和朋友分享他们的情感。故选 C。

15. When a friendship ends, some women may _____.

- A. feel as upset as when a marriage ends
- B. share feelings with their partners
- C. treat their partners as friends
- D. turn to their husband for comfort

A 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“Even women who are very happily married are likely to become very unhappy without a close friend and can even find the breakup of a close friend as painful as the end of a marriage.”可知,当一段亲密的友谊结束时,有些女性会感觉就像婚姻结束一样难过。故选 A。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

What is friendship? The answers may be different. 16. We cannot live without friendship just as we cannot live without air or water. Friendship gives us a feeling of safety and warmth, and friendship encourages us to go ahead all the time.

17. When we feel happy, we can share our happiness with friends. When we feel down, friends

享了这件衬衫,随着时间的推移(went by),“我们”分享了更多的东西。

24. A. victories B. belongings
C. scholarships D. stories

D 根据下文内容可知,“我”了解了更多关于大卫的事情,因此“我们”分享了更多的故事(stories)。

25. A. happened B. refused
C. struggled D. failed

C 根据后文“because without even one of them, he would have to 26 and back on the farm”可知,没有奖学金,大卫就要退学,回到农场。因此大卫要努力保住奖学金。struggle to do sth 意为“努力做某事”。

26. A. turn out B. stand out
C. figure out D. drop out

D 根据后文“back on the farm”可知,没有奖学金,大卫就要辍学(drop out),回到农场。

27. A. interview B. discussion
C. conversation D. debate

C 根据上文“At times David also talked about his father.”可知,在寝室里,大卫有时和作者谈到他的父亲,对话(conversation)通常在深夜。

28. A. failure B. depression
C. poverty D. illness

D 根据下文“disease does not understand about...”可知,大卫的父亲生病了(illness)。

29. A. connection B. distance
C. difference D. conflict

A 但是疾病不理解父子之间的亲情关系(connection),也不关心这种关系。

30. A. first B. last
C. next D. second

B 根据前文“Time passed and we had to say goodbye to each other.”和“we eventually departed (分开)”可知,作者和大卫毕业要分别了,因此这是作者最后一次(last)去宿舍。

31. A. touched B. pulled
C. removed D. folded

C 根据下文语境可知,作者看到了包裹里的东西(蓝色棉布衬衫和卡片上的字),说明作者去除了(removed)包装纸。

32. A. note B. book
C. gift D. notebook

A 根据下文“I put aside the note”可知,上面有一张纸条(note)。

33. A. guidance B. description
C. friendship D. impression

C 根据前文内容和后文中的“a friend”可知,大卫对“我们”之间的友谊(friendship)感激不尽。

34. A. less than B. other than
C. more than D. rather than

C 根据后文“Thank you for listening. Thanks for everything.”可知,对大卫而言,作者不仅仅是(more than)朋友。

35. A. nervous B. grateful
C. happy D. excited

B 根据后文“tears dropping on the shirt”可知,看到大卫的留言,“我”感到很激动,所以流下了感激的(grateful)泪水。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

A *hutong* is an ancient city street typical in Beijing. **36.** Surrounding (surround) the Forbidden City, many were built during the Yuan, Ming and Qing **37.** dynasties (dynasty). In order to establish the strongest power, emperors planned the city and arranged the residential areas. **38.** The centre of the city Beijing was the royal palace—the Forbidden City.

At the end of the Qing Dynasty, after **39.** closed (close) China came under the influence from abroad, many old *hutongs* lost **40.** their (they) former neat arrangement.

After the founding of the People's Republic of China in 1949, *hutong* conditions **41.** were improved (improve). But in recent years, the houses in many *hutongs* have been pulled **42.** down and replaced by modern buildings. And the *hutong* today is fading into the shade for **43.** both tourists and local people.

However, in the urban district of Beijing houses along *hutongs* still occupy one **44.** third (three) of the total area, providing housing for half population, so many *hutongs* **45.** have survived (survive). In this respect, we see the old in the new in Beijing as an ancient yet modern city.

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

请以“Friends and Friendship”为题,写一篇 80 词左右的英语短文,内容需包含下列要点:

1. 友谊在学习和生活中的作用;
2. 朋友之间应该怎样相处;
3. 恰当的结尾。

注意:可适当发挥,使文章通顺流畅。

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读下面的材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

The Present

They say that blood is thicker than water, and that our relatives are more important to us than others. Everyone was so kind to the old lady on her birthday. Surely her daughter would make an even bigger effort to please her.

It was the old lady's birthday.

She got up early to be ready for the post. From the second floor flat she could see the postman when he came down the street, and the little boy from the ground floor brought up her letters or parcels on the rare occasions when anything came.

Today she was sure there would be something. Myra wouldn't forget her mother's birthday, even if she seldom wrote at other times. Of course Myra was busy. Her husband had been made Mayor (市长), and Myra herself had got a medal for her work for the aged.

The old lady was eighty today. She had put on her best dress. Perhaps—perhaps Myra might come. After all, eighty was a special birthday. Even if Myra did not come, she would send a present. The old lady was sure of that. Two spots of colour brightened her cheeks. She was excited like a child. She would enjoy her day.

Yesterday Mrs Morrison had given the flat an extra clean, and today she had brought a card and a bunch of marigolds when she came to do the breakfast. Mrs Grant downstairs had made a cake, and in the afternoon she was going down there to tea. The little boy, Johnnie, had been up with a packet of mints, and said he wouldn't go out to play until the post had come. "I guess you'll get lots and lots of presents," he said. "I did last week when I was six."

What would she like? A pair of slippers perhaps. Or a new cardigan (羊毛衫). A cardigan would be lovely. Blue's such a pretty colour. Jim had

always liked her in blue. Or a table lamp. Or a book, a travel book, with pictures, or a little clock, with clear black numbers. So many lovely things.

注意:续写 150 词左右。

She stood by the window, watching. _____

Almost reluctantly she tore the envelope open.

【参考范文】

第一节 应用文写作

Friends and Friendship

As we all know, everybody needs friends. Friendship plays an important part in our studies, work and everyday life.

As friends we should trust each other and share joys and sorrows together. Once our friends are in trouble, we should try our best to help them out. Just as the famous saying goes, "A friend in need is a friend indeed."

Friendship also needs to be taken good care of. Once we become friends, we should care about and help each other. Only in this way can our friendship last long.

第二节 读后续写

She stood by the window, watching. The postman came as usual. The old lady's heart beat wildly. How she wished for a special present from her daughter! Then came the knock. There was Johnnie, with several envelopes. No parcels at all! Her heart sank! She scanned the envelopes swiftly, most of which were birthday cards from her lifelong friends. Then she picked out the one from her daughter.

Almost reluctantly she tore the envelope open. "Dear Mum, sorry to have let you down so many times whether on your birthdays or other occasions. I got a medal for my work for the aged, but I don't think I deserve it because so long I've neglected the most lovely aged person in my life, who needs my care and company. I know it's time to..." Reading the letter, the old lady couldn't help but sob. Tears ran down her cheeks and dropped onto the letter. Just at that moment, familiar steps drew closer and without doubt, the old lady knew that her most cherished present was finally coming.

Unit 5

Into the wild

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点；
2. 能够通过略读锁定关键词,获取课文大意,根据课文内容准确判断文章出处；
3. 能够通过精读,迅速找出主要细节在文中的位置,厘清文中的因果逻辑关系；
4. 初步了解日常生活中人与动物的不同关系,并能基于自身的经历,简单描述、谈论、评价人与动物之间的关系。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇和表达的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇和表达

1. charity *n.* 慈善机构,慈善团体
2. annual *adj.* 一年一度的,每年的
3. seek *v.* 寻找,寻求
4. professor *n.* 教授
5. measure *v.* 量,测量
6. position *n.* 位置
7. determine *v.* 测定,确定
8. eventually *adv.* 终于,最终
9. solution *n.* 解决,解决方法
10. amazing *adj.* 惊人的,了不起的
11. per cent *n.* 百分比
12. destroy *v.* 破坏,毁掉
13. creature *n.* 生物,动物
14. survive *v.* 活下来,幸存

15. effect *n.* 影响,结果
16. manage to do 设法做成
17. the solution to ……的解决方法
18. cut down 砍倒(树木);削减,减少使用

(二)阅读词汇和表达

1. monarch *n.* 君主,国王
2. Atlantic *adj.* 大西洋的
3. whale *n.* 鲸
4. migration *n.* 迁徙
5. migrate *v.* 移栖,迁徙
6. mystery *n.* 难以理解的事物,谜
7. crash *v.* 暴跌
8. chemical *n.* 化学品
9. caterpillar *n.* 毛虫(蝴蝶等昆虫的幼虫)
10. monarch butterfly 黑脉金斑蝶
11. flow chart 流程图,作业图
12. human activity 人类活动

「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 1 (Para. 1)	Definition of migration and animals' purpose of migration	The 1. <u>annual</u> movement of animals from one place to another at certain times of the year is called migration. They migrate to find 2. <u>food</u> , seek a partner, or in search of warmer weather.

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 2 (Para. 2)	Monarch butterflies' migration	Every autumn, monarch butterflies manage to travel around 4,000 kilometres 3. south and find their way to California or Mexico.
Part 3 (Para. 3)	How monarch butterflies manage to find their way during migration	The monarch is able to tell the time of day, using its 4. eyes to measure the position of the sun.
		Two pieces of information—the time of day and the point where the 5. sun is in the sky—allow the butterfly to determine the way to go.
Part 4 (Para. 4)	The present situation of monarch butterflies	Its population has crashed by as much as 90 6. per cent in the last few years.
		7. Human activity is the main reason why the number of monarch butterflies is falling. People are destroying the natural environment by 8. cutting down trees and using 9. chemicals that kill the plants that monarch caterpillars eat.
Part 5 (Para. 5)	Measures have been taken to protect monarch butterflies	People have been working together to record its migration and make sure that there are enough plants for it to 10. feed on .

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- Why does the monarch butterfly migrate every autumn?
 - To find a partner.
 - To spend the winter.
 - To tell the time of day.
 - To measure the position of the sun.
- What does the word “crashed” in Paragraph 4 mean?
 - Succeeded.
 - Failed.
 - Increased.
 - Dropped.
- Which section is this article likely to appear in the newspaper?
 - In sports.
 - In health.
 - In hobby.
 - In wildlife.
- How can we help the monarch butterflies?
 - We can cut down more trees and using chemicals.
 - We can work as volunteers to ensure their food.
 - We should know more beautiful animals and plants.
 - We should keep their place in our mind for a long time.

答案: 1~4 BDDB

II. 课文语法填空

Every autumn, millions of the North American monarch butterflies manage **1. to travel** (travel) around 4,000 kilometres south and find their way to places **2. where** they will spend the winter.

A team of scientists **3. led** (lead) by Professor Eli Shlizerman at the University of Washington has discovered that the monarch is able to tell the time of day and then uses **4. its** (it) eyes to measure the position of the sun. These two **5. pieces** (piece) of information allow the butterfly to determine which way it needs to go.

The monarch's population **6. has crashed** (crash) by as much as ninety per cent in the last few years. **7. Sadly** (sad), human activity is the main reason why **8. the** number of the North American monarch butterflies is falling.

The research on the monarch's behavior has however led **9. to** a greater awareness of this creature. The more we know about this lovely creature, the **10. greater** (great) the chance it will survive.

III. 阅读升华

1. What animals do you know are on the edge of extinction? And why?

Pandas, Yangtze River Dolphins, South China Tigers and so on. Because of natural factors and human activity. But the latter is the main reason.

2. What can we do in our daily life in protecting endangered animals?

We should organise more activities or attend more activities to attract people's attention to them. Only when all the people raise the awareness can animals be protected.

课后素养评价(二十一)

I. 阅读理解

The beautiful monarch butterfly is facing an unprecedented (前所未有的) decline and Utah State University (USU) wants to make sure that doesn't happen.

To help the struggling butterfly, USU students have been capturing and tagging (给……贴标签) monarch butterflies in the Uintah Basin.

Tagging butterflies will allow researchers to know their migration path and protect their feeding grounds. Every year, monarch butterflies start “3,000-mile migration, travelling south to Mexico each fall and back up Canada in the spring”, according to the National Wildlife Federation (NWF).

Because of habitat loss and increased pesticide (杀虫剂) use, monarch butterflies have experienced a population decline upwards of 90%, according to NWF.

“Monarch butterflies are facing a large historical decline over the last 40 years,” says USU senior Carson Liesik, a student on the project. “The population, as of the beginning of 2020, was about 30,000 monarchs in the Western United States, which is about a 99% drop as compared to information from the 1980s. We are hoping to learn how to help the monarch butterfly population recover from its historical decline. This project is an important step.”

When tagging the butterflies, students record information about each one including its wing condition and location of discovery. Then students map the migration path as well as habitat use and activity. They tag each butterfly with unique number so that if it is recaptured at a later date, they can know the

growth stage. With the collected information, students get an idea of where these monarch butterflies are and how they are using the resources around them.

Researchers say the public can help protect the monarch butterfly population, too. “The best way is by growing milkweed plants wherever you may have space. Milkweed is the main food source that monarch butterflies depend on. If you plant milkweed in your yard, you might be lucky enough to see monarchs stop and breed (繁殖),” says the Utah Division of Wildlife Resources (DWR).

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要讲的是在过去的四十年里,黑脉金斑蝶面临着巨大的历史下降,所以为了帮助处于困境中的蝴蝶,犹他州立大学的学生们一直在尤因塔盆地捕捉和标记黑脉金斑蝶。

- Why do the students mark monarch butterflies?
 - To study their migration path.
 - To research their social behavior.
 - To find the difference in their feeding habits.
 - To know the number of them in both Mexico and Canada.

A 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“Tagging butterflies will allow researchers to know their migration path and protect their feeding grounds.”可知,学生给黑脉金斑蝶作标记是为了研究它们的迁徙路线。故选A。
- What does Liesik want to tell us about monarch butterflies in Paragraph 5?
 - They were first discovered in the 1980s.
 - They are facing serious survival problems.
 - They have been well protected since 2020.
 - They changed the way researchers think about butterflies.

B 推理判断题。根据第五段中的“‘Monarch butterflies are facing a large historical decline over the last 40 years,’ says USU senior Carson Liesik, a student on the project. ‘The population, as of the beginning of 2020, was about 30,000 monarchs in the Western United States, which is about a 99% drop as compared to information from the 1980s.’”可知,在过去的四十年里黑脉金斑蝶数量严重下降,所以 Carson Liesik 想要告诉我们的是黑脉金斑蝶正面临着严重的生存问题。故选 B。

3. What is Paragraph 6 mainly about?

- A. The results of the project.
- B. The importance of the project.
- C. How USU supports the project.
- D. How the students carry out the project.

D 段落大意题。根据第六段的内容可知,该段主要讲的是学生们是如何实施该项目的。故选 D。

4. How can the public best protect monarch butterflies according to DWR?

- A. By stopping the use of farm chemicals.
- B. By making their yards clean and open.
- C. By planting milkweed in their yards.
- D. By raising money for NWF.

C 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“‘The best way is by growing milkweed plants wherever you may have space. Milkweed is the main food source that monarch butterflies depend on. If you plant milkweed in your yard, you might be lucky enough to see monarchs stop and breed (繁殖),’ says the Utah Division of Wildlife Resources (DWR).”可知,因为马利筋是黑脉金斑蝶的主要食物来源,所以在 DWR 看来公众可以通过种植马利筋来保护黑脉金斑蝶。故选 C。

II. 七选五

Have you ever wondered how the trainers at Sea World get the 19,000-pound whale to jump 22 feet out of water and perform tricks? They get that whale to go over a rope farther out of the water than most of us can imagine. 1.

So how do the trainers at Sea World do it? The first thing they do is reinforce (强化) the behavior that they want repeated—in this case, to get the whale to go over the rope. 2, in a position where the whale can't help but do what's expected of

it. Every time the whale goes over the rope, it's given positive reinforcement and gets fed with fish. But what will happen when the whale goes under the rope? Nothing—no criticism, no warning and no feedback. 3.

Positive reinforcement is the key of that simple principle that produces such splendid results. And as the whale begins to go over the rope more often than under, the trainers begin to raise the rope. It must be raised slowly enough so that the whale doesn't starve.

4. Make a big deal out of the good and little stuff that we want consistently. Secondly, under-criticise. People know they need help when they mess up. 5, people will not forget the event and usually will not repeat it.

So we need to set up the circumstances so that people can't fail. Over-celebrate, under-criticise... and know how far to raise the rope.

- A. This is a great challenge
- B. And the whale stays right where it is
- C. If we figure out a way to motivate the whale
- D. They start with the rope below the surface of the water
- E. If we under-criticise, punish and discipline less than expected
- F. Whales are taught that their negative behavior won't be acknowledged
- G. The simple lesson to be learned from the whale trainers is to over-celebrate

答案:1~5 ADFGE

【微点写作】描写一种动物

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. We should raise the public awareness of protecting the wildlife.
我们应该唤起大众对于野生动植物的保护意识。
2. It's widely believed that animals are our friends.
人们普遍认为动物是我们的朋友。
3. Its aim was to protect the natural habitat of wild animals.
它的目的是保护野生动物的自然栖息地。

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas

Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点；
2. 了解黑脉金斑蝶迁徙的背景、目的和方式，了解人类行为对其生存的影响，加深对课文和单元主题的认识。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中**黑体**单词的汉语意思

1. The **charity** aims to provide assistance to people in need. 慈善机构, 慈善团体
2. They **sought** for a place to shelter from the rain, but in vain. 寻找, 寻求
3. I've found our **position** on the map if you want to see where we are. 位置
4. The first living **creature** sent into space was a dog named Laika. 生物, 动物
5. **Whales** are one of the biggest animals in the world. 鲸
6. Most college **professors** agree the kind of exam they choose largely depends on the subject. 教授
7. Many companies suffer great loss, because the stock market **crashed**. 暴跌
8. According to the study, fifty **per cent** of road accidents result in head injuries. 百分比

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>migrate</u> <i>v.</i> 移栖, 迁徙	<u>migration</u> <i>n.</i> 迁徙
	<u>migrant</u> <i>n.</i> 移民
<u>determine</u> <i>v.</i> 测定, 确定	<u>determined</u> <i>adj.</i> 坚决的, 下定决心的
	<u>determination</u> <i>n.</i> 决心; (正式) 决定, 确定
<u>solution</u> <i>n.</i> 解决, 解决方法	<u>solve</u> <i>v.</i> 解决, 处理
<u>mystery</u> <i>n.</i> 难以理解的事物, 谜	<u>mysterious</u> <i>adj.</i> 神秘的, 不易解释的
<u>amazing</u> <i>adj.</i> 惊人的, 了不起的	<u>amaze</u> <i>v.</i> 使吃惊
	<u>amazed</u> <i>adj.</i> 吃惊的, 惊讶的
	<u>amazement</u> <i>n.</i> 惊奇; 惊诧

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>destroy</u> <i>v.</i> 破坏, 毁掉	<u>destroyer</u> <i>n.</i> 破坏者; 驱逐舰
<u>survive</u> <i>v.</i> 活下来, 幸存	<u>survival</u> <i>n.</i> 幸存
	<u>survivor</u> <i>n.</i> 幸存者
<u>effect</u> <i>n.</i> 影响, 结果	<u>effective</u> <i>adj.</i> 有效的; 实际的
<u>annual</u> <i>adj.</i> 一年一度的, 每年的	<u>annually</u> <i>adv.</i> 一年一度地, 每年地
<u>eventually</u> <i>adv.</i> 终于, 最终	<u>eventual</u> <i>adj.</i> 最终的, 最后的
<u>measure</u> <i>v.</i> 量, 测量	<u>measurement</u> <i>n.</i> 测量, 计量, 衡量
<u>chemical</u> <i>n.</i> 化学品	<u>chemistry</u> <i>n.</i> 化学; 化学组成
	<u>chemist</u> <i>n.</i> 化学家; 药剂师; 药房

III. 补全短语

1. interact with 与……接触; 与……互动; 与……相互作用
2. in search of 寻找, 寻求
3. millions of 数以百万的
4. manage to do sth 设法做成某事
5. the solution to ……的解决方法
6. be in trouble 处于困境; 惹了麻烦
7. in the last few years 在最近几年里
8. the number of ……的数量
9. cut down 砍倒(树木); 削减, 减少使用
10. lead to 导致, 带来
11. make sure 确保
12. feed on 以……为食

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 不定式作目的状语

They migrate to find food, seek a partner, or in search of warmer weather.

它们为了觅食、寻找伴侣或温暖的环境而迁徙。

2. 句型公式:过去分词(短语)作定语

A team of scientists led by Professor Eli Shlizerman at the University of Washington has now found the answer.

一支由伊莱·史利泽曼教授领导的来自华盛顿大学的科学家团队现已找到了答案。

3. 句型公式:the+比较级..., the+比较级...

The more we know about this lovely creature, the greater the chance it will survive and keep its place in the natural world for a long time to come. 我们对这种迷人的生物了解越多,它们在自然界中得以长久生存并保持其位置的可能性就越大。

任务型课堂

1. amazing adj. 惊人的,了不起的

(教材原文)The solution to the mystery of the monarch's **amazing** ability comes at a time when it is in serious trouble.

黑脉金斑蝶这一惊人能力的奥秘被揭开时,这一生物正处于水深火热的生存状态中。

一感 读句子感悟用法

It **amazed** me that you would believe those lies.

你会相信那些谎话使我很惊讶。

I **was amazed at/by** his rapid progress in English.

他的英语进步迅速,令我大为惊讶。

I **was amazed to see** how much she had changed.

看到她巨大的变化我感到惊讶。

Much to my amazement, he has never heard of the famous writer.

令我非常惊讶的是,他没有听说过这位著名的作家。

He looked at me **in amazement**, and it seemed that he hadn't recognised me.

他惊愕地看着我,好像没有认出我来似的。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) _____ v. 使吃惊
	(2)amazed adj. 感到惊奇的,吃惊的 be amazed _____ 对……感到惊奇 be amazed _____ sth 对做某事感到惊奇
	(3)amazement n. 惊讶 (much) _____ one's amazement 令某人(非常)惊讶的是 in amazement 惊讶地,惊愕地
	探究结论 (1)amaze (2)at/by; to do (3)to

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

① We invite you to join us on an amazing (amaze) journey of language learning.

② Much to my amazement (amaze), he has made rapid progress in English with the help of his teacher.

③ Hearing my words, the girl looked at me in amazement.

④ I was amazed to hear (hear) that Chris had won first prize.

2. survive v. 活下来,幸存;幸免于……,从……中艰难度过

(教材原文)The more we know about this lovely creature, the greater the chance it will **survive** and keep its place in the natural world for a long time to come.

我们对这种迷人的生物了解越多,它们在自然界中得以长久生存并保持其位置的可能性就越大。

一感 读句子感悟用法

How does the family **survive on** such a small monthly wage?

这个家庭是如何靠这么低的月工资生存的呢?

On average, the non-smokers **survive** smokers **by** 10 years.

平均来说,不吸烟者会比吸烟者多活十年。

As one of the few **survivors** in the ship crash, the little girl was amazed at the **survival** of herself.

作为船难中为数不多的幸存者之一,这个小女孩惊叹自己能幸存下来。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)survive _____ 依靠……生活 survive sb (by... years) 比……多活(……年)
	(2) _____ n. 幸存者
	(3) _____ n. 幸存
探究结论	(1)on (2)survivor (3)survival

名师点拨

survive 作动词时,还有“幸免于……;从……中逃生;比……活(或存在)的时间长”之意。survive 表示“幸存”时,为及物动词,可直接跟疾病、灾难、事故/危机等名词;表示“比某人长命”时,常以人作宾语。

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

- ① Workers built shelters for survivors (survive) after the earthquake.
 ② Of the six people injured in the crash, only two survived (survive).
 ③ It's reported that their chances of survival (survive) were small in this air disaster.
 ④ I don't know how you all manage to survive on your husband's salary.

3. effect n. 影响, 结果

(教材原文) Then use the sentences to complete the “cause-effect” flow charts.

然后用句子完成“因果”流程图。

一感 读句子感悟用法

Every word from the parents will **have an effect on/upon** the child.

父母的每句话都将对孩子产生影响。

The suggestions were adopted and **brought/put into effect**.

这些建议得到了采纳,并被付诸实施。

This regulation will **come into effect** early next year.

本章程将于明年早期生效。

In effect, that should kill two birds with one stone.

事实上,那样会有一石二鸟的效果。

One of the most **effective** ways to reduce stress is to talk about feelings with someone you trust.

减轻压力最有效的方法之一就是与你信任的人聊聊感受。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) have an effect _____ ... 对……有影响 bring/put... _____ effect 使生效; 实行, 实施 come into effect 生效, 开始实施 _____ effect 有效; 在实施中; 实际上 side effects 副作用 (2) _____ <i>adj.</i> 有效的
探究结论	(1) on/upon; into; in (2) effective

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

- ① Since the new management system was put into effect, the production of this factory has increased greatly.
 ② Best of all, humour raises your energy, and that can have an effect on/upon everything you do at school, at work, or in your personal life.

③ Getting vaccinated (接种疫苗) is the most effective (effect) way to protect you from the virus.

④ The drug was withdrawn from sale after a number of people suffered serious side effects (effect).

4. “the+比较级..., the+比较级...”句型

(教材原文) **The more** we know about this lovely creature, **the greater** the chance it will survive and keep its place in the natural world for a long time to come.

我们对这种迷人的生物了解越多,它们在自然界中得以长久生存并保持其位置的可能性就越大。

[句式分析]本句中 The more..., the greater...为“the+比较级..., the+比较级...”句型。

一感 读句子感悟用法

The more careful you are, **the fewer mistakes** you'll make.

你越仔细,犯的错误就越少。

The taller the tree (is), **the stronger** the wind (is).

树大招风。

The more volunteers there are, **the fewer difficulties** residents will face.

志愿者越多,居民面临的困难就越少。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) “the+比较级..., the+比较级...”句型,意为“_____”,表示后者随着前者的变化而变化; (2) 前一个“the+比较级...”通常相当于比较状语从句或条件状语从句(在表示将来意义时,常用一般现在时表示将来),后一个“the+比较级...”通常相当于主句; (3) 在通常情况下,如果主、从句中的谓语动词是系动词 be,而且主语不是代词的话,be 动词可以省略。
探究结论	(1) 越……,越……

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

- ① The harder (hard) you study, the more progress you'll make.
 ② The more you know, the more you will realise (realise) how little you know.
 ③ The more we know each other, the better (well) we understand each other.
 ④ It becomes warmer (warm) and warmer when spring comes.

课后素养评价(二十二)

I. 单词拼写

1. He said that these measures (措施) were aimed at helping the poor.
2. The manager will have an interview with those who want to get the position (职位).
3. I determined (决心) to break myself of these bad habits so that I could keep fit.
4. Attempts to find a solution (解决方法) have failed.
5. Most buildings in my hometown were destroyed (破坏) by the sudden earthquake last year.
6. To everyone's surprise, he survived (从……中幸存) the earthquake.
7. On Chinese New Year's Eve, people usually get together to watch the annual (一年一度的) Spring Festival Gala on TV.
8. The most amazing (惊人的) thing about nature is its infinite (无穷无尽的) variety.
9. I think it's time we sought (寻求) some advice from our lawyer on this matter.
10. What the professor said in his speech had a great effect (影响) on the students present.

II. 短语填空

cut down; lead to; feed on; in trouble;
make sure; in search of

1. Cut down the article so as to make it fit the space available on the paper.
2. When you are in trouble, they will help you.
3. That door leads to the garden.
4. Cows feed on grass.
5. They went out in search of the lost boy.
6. It's going to rain. Make sure you close the window.

III. 完成句子

1. They didn't finish their work until five o'clock in the afternoon.
他们直到下午五点才完成工作。
2. We meet here at a time when China is developing rapidly.
我们在中国正在快速发展的时候相遇在这里。

3. There are no simple solutions to solve the problem of air pollution caused by some human activities.
没有简单的解决方案来解决某些人类活动造成的空气污染问题。
4. There are enough books for students to read in the library.
图书馆里有足够的书供学生阅读。
5. The more the people, the more the ideas.
人多主意多。

IV. 完形填空

An elderly woman is crediting (归功于) her neighbour's 4-year-old dog with saving her life during last week's dangerously cold temperatures.

Tim Curfman was 1 his garbage with his dog Midnight when he felt its 2 was unusual. It had its ears held up looking at him. It didn't 3 do that. Curfman got the feeling that something was 4. So he observed how his dog was acting and 5 it to a spot on the other side of his house. There, he saw his 87-year-old neighbour, Noreen, 6 in the snow. She was trying to fill her bird feeder when she fell.

Curfman 7 she was out there at least half an hour. She could not get up because she didn't have enough 8 to push herself up, and there was nothing around the corner to get a 9 of, either. The temperature was one degree below zero, but Curfman and Midnight were able to 10 her quickly.

Noreen, who didn't have serious injuries, was lucky to 11 frostbite (冻伤) even though her clothes were wet. Curfman called his wife and they together helped his neighbour up from the snow and into her 12, where his wife helped the elderly woman get into 13 clothes.

Noreen was 14 to Midnight for saving her life. "I am 15 of my dog," Curfman said in an interview.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了Curfman和他的爱犬Midnight发现了跌倒在雪地里的邻居老太太并救助了她的故事。

1. A. sending out B. taking out
C. picking out D. handing out
B 根据空格后的名词“garbage”可知, Tim Curfman 带着他的爱犬 Midnight 去倒垃圾。take out“扔,带出去”符合文义。
2. A. sound B. attention
C. behavior D. appearance
C 根据后文“It had its ears held up looking at him.”可知,狗把耳朵竖起来看着他。因此狗的行为(behavior)有些异常。
3. A. normally B. suddenly
C. really D. daily
A 根据前文中的“unusual”可知,狗那么做并不正常(normally)。
4. A. down B. in
C. out D. up
D 根据前文狗的异常行为可知,Curfman 感觉到一定是有事情发生了。be up 意为“(不好的事情)正在发生”。
5. A. trained B. drove
C. walked D. followed
D 根据前文“So he observed how his dog was acting”可知,他观察狗的行为,并跟着(followed)它到他房子的另一边。
6. A. lying B. moving
C. playing D. standing
A 根据下文“She was trying to fill her bird feeder when she fell.”和第三段中的“She could not get up”可知,他看到 87 岁的邻居 Noreen 躺(lie)在雪地里。
7. A. guessed B. feared
C. argued D. explained
A Curfman 猜测(guessed)她至少在外面待了半个小时。
8. A. time B. space
C. strength D. courage
C 根据 Noreen 的年龄(87-year-old)和常识可判断,Noreen 之所以躺在雪地里起不来是因为她年纪太大了,没有足够的力气(strength)让她站起来。
9. A. view B. hold
C. taste D. command
B 本句是在解释她躺在雪地里没有站起来的原因,除了没有力气之外,应该是没有东西可以让她抓住(hold)并站起来。

10. A. remind B. report
C. find D. visit
C 当时的温度是零下一度,但 Curfman 和 Midnight 还是很快发现(find)了她。
11. A. face B. fight
C. avoid D. suffer
C 根据空前的定语从句“who didn't have serious injuries”和“lucky”可推断,Noreen 没有受重伤,即使她的衣服都湿了,也避免了(avoid)被冻伤。
12. A. car B. garden
C. yard D. home
D 根据后文“where his wife helped the elderly woman get into 13 clothes”可推知,他们把老人送回了她的家里(home),因为只有家里才会有衣服。
13. A. dry B. clean
C. old D. beautiful
A 根据上文“her clothes were wet”可知,老人的衣服湿了,因此此处应该是帮老人换上干的(dry)衣服。
14. A. grateful B. close
C. rude D. polite
A 根据后文“for saving her life”可知,Noreen 非常感激(grateful)Midnight 的救命之恩。
15. A. afraid B. tired
C. ashamed D. proud
D 根据前文“An elderly woman is crediting (归功于) her neighbour's 4-year-old dog with saving her life”可知,Midnight 救了老人的命,由此可推断,Curfman 为他的爱犬感到自豪(proud)。

【微点写作】描写一种动物

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. Many animals are in danger, so we should pay attention to wildlife protection.
很多动物都处于危险中,因此我们应该注意野生动植物的保护。
2. Some people kill the rare animals, such as tigers, golden monkeys and so on in order to get money.
有些人为了赚钱杀害珍稀动物,例如老虎、金丝猴等。
3. The government should punish those people severely who kill the rare animals.
政府应严厉惩罚杀害珍稀动物的人。

Section III Using language

学习任务及目标

1. 进一步了解定语从句的结构和表意功能,掌握关系副词的用法,并在真实语境中运用;
2. 掌握并能够自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
3. 掌握并恰当地使用与动物相关的习语,了解英语常用习语的意思,激发英语学习的兴趣;
4. 提升听懂与动物有关的一般性话题的能力,并能够恰当地运用功能表达展开辩论,表达同意或不同意;
5. 思考人与动物的关系,认识到人与动物和谐相处的重要性,树立可持续发展的生态观。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. It is said that the factory was **founded** in 1995.
创立,创建
2. “Let the cat out of the bag” is an **idiom** meaning to tell a secret by mistake.
习语
3. Only the manager has the **authority** to sign cheques.
权力
4. The sun is the major **source** of energy for our planet.
来源

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
accommodation <i>n.</i> 住处, 工作场所	accommodate <i>v.</i> 为(某人)提供住宿(或膳宿、座位等); 容纳

III. 补全短语

1. for the first time 第一次
2. as busy as a bee 忙得团团转
3. hold your horses 慢点, 别急
4. instead of 而不是; 代替
5. be busy (in) doing sth 忙于做某事
6. take... for example 以……为例

7. live on one's own 独自生活
8. kill two birds with one stone 一举两得, 一箭双雕
9. when the cat's away (the mice will play) 猫儿不在, 老鼠作怪(指管事的不在, 下面的人玩个痛快)
10. rain cats and dogs 下倾盆大雨

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: it is possible to do sth
People were excited—the zoo is the only place in the country where it is possible to see pandas.
人们很兴奋——这个动物园是这个国家唯一有可能看到熊猫的地方。
2. 句型公式: the reason why... is that...
And of course, the main reason why they were so excited is that pandas are just so cute!
当然, 他们如此兴奋的主要原因是熊猫太可爱了!
3. 句型公式: watch sb doing sth
It is in a location where we can watch animals wandering past on their way to the waterhole.
它是在一个我们可以看到动物经过这条路漫步到水池的地方。

任务型课堂

accommodation *n.* 住处, 工作场所

(教材原文) Our **accommodation** is perfect.
我们的住处很完美。

一感 读句子感悟用法

After the earthquake, the first thing the local government did was to **provide accommodations for** the homeless families.

地震过后, 当地政府首先做的是为无家可归的家庭提供食宿。

It was very kind of you to **accommodate** me **with** the ticket for my journey.

你真好, 为我的旅行提供车票。

Wherever he goes, he readily **accommodates himself to** the changed conditions.

无论去到哪里, 他都能很快地适应变化的环境。

We can **accommodate him for the night**.

我们能让他住一夜。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) provide _____ for 为……提供食宿 (2) accommodate v. 为(某人)提供住宿(膳宿、座位等);使适应,顺应;容纳(乘客) accommodate sb _____ sth 给某人提供某物 accommodate... to... = adapt... to... 使……适应/迎合……(其中 to 为介词) accommodate oneself _____ 使自己适应…… accommodate sb for the night 留某人过夜,让某人住一晚
探究结论	(1) accommodations (2) with; to

名师点拨

accommodation 还有“膳食供应;住宿”之意,常用复数形式。

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

- ① The price for the holiday includes flights and accommodations (accommodate).
② The bank will accommodate the students whose family are poor with a loan.
③ You must accommodate yourself to the new environment as soon as possible.

语法探究

关系副词引导的定语从句

「语法感知」

- ① Eventually, it manages to reach the places **where** it will spend the winter.
② The solution to the mystery of the monarch's amazing ability comes at a time **when** it is in serious trouble.
③ Sadly, human activity is the main reason **why** the number of monarch butterflies is falling.
在句子①②③中,定语从句的关系词 where, when, why 都是关系副词,在定语从句中分别作地点、时间和原因状语,先行词分别为表示地点、时间、原因的名词。

「语法精讲」

一、关系副词的指代及功能

关系副词	在从句中所作成分	先行词
when	指时间,在定语从句中作时间状语	表示时间的名词: time, moment, day, month, year, period 等
where	指地点,在定语从句中作地点状语	表示地点的名词: place, house, city, country, world, street 等及一些抽象名词,如 point, case, position, condition, situation 等
why	指原因或理由,在定语从句中作原因状语	表示原因的名词: reason, excuse 等

I cannot forget the day **when** I first saw you.
我永远不会忘记第一次见到你的日子。

This is the house **where** they lived a week ago.
这是一个星期前他们住过的房子。

The reason **why** I don't trust him is that he often tells lies.

我不信任他的原因是他常常撒谎。

二、关系副词引导的定语从句的注意事项

表示时间、地点及原因的名词作先行词时,定语从句可用关系副词引导,也可用关系代词引导。若关系词在定语从句中作状语,应用关系副词;若关系词在定语从句中作主语或宾语,则应用关系代词。

Do you remember the days **when** we chatted with each other all night?

你还记得我们整夜聊天的那些日子吗?

Do you remember the days **that/which** we spent together on the farm?

你还记得我们在农场一起度过的那些日子吗?

I don't know the reason **why** he didn't turn to his good friend for help yesterday.

我不知道昨天他为什么没向他的好朋友求助。

I won't listen to the reason **that/which** you have given us.

我坚决不听你提供给我们的那个理由。

Can you recognise the house **where** you used to live with your parents?

你能认出你曾经和父母一起住过的房子吗?

Can you recognise the house **that/which** Tom sold three years ago?

你能认出汤姆三年前卖的那套房子吗?

三、“介词+关系代词”替代关系副词

关系副词 when, where, why 相当于“介词+which”结构:

when=on (in, at, during...)+which

where=in (at, on...)+which

why=for which

This is the town **where/in which** I was born.

这就是我出生的城镇。

She won't forget the day **when/on which** she went to the senior high school for the first time.

她永远不会忘记她第一次去高中就读的那一天。

The main reason **why/for which** he lost his job was that he often drank.

他失去工作的主要原因是他经常酗酒。

「语法闯关」

I. 单句语法填空

1. We will put off the picnic in the park until next week when the weather may be better.
2. The boss of the company is trying to create an easy atmosphere where his employees enjoy their work.

3. The reason that/which he explained at the meeting was not sound.

4. Keep the book in a place where you can find it easily.

II. 完成句子

1. This is the hospital where I was born.

这是我出生的那家医院。

2. I will never forget the day when we moved into our new house.

我永远不会忘记我们搬进新居的那一天。

3. We are living in an age when many things are done on computers.

我们生活在许多事情要在电脑上做的时代。

4. After graduation, he returned to the small town where he grew up.

毕业以后,他回到了那个他长大的小镇上。

5. The reason why he could not go there was that he was ill in bed.

他不能到那里去的原因是他卧病在床。

课后素养评价(二十三)

I. 选词填空

found; idiom; instead of; source; accommodation; authority; take... for example; for the first time

1. Your local library will be a useful source of information.
2. Nothing will be done because no one in authority takes the matter seriously.
3. He had a feeling for phrase and idiom.
4. It was in Beijing that we met for the first time.
5. Founded in 1935 in Ohio, Alcoholics Anonymous is now a world-wide organisation.
6. The Rough Guide to Paris lists accommodations for as little as \$ 35 a night.
7. They raised prices and cut production, instead of cutting costs.
8. You can take it for example that he always helps the old.

II. 单句语法填空

1. The reason for which she changed her mind is quite clear.

2. The days when they travelled together meant a lot to him.

3. The hotel in which we stayed was built last year.

4. The house where he lived 10 years ago has been pulled down.

5. Nobody knows the reason why she didn't attend the meeting.

6. I'll never forget the time when we visited Xi'an.

7. I didn't get a pay rise, but this wasn't the reason why I left.

8. We visited the car factory where my uncle once worked three years ago.

9. This is the factory that/which I visited last year.

10. The train which/that has just left is for Shanghai.

III. 阅读理解

The UN Environment Programme says that rising temperatures could mean the end of some migrating animals.

Migrating animals move through several environments as they travel away from the cold area into winter to warmer ones. Birds may fly from one part of the world to another, perhaps stopping at

feeding grounds on the way. Whales and turtles travel through huge areas of ocean. A report says that changes in any one of the places where these animals stay can cause serious problems. “Obviously these animals have developed their travelling ways over thousands of years. But weather changes much greater over the next 25 to 50 years. And it is impossible for these animals to change their habits fast enough,” said the report writer Dr Robert Hepworth.

Turtles are hit hardest by rising temperatures. Scientists have found that at higher temperatures, turtles have far more female eggs than male ones. In parts of Malaysia, turtles are only giving birth to female babies. And some turtles are more probable to develop cancer as the waters get warmer.

With birds, the main problem is the harm to important areas at the end of their travels or at resting places along the way. About one-fifth of immigration birds are now in danger because of these changes, including rising sea levels, land loss and more strong storms.

Some other animals are now in great danger. For example, the North Atlantic right whale is losing their food because of the changing ocean flows; the white-nosed dolphin is out-competed (淘汰) by other kinds in warmer waters.

The report is not all bad news. Even with the temperature changing, protecting the environment can still help migrating animals return. “We need governments to start taking action all over the world. The clock is ticking. We should make full use of every minute,” said Dr Hepworth. And now some projects are already working! Whales are changing their feeding habits, finding new feeding grounds and new foods to eat.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了气候变化对迁徙动物的影响。

1. Why does this rising temperature mean the end of some migrating animals?

- A. They stop moving through several environments.
- B. They can't suit the changes during their travelling.
- C. Their travelling habits will be changed fast enough.
- D. They keep flying from one part of the world to another.

B 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“Obviously these animals have developed their travelling ways over thousands of years. But weather changes much greater over the next 25 to 50 years. And it

is impossible for these animals to change their habits fast enough”可推知,气温升高意味着一些迁徙动物的灭绝是因为它们不能适应迁徙途中的变化。故选 B。

2. What is the result of the warming according to the passage?

- A. The North Atlantic right whale may find new food.
- B. Some turtles may develop cancer with the warm waters.
- C. 1/5 of migrating birds change their feeding habits.
- D. The white-nosed dolphin may have only female babies.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“And some turtles are more probable to develop cancer as the waters get warmer.”可知,变暖的结果导致了一些海龟在温暖的海水中可能会患上癌症。故选 B。

3. What does the underlined sentence “The clock is ticking.” mean?

- A. It takes time to achieve the project.
 - B. It may be too late to save the world.
 - C. It's time to solve the problems at once.
 - D. It's important to stop animals from returning.
- C 句意理解题。根据画线句子的前一句“We need governments to start taking action all over the world.”和后一句“We should make full use of every minute”可知,需要立即采取行动,时间很紧急。故画线句的意思是“是马上解决问题的时候了。”故选 C。

4. What's the main topic of the passage?

- A. Ways to prevent world warming.
 - B. Steps to save the animals in danger.
 - C. Animals' competition with others for food.
 - D. Effects of rising temperatures on migrating animals.
- D 主旨大意题。通读全文,尤其是根据第一段的内容可知,本文主要介绍了气温上升对迁徙动物的影响。故选 D。

【微点写作】描写一种动物

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. As a result of/Because of economic development and population growth, many animals are in danger.

由于经济的发展和人口的增长,很多动物都处于危险之中。

2. It is our duty to protect the rare animals.

保护珍稀动物是我们的责任。

3. We should live in peace with them.

我们要与它们和平共处。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点；
2. 读懂课文内容，准确把握文章结构，厘清故事发展的脉络；
3. 熟悉故事的内容要素，并恰当地运用所学知识讲述人与动物相处的故事。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇和表达的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇和表达

1. button *n.* 按钮
2. recover *v.* (从糟糕经历中)恢复
3. shock *n.* 吃惊, 震惊
4. variety *n.* 多样化, 变化
5. path *n.* 小径, 小道
6. concentrate *v.* 专注, 专心
7. freeze *v.* 突然停止, 呆住
8. stare *v.* 凝视, 盯着看
9. per *prep.* 每
10. image *n.* 图像, 影像
11. reaction *n.* (对某一情形或事件的)反应
12. after all 毕竟, 终究

13. be famous/known for 以……闻名

14. concentrate on 专心于, 专注于

15. recover from 从……中恢复过来

16. show respect to 对……表示尊重

(二) 阅读词汇和表达

1. photographer *n.* 摄影师
2. element *n.* 基本部分, 要素
3. encounter *n.* 意外的相遇, 邂逅
4. breathtaking *adj.* 令人惊叹的
5. eagle *n.* 鹰
6. capture *v.* (用文字或图片)记录, 捕捉
7. file *n.* 档案, 文件
8. the elements 天气(尤指坏天气)
9. brave the elements 不顾天气恶劣, 冒着风雨
10. at a speed of 以……的速度

「课文速览」

表格填空

An Encounter with Nature	
The author	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Work as a nature 1. photographer. • Enjoy working outside in the 2. wild. • 3. Observe animals in their natural environment.
Bears in Yellowstone National Park	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • They are 4. huge and strong. • They can live for 5. 30 years. • They weigh up to 6. 300 kilograms. • They run fast and are excellent 7. swimmers.
The unexpected encounter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Last 8. spring in Yellowstone near the still lake. • The author was admiring the view when he saw a 9. bear. He froze. • Though 10. frightened, the author took a photo of the bear. • The bear ran away.

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- What attract (s) the author most as a nature photographer?
 - The elements.
 - The wildness.
 - The animals.
 - The forests.
- What can we know about the author?
 - The bear is his favourite animal.
 - He likes taking photos but can't bear the extreme weather.
 - He likes his job because he can observe animals in their natural environment.
 - Facing the bear, he didn't move because he was very brave.
- Why does the author often look at the photo?
 - Because it's a photo getting him recognised.
 - Because it's the author's only photo taken in Yellowstone National Park.
 - Because it often reminds him to respect animals.
 - Because it's about an unexpected visitor.
- What is the passage mainly about?
 - Working outside in the wild.
 - Photos taken in Yellowstone National Park.
 - An unforgettable experience in the wild.
 - A photo taken with a brown bear.

答案: 1~4 CCCC

II. 课文语法填空

As a nature photographer, although I have to brave the elements, I enjoy **1. working** (work) outside in the

wild. I can observe animals in their **2. natural** (nature) environment.

My favourite place to take photos is Yellowstone National Park, **3. which** is the world's first national park. It is famous for the variety of its wildlife, especially its bears. Despite a weight of up to 300 kilograms, they can run at **4. a** speed of around 64 kilometres per hour and are good at swimming.

Last spring in Yellowstone, I walked along a path through a dark forest. I was fascinated by this **5. amazing** (amaze) scene. **6. Suddenly** (sudden), I found a bear staring back at me. I froze with my legs **7. shaking** (shake). Somehow, I forced my finger **8. to press** (press) the button. After a while, the bear turned and ran back into the forest. When I recovered **9. from** the shock, I found my most frightening but magical experience **10. was captured** (capture) forever in a single image.

The photo often reminds me to show respect to all animals.

III. 阅读升华

- Why did the author use "frightening but magical" to describe the experience in Paragraph 3?
Because he risked his life to take a photo of a bear.
- How can we get along with the wild animals?
Try our best to protect them and not to disturb them. Ensure that they can freely live in their natural environment.

课后素养评价(二十四)

I. 单词拼写

- It was a shock (震惊) to discover that he lied to his parents about it.
- Honesty, industry and kindness are elements (要素) of a good life.
- What if it rained and then froze (结冰) all through those months?
- If I find someone who looks like the thief, my immediate reaction (反应) will be to tell the police.
- She is a talented musician as well as being a photographer (摄影师).

- Adam pressed a button (按钮) and waited for the lift.
- She did not notice the man until he moved into her path (小道).
- He stared at his own image (影像) reflected in the water.

II. 短语填空

stare at; concentrate on; after all; a variety of; up to; at a speed of; show respect to; be known/famous for

- I can't concentrate on my work when I'm tired.

2. He lay on the lawn, staring at the sky.
3. A variety of food is sold at a supermarket.
4. After all, 15 minutes of exercise is better than nothing.
5. This dining hall can hold up to 2,000 students.
6. It is a coastal city and it is known/famous for its beaches.
7. The public show respect to the rescuers (救助者) and send their best wishes to them.
8. The train is travelling at a speed of sixty miles an hour.

III. 完成句子

1. It was this man that/who helped me out when I was in trouble.
我处于困境时,是这个人帮助我渡过了难关。
2. Suddenly one of the boys lost his balance and fell off his bicycle.
突然,其中一个男孩失去了平衡,从自行车上掉了下来。
3. By the window sat a young man with a magazine in his hand.
窗户边坐着一个年轻人,手里拿着一本杂志。
4. The patient is gradually recovering from the operation.
病人正逐渐从手术中恢复过来。
5. While his mother was away, the boy cried from time to time.
当他的母亲不在时,男孩不时哭泣。

IV. 七选五

A Bird That Hums

Many birds are known for their special songs or calls. But one type of bird is famous for its hum (嗡嗡声)—the hummingbird. In fact, hummingbirds get their name from the humming noise they make.

1. Instead, the hum comes from the whir (嗡嗡声) of this tiny bird's wings in flight.

2. But one type of hummingbird makes a buzzing sound—the bee hummingbird of Cuba. The bee hummingbird gets its name not only from its buzz, but also from its size. This smallest bird in the world is only two inches (5cm) long.

When a young hummingbird first hatches (孵化) from its egg, its body and wings are featherless (无羽毛的). But as soon as its feathers come out, the tiny bird starts to practise “humming”. 3, the baby hummingbird can beat its wings fast enough to “whir”, and it's ready to fly.

When a grown hummingbird really gets going, it can beat its wings up to 200 times per second and fly forward at about 30 miles per hour. Hummingbirds can also beat their wings both forward and backward as well as up and down.

4—it is one of the most masterful birds that can hover (盘旋), or stay in one place in the air. While it hovers, a hummingbird's wings beat back and forth up to 70 times per second. 5, watch its whirring wings and listen closely. Can you hear the hummingbird's hum?

- A. When its wings beat very fast
- B. After about a month of practice
- C. The next time you see a hummingbird
- D. This ability makes the hummingbird more special
- E. Most hummingbirds' wings make a humming sound
- F. You might guess that a hummingbird's hum comes from its voice
- G. The baby hummingbird flies backward and forward as soon as it has feathers

答案: 1~5 FEBDC

【微点写作】描写一种动物

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. If we don't take action to protect wildlife, they will die out someday.
如果我们不采取行动保护野生生物,有朝一日它们将会灭绝。
2. This leads to the sharp decrease of the animals' population.
这导致这些动物的数量急剧下降。
3. We should protect wild animals from being harmed.
我们应该保护野生动物免受伤害。

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点；
2. 通过完成阅读任务，了解如何介绍一种动物，学习动物介绍类文章的写作特点，学会运用所学内容用写文章的方式向别人介绍一种动物；
3. 通过联系自身实际，进一步了解人与动物之间的关系，认识到爱护动物、尊重自然的重要性，树立爱护动物、与动物和谐相处的正确价值观。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中**黑体**单词的汉语意思

1. I pressed a **button** and the door closed slowly.
按钮
2. The scientists will study the **variety** of trees and observe which are fruiting.
多样化, 变化
3. Fitness has now become an important **element** in our lives.
基本部分, 要素
4. The story describes the **encounter** between a man and his wife.
意外的相遇, 邂逅
5. She **stared** at him with wide eyes.
凝视, 盯着看
6. The water flows at about 1.5 metres **per** second.
每
7. I walked nervously up the garden **path** towards the front door.
小径, 小道
8. Slowly, an **image** began to appear on the screen.
图像, 影像
9. **Files** can be lost if the system suddenly crashes.
档案, 文件

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>photographer</u> <i>n.</i> 摄影师	<u>photograph</u> <i>n.</i> 照片 <u>photography</u> <i>n.</i> 摄影; 摄影术
<u>recover</u> <i>v.</i> (从糟糕经历中)恢复	<u>recovery</u> <i>n.</i> 恢复; 痊愈; 改善; 复苏
<u>shock</u> <i>n.</i> 吃惊, 震惊	<u>shocking</u> <i>adj.</i> 惊人的; 骇人的; 令人难以置信的 <u>shocked</u> <i>adj.</i> 吃惊的; 震惊的
<u>concentrate</u> <i>v.</i> 专注, 专心	<u>concentration</u> <i>n.</i> 集中; 专心 <u>concentrated</u> <i>adj.</i> 集中的; 全力以赴的; 浓缩的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>freeze</u> <i>v.</i> 突然停止, 呆住	<u>freezing</u> <i>adj.</i> 极冷的 <u>frozen</u> <i>adj.</i> 冷冻的; 冻僵的 <u>freezer</u> <i>n.</i> 冰柜
<u>reaction</u> <i>n.</i> (对某一情形或事件的)反应	<u>react</u> <i>v.</i> 作出反应, 回应; 起化学反应

III. 补全短语

1. show respect to 对……表示尊重
2. be famous/known for 以……闻名
3. at a speed of 以……的速度
4. concentrate on 专心于, 专注于
5. recover from 从……中恢复过来
6. from time to time 不时, 偶尔
7. after all 毕竟, 终究
8. except for 除了……
9. look like 看起来像
10. take place 发生

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: one of + 可数名词复数
One of the best things about this job is that you can observe animals in their natural environment. 这份工作最棒的地方之一就是你可以观察到自然状态下的动物。
2. 句型公式: 完全倒装句
Only metres away from me was a bear. 离我只有几米远的地方是一只熊。

3. 句型公式: with 复合结构

With water falling off its thick, brown hair, the bear stared back at me.

它也盯着我, 水珠从它那厚厚的棕色皮毛上滴下来。

4. 句型公式: 强调句型

It is after all we who are the visitors to their world.

毕竟, 我们才是它们世界的访客。

任务型课堂

1. variety n. 多样化, 变化; 种类, 品种

(教材原文) As the world's first national park, Yellowstone is famous for the **variety** of its wildlife, but it is probably best known for its bears.

作为世界上第一个国家公园, 黄石公园因其野生生物多样性而闻名, 不过其中最广为人知的可能还是那里的熊。

一感 读句子感悟用法

A **variety of** products are sold at a supermarket.

在超市, 各种各样的商品均有出售。

Our customs **vary from** place **to** place.

我们的风俗习惯因地而异。

Prices **vary with** the quality.

价格随质量不同而变化。

Everyone arrived late at the party for **various** reasons.

参加聚会的人因种种原因而迟到了。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) a _____ of = varieties of 各种各样的 (2) vary v. (使)变化, 不同 vary from... to... 从……到……不同 vary _____ ... 随……而变化 (3) _____ adj. 各种各样的
探究结论	(1) variety (2) with (3) various

名师点拨 ■■■■

a variety of / varieties of 后接名词时, 谓语的动词的单复数与名词的数保持一致; “the variety of + 复数名词”意为“……的品种”, 作主语时, 谓语的动词用单数形式。

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

① Generally speaking, prices of fruit and vegetables vary with the season.

② In my free time, I'll continue to take regular exercise, such as swimming, running and various (vary) ball games.

③ The research team is made up of pupils, whose ages vary from 10 to 15.

④ (2023 · 新高考 I 卷) We offer the newest bicycles in a wide variety (vary), including basic bikes with foot brake (刹车), bikes with hand brake and gears (排挡).

2. concentrate v. 专注, 专心

(教材原文) While I was **concentrating** on photographing this amazing scene, I suddenly had a feeling that I was being watched.

当我正聚精会神地拍摄这惊人的景观时, 我突然感觉有什么在盯着我看。

一感 读句子感悟用法

We must **concentrate our attention on/upon** protecting the water resources.

我们必须把注意力集中在保护水资源上。

How can I **concentrate on/upon** my study with so much noise going on?

这么吵, 我怎么能安心学习呢?

With concentration, we can arrange thoughts in order and become a rapid thinker.

专心思考可以让我们的思维有条理性, 从而成为一个思维敏锐的思考者。

The company is making a **concentrated** effort to broaden its market.

这家公司正全力以赴地努力拓展其市场。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) concentrate... _____ ... 把……专注于/集中于…… concentrate on/upon... 专注于…… (2) _____ n. 专心, 专注; 集中 with concentration 专心思考, 专心致志 (3) _____ adj. 集中的; 全力以赴的; 浓缩的
探究结论	(1) on/upon (2) concentration (3) concentrated

名师点拨

表示“专心于;致力于”的短语还有 be addicted to, be buried/lost/absorbed in, be devoted to, put one's heart into, focus on/upon 等。

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

- ① It was her concentration (concentrate) on scientific research that made her succeed at last.
- ② I can't concentrate on/upon my work this morning with several children shouting loudly outside.
- ③ With his attention concentrated (concentrate) on his book, he didn't notice someone entering his room.
- ④ He made a concentrated (concentrate) effort to finish the work on time.

3. 强调句型

(教材原文) **It is** after all we **who** are the visitors to their world.

毕竟,我们才是它们世界的访客。

[句式分析]本句中 It is... who...为强调句型,此时 who 也可以换为 that。

一感 读句子感悟用法

It was when we were returning home **that** I realised what a good feeling it was to have helped someone in trouble.

正是当我们回家的时候我才意识到帮助那些处于困难中的人是多么好的感受。

Was it Mary **that** you met in the street yesterday? 昨天你在街上遇见的是玛丽吗?

What was it that prevented him from coming on time?

是什么使得他没按时来?

Bach died in 1750, but **it was not until** the early 19th century **that** his musical gift was fully recognised.

巴赫于1750年去世,但是直到19世纪早期他的音乐天赋才被完全认同。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	强调句型的基本结构 (1)陈述句式: It is/was + _____ + that/who (强调部分为主语,指人)+ 句子其余部分。 (2)一般疑问句式: _____ it + 被强调部分 + that/who + 句子其余部分? (3)特殊疑问句式: 特殊疑问词 + is/was it + _____ + 句子其余部分? (4)含有 not... until...的句式: It is/was not until + 强调部分 + that + 非强调部分。
	探究结论 (1)被强调部分 (2)Is/Was (3)that

名师点拨

强调句型的判断:将强调句结构中的 It is/was 和 that/who 去掉,如果句子所剩下的部分不缺少任何成分,仍是一个完整的句子,这个句子就是强调句,否则就是其他从句。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1)单句语法填空

- ① It was only when the car pulled up in front of our house that we saw Lily in the passenger seat.
- ② It was my sister that/who helped me out when I was in trouble.

(2)句型转换

I didn't realise that she was a famous film star until she took off her dark glasses.(改为强调句)

→ It was not until she took off her dark glasses that I realised that she was a famous film star.

写作探究

描写一种动物

一、写作指导

关于动物的话题有三种写作形式:

1. 说明文:介绍某种动物,可从动物的形体、习性、特点等方面展开;
2. 议论文:动物与人类的关系以及如何保护动物;克隆动物的利和弊;
3. 应用文:建议信(如何保护动物);写信投诉人类对动

物的伤害)、保护动物的演讲稿及倡议信等;保护动物的文章常常是首先说明现状,比如数量减少,分析造成的原因,然后提出一些可行的建议。

二、典题示例

请根据以下要点写一篇英语短文,介绍大熊猫。

1. 大熊猫是中国的稀有动物,也是地球上最珍稀的动物之一,受到人们的喜爱;

2. 大熊猫生活在山里,以竹子为食,由于山林遭到破坏,竹子被砍伐,大熊猫觅食越来越困难;

3. 我国已建立数个自然保护区来保护大熊猫。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

三、审题谋篇

文体	说明文
时态	一般现在时
人称	以第三人称为主
要点	1. 引入话题 2. 具体介绍大熊猫的情况 3. 总结

四、遣词造句

(一)核心词汇和表达

①feed on 以……为食

②be home to 是……的家乡

③cut down 砍伐

④seek v. 寻找

⑤raise the awareness of 增强……的意识

⑥take measures to do sth 采取措施做某事

⑦nature reserve 自然保护区

(二)完成句子

①The giant panda is not only (不仅) a rare animal in China, but also (而且) one of the rarest animals on earth.

②It is loved by people (受到人们的喜爱) all over the world.

③The mountains are home to the giant panda, and it feeds on bamboo (以竹子为食) there.

④As more and more forests (越来越多的森林) are being destroyed and most of the bamboo has been cut down (已经被砍伐), it is becoming more and more difficult (越来越困难) for giant pandas to seek food for themselves.

⑤To save them (为了救它们), China has founded several nature reserves.

⑥It's high time that we should take measures to protect them immediately (立即采取措施来保护它们).

(三)句式升级

①将(二)中句①升级为 not only 置于句首引起的倒装句

Not only is the giant panda a rare animal in China, but also one of the rarest animals on earth.

②将(二)中句③升级为含有关系副词引导的定语从句的句子

The mountains are home to the giant panda, where it feeds on bamboo.

(四)连句成篇

Not only is the giant panda a rare animal in China, but also one of the rarest animals on earth. It is loved by people all over the world.

The mountains are home to the giant panda, where it feeds on bamboo. As more and more forests are being destroyed and most of the bamboo has been cut down, it is becoming more and more difficult for giant pandas to seek food for themselves. To save them, China has founded several nature reserves.

It's high time that we should take measures to protect them immediately.

五、学以致用

请根据以下要点写一篇英语短文,介绍华南虎。

动物	华南虎(South China Tiger)是世界级濒危动物种类之一
栖息地	中国
现有的数目	野生数量为 0;国内仅存 200 多只,均生活在保护区
濒危的原因	栖息地的减少;人类为了获取它的虎皮和虎骨对其进行捕杀
保护措施	拒绝购买虎制品

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

The South China Tiger, whose habitat is in China, is one of the most endangered animals in the world.

There are only over 200 South China Tigers living in the reserve with none in the wild. The reduction of their habitats and people's hunting for their fur and bones have left them in danger. So it is high time that we should take actions to protect them.

Don't buy any tiger products or we will only see them in the museums in the near future.

课后素养评价(二十五)

I. 单句语法填空

1. What a variety of of salads you've got on your menu!
2. With prices going (go) up so fast, we can't afford luxuries (奢侈品).
3. He was shocked (shock) at the news.
4. What was his reaction (react) to the new plan?
5. A car ran by me at a high speed of about 120 km/h.
6. He is in hospital, recovering from a heart attack.
7. You should forgive him for his forgetfulness; after all, he is over seventy.
8. She stared at him, frozen with shock.
9. Sydney is famous for its Opera House and the Sydney Harbour Bridge.
10. It's believed that children should show respect to their parents.

II. 完成句子

1. Between the two buildings stands a tall tree.
在两座大楼之间有一棵高高的树。
2. With so much noise going around, he found it hard to concentrate on his study.
周围有这么多的噪音,他发现很难专注于他的学习。
3. He will always remember the day when his father returned from America.
他将永远记得父亲从美国返回的那一天。
4. I don't know the reason why he didn't come to the meeting yesterday morning.
我不知道他为什么没有参加昨天上午的会议。

III. 语法填空

Water goes around and around the earth in a never-ending journey **1. called** (call) the water cycle.

2. The sun heats up lakes, oceans and other wet places on the earth. When the water gets enough **3. warmth** (warm), it changes into vapour (蒸汽). Plants also give off lots of water vapour. After **4. cooling** (cool) off high in the sky and becoming clouds, some of the vapour falls back to the earth in

a new place as rain or snow. This cycle **5. happens** (happen) over and over again.

The ground can absorb water. If you could see the groundwater, it wouldn't look like a lake **6. or** river. The groundwater is mixed in with the rocks and sand **7. that/which** lie in layers (层) below the earth's surface.

Groundwater moves along slowly. Can you imagine how slowly? Maybe 1.5 kilometres in one century. Some of this water has been underground for **8. thousands** (thousand) of years. And once groundwater **9. is drawn** (draw) out of the ground from a deep well by people, it may take many years for water from another place to take **10. its** (it) place.

IV. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华,你的美国朋友 Peter 想了解大象。请你用英语给他写一封邮件,根据下面的提示向他介绍大象这种动物。

1. 大象是陆地上最大的动物,出生时约有 90 千克重,一米高。
2. 大象的皮肤是灰色的,有长鼻子和两只大耳朵,通常生活在河谷中,以草和树叶为食;它们每天喝大量的水。
3. 大象经常群居,互相照顾;非洲大象每年迁徙。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 可适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面的材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

We went to Darjelling during the summer holidays and booked a cottage (农舍) for our stay. Our cook Gopi came with us because we could not do without home-cooked meals.

Usually all the shopping was done by our home help—Bharat, who had accompanied (陪伴) us to our holiday destination. However, one early evening, my mother decided to do all the vegetable shopping by herself. She believed that Bharat did not wait to check the really fresh items and instead, bought randomly in a hurry. As a result, the vegetables he brought back were not fresh.

After getting ready, she took her favourite purse with quite an amount of money, thinking she could go to other shops too after finishing at the vegetable market. My mother asked Bharat to get a rickshaw for her and on reaching the market she asked the rickshaw wallah (人力车车夫) to wait for her. She took a coolie (苦力) and did her shopping happily, choosing some of the freshest green vegetables available there. At last, her shopping was done. She returned to the rickshaw and sat on it while the coolie put all the things my mother had bought onto the rickshaw.

On reaching home, Bharat took all the packets of vegetables inside and my mother quickly paid the rickshaw wallah and got off, forgetting to collect her purse from the seat of the rickshaw. The rickshaw wallah left soon after saying goodbye to my mother. All of us greeted my mother and asked her about her evening of shopping with much delight.

Then we began to help my mother prepare our dinner. My father came to help chop the meat; I helped wash the vegetables; we were talking and laughing. When dinner was about to be announced, it was late in the evening, almost 9 p. m.

注意:续写 150 词左右。

Then my mother realised her purse was missing. _____

We were just about to begin eating when the doorbell rang. _____

【参考范文】

第一节 应用文写作

Dear Peter,

The elephant is the largest animal on land today. It weighs about ninety kilograms and is about one metre high when born. The elephant, whose colour is grey, has a long trunk and two big ears. It usually lives in valleys where there is enough grass or leaves, for it mainly feeds on grass and leaves. It drinks a lot of water every day. The elephants in Africa migrate to find nice food every year. They usually live in groups and care for each other.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

Then my mother realised her purse was missing. She looked everywhere for it and suddenly remembered that after paying the rickshaw wallah, she kept the purse on the seat before getting off. She had forgotten to pick up her purse which contained a lot of money. When my father came to know about this, he said that it was too late to look for the rickshaw wallah. We all decided that it was better to forget it. Mother felt sad and worried while sitting for dinner.

We were just about to begin eating when the doorbell rang. Bharat opened the door and called my mother to see who it was. To our surprise, it was the poor rickshaw wallah standing at our entrance with a big smile on his weather-beaten face. He had the purse in his hand. He explained that he had returned to the market after he realised what had happened. When my mother opened her purse, she found all the cash in it. We wanted to reward the lovely man but he smiled and said, "Madam, I'm poor but not a thief." And he went away quickly.

读后续写技能养成 || 动物描写之外貌和动作

「技能概述」

1. 动物描写之外貌和动作:是指生活中常见的动物的外貌和动作描写,如狗、猫、鹦鹉、鸽子、熊、狼、蜜蜂、蝴蝶等。
2. 续写技巧:描写动物的外貌和动作时,要抓住家养动物和野生动物各自的特点,如家养动物温顺乖巧,野生动物凶残威猛等。

「范例体悟」

Dad put the box on the ground and opened the top. A shiny little wet nose popped up. Then two fluffy paws. Popy was amazed. She wagged furiously. She smiled, her tongue lolling out as she investigated the surprise. The little creature jumped out with painstaking efforts and yapped around Popy. They sniffed each other like old friends. Dad laughed.

找出文中描写动物的外貌和动作的词汇并写下来。

A shiny little wet nose popped up; two fluffy paws; wagged furiously; smiled; her tongue lolling out; investigated; jumped out with painstaking efforts and yapped around Popy; sniffed each other like old friends

「词句储备」

I. 好词积累

(一)动物的外貌

1. sharp teeth 锋利的牙齿
2. golden fur 金黄色的毛
3. two big round eyes 两只圆溜溜的大眼睛
4. a pair of large watery eyes 一双水汪汪的大眼睛
5. a nose like a black gem 黑宝石般的鼻子

(二)动物的动作

1. bark *v.* 吠
2. lick *v.* 舔
3. smell/sniff *v.* 嗅
4. wag the tail 摇尾巴
5. put the ears up 把耳朵竖起来
6. bite the corner of the coat 咬住衣角
7. hold it tightly with the paws 用爪子紧紧抓住
8. rest the nose in its paws 把鼻子搁在爪子里
9. keep its forelegs doubled up 保持前腿弯曲

10. rub their necks with their paws
用爪子抓挠它们的脖子
11. keep scratching you with its front paws
用它的前爪不停地挠你
12. raise its whole body on its hind legs
用后腿支起全身
13. howl at me with its head low
低着头对我嚎叫

II. 佳句背诵

1. I opened the door and saw a tiny white furry ball with black spots trying to get under our door mat. 我打开门,看到一个极小的带有黑色斑点的白色“毛球”正试图钻到我们的门垫下面。
2. The dog has golden fur which feels very comfortable, like touching the soft cotton. 小狗有着金黄色的毛,摸起来十分舒服,像是摸着柔软的棉花一样。
3. The dog clung to his feet and looked at him with bright eyes. 小狗紧贴着他的脚,用明亮的眼睛看着他。
4. Upon his master's arrival, the dog leapt to his feet, snorted happily and bounded forward. 主人一到,这只狗就跳了起来,高兴地用鼻子哼哼着,向前跳跃着。
5. It stretched, shook itself and circled several times before dropping to the ground. 它伸了伸懒腰,抖了抖身子,绕了几圈又卧在地上。

「技能达标」

I. 完成句子

1. The dog curled into a ball and lay shivering on the ground.
那只狗蜷缩成一团,躺在地上瑟瑟发抖。
2. Lying on the ground, the dog kept his eyes wide open, ears flat, a growl deep in his chest.
那只狗躺在地上,眼睛睁得大大的,耳朵耷拉着,胸口深处发出一声咆哮。
3. Dogs take much pleasure in rolling and rubbing their necks with their paws.
狗很喜欢打滚并用爪子抓挠自己的脖子。

3. What should you do as a thoughtful visitor?

- A. Leave the wildlife undisturbed.
- B. Throw the rubbish into the dustbins.
- C. Make reservations in the Carriage House.
- D. Protect the markers of the Woodland Trail.

A 推理判断题。根据第四段的内容可知,要做一个体贴的游客,不要打扰野生动物。故选 A。

B

Luke has always been my closest and constant companion these past five years. In fact, he is very friendly to me especially when I take care of other furry friends in our shelter.

There have been a lot of forest fires during the summer season. Not far from our shelter, a forest caught fire during this hot summer. Luke rushed towards the forest where flames send out a terrible heat. There's no longer any hope at the moment to wait for Luke to come back to the shelter. In fact, I was waiting for the firemen to announce his death to me in the forest. Suddenly, a fireman burst into my office and informed me that my dog Luke succeeded in saving four cats which were trapped by the flames. Luke seized the kittens, one by one moving them to a safe place.

I immediately accompanied the fireman to the forest to pick up the rescued kittens, but Luke was not there. Then we heard the sound of a dog came from the forest barking furiously (狂怒地). The firemen followed the tracks of the dog until they found him barking loudly by the side of an injured fireman who was lying on the ground.

That day, I was very proud of Luke for his two heroic actions. I paid a visit to the fireman accompanied with my adorable Luke. What a memorable scene when the fireman hugged Luke tightly to his chest! "A thousand thanks, Luke, for saving my life," the fireman said.

This true story of love shows us that pets are kind, loving and caring. We should love and protect them. Don't belittle them. Little animals can make enormous things for humans.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了小狗 Luke 在一场森林大火中,奋不顾身地拯救了四只小猫和一名消防员的故事。

4. What did the author think had happened to Luke?

- A. Luke ran away from the shelter for ever.
- B. Luke was afraid of the big fire.
- C. Luke was killed by the big fire.
- D. Luke was able to save all the people.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段中的 "There's no longer any hope at the moment to wait for Luke to come back to the shelter. In fact, I was waiting for the firemen to announce his death to me in the forest." 可知,作者原本认为自己的狗有可能在森林火灾中被烧死了。故选 C。

5. Why was the author proud of Luke?

- A. Luke rescued four cats and a fireman from the fire.
- B. Luke warned people of the coming fire.
- C. Luke took care of other furry animals in the shelter.
- D. Luke has always been my closest and constant companion.

A 细节理解题。文章主要叙述了小狗 Luke 在一场森林大火中,奋不顾身地拯救了四只小猫和一名消防员的故事。所以作者对小狗 Luke 的英勇行为感到自豪。故选 A。

6. What does the underlined word "belittle" in the last paragraph probably mean?

- A. Make things small.
- B. Look down upon.
- C. Live up to.
- D. Think highly of.

B 词义猜测题。在最后一段中,作者呼吁我们要关爱和保护动物,因为小动物也能为人类作出巨大的贡献。由此可知,此处表示“我们不要小瞧了它们”。故 "Don't belittle them." 中的画线词意为“瞧不起”。故选 B。

7. What is the author's purpose in writing the passage?

- A. To stress the role of pets in people's life.
- B. To persuade people to keep pets.
- C. To call attention to the danger of the big fire.
- D. To share a story of love and care from pets with us.

D 写作意图题。文章主要讲述了小狗 Luke 在一场森林大火中,奋不顾身地拯救四只小猫和一名消防员的故事。由此可以推断,作者讲述 Luke 的英勇事迹是为了与读者分享动物给予人类爱与关心的故事。故选 D。

C

In the far north, well above the Arctic Circle in Alaska, ground squirrels (地松鼠) are like little balls within a deep hole in the ground. If you look at one, you might think it is dead. The squirrel is as cold as ice. Its body temperature is -2°C . Its heart beats only once every 15 seconds. Its breathing stops for minutes at a time.

It's not exanimate, of course—just hibernating (冬眠). But spring is on its way to Alaska. As the days are becoming longer and the ground becomes warm, the Arctic ground squirrels will be warm, too. At first, the increase will be almost too small to notice. “You see them begin to breathe a little more quickly—see their heart rate speed up,” says Brian Barnes, a zoologist of the University of Alaska. “As they get up to 10°C to 20°C , you see them shivering (颤抖) quite clearly,” he notes, “just as we shiver.” This shivering is a type of way to create heat. “Once their body temperatures rise above 30°C ,” he says, “they wake up, clean themselves, and move.” A squirrel that looked dead a few hours before is now very much alive.

Arctic ground squirrels are among the world's coolest hibernators. Chilling out (休息) for months at a time lets them grow in this extremely cold place, where food is short. By studying how ground squirrels hibernate, scientists hope to answer some big questions. Among them: How do these animals go from warm to cold and back again? And might people ever do the same? The ability to chill out could help humans who suffer from brain injuries and heart problems survive.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了北极地松鼠的冬眠习惯,以及研究这种动物冬眠的科研意义。

8. What's the first paragraph mainly about?

- A. Where ground squirrels hibernate.
- B. What ground squirrels look like.
- C. Why ground squirrels hibernate.
- D. How ground squirrels hibernate.

D 段落大意题。第一段介绍了地松鼠在地底下蜷缩成球状,体温只有 -2°C ,像冰块一样,心脏每十五秒跳动一次,呼吸一次要停止好几分钟。再

结合下一段内容可知它是在冬眠。本段主要介绍了地松鼠是如何冬眠的。故选D。

9. What does the underlined word “exanimate” in the second paragraph mean?

- A. Cold.
- B. Weak.
- C. Dead.
- D. Tired.

C 词义猜测题。根据第一段中的“If you look at one, you might think it is dead.”及画线词后的“just hibernating (冬眠)”可知,地松鼠看起来就像死了一样,但它只是在冬眠,并没有死。故画线词的意思是“死的”。

10. Why does a ground squirrel shiver before coming to life?

- A. To increase its body temperature.
- B. To speed up its heart rate.
- C. To restore its breathing.
- D. To clean its body.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“This shivering is a type of way to create heat.”可知,这种颤抖是一种产生热量的方式,因此地松鼠在苏醒前会颤抖是为了提高体温。故选A。

11. What is the purpose of the last paragraph?

- A. To show the results of the study.
- B. To show the purpose of the study.
- C. To show how the study was carried out.
- D. To show people's interest in ground squirrels.

B 推理判断题。最后一段主要介绍了科学家希望通过研究地松鼠冬眠解决一些有关人类的大问题,如:这些动物是如何从暖变寒再变暖的?人们可以这样做吗?放松的能力能帮助有脑部损伤和心脏问题的人继续存活。由此可推断出,最后一段是为了介绍这次研究的目的。故选B。

D

The early life of the green sea turtle is full of danger. Only one in 1,000 baby sea turtles survives to adulthood (成年). From its home in the sand, it breaks its egg with an egg tooth. Its mother is not there to help it. Instead, it is greeted by crabs, coyotes and dogs waiting to eat it for dinner. To survive, the baby turtle must hide in the sand until night. Then, it moves slowly to the sea.

The small turtle must swim hard to reach the ocean waters. In the sea, it tries hard to find food. It must also keep itself from being food for fish.

As dangerous as the sea turtle's life is in the natural world, its most dangerous enemies are humans. The rubbish left by humans in the ocean causes problems for the small green sea turtle. A little turtle might eat a piece of plastic in the sea. It might also eat oil on the ocean's surface. Young turtles also get caught in fishing nets. There are laws against hunting sea turtles. Still, many are hunted, both for their meat and for their shells (壳). All of these dangers must be prevented.

Sea turtles that do survive to grow into adulthood go through many changes. For example, adult green sea turtles weigh about 500 pounds. They stop eating jellyfish and other meat and eat only plants. And they may plan a trip to go back home again. A mother sea turtle goes back to the beach where she was born. This is the only place where she will lay eggs. Even if it has been forty years since she was a baby, she always knows her way back home.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了幼绿海龟所面临的危险。

12. Why do baby turtles move to the sea at night?

- A. Because they dislike sunshine.
B. Because they prefer lower temperatures.
C. Because they can find food easily then.
D. Because they need to avoid enemies.

D 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“Instead, it is greeted by crabs, coyotes and dogs waiting to eat it for dinner. To survive, the baby turtle must hide in the sand until night.”可知,迎接它的是螃蟹、丛林狼和等着吃晚饭的狗。为了生存,幼海龟必须藏在沙子里直到晚上。由此可推断出,幼海龟在晚上移动到海里是因为它们需要避开敌人。故选 D。

13. What does the author think of the young turtles in Paragraph 3?

- A. Pitiful. B. Careless.
C. Interesting. D. Courageous.

A 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“A little turtle might eat a piece of plastic in the sea. It might also eat oil on the ocean's surface. Young turtles also get caught in fishing nets. There are laws against hunting sea turtles. Still, many are

hunted, both for their meat and for their shells (壳).”可知,作者介绍了幼海龟所遇到的各种危险,因此作者认为幼海龟很可怜。故选 A。

14. What can we learn about green sea turtles from the last paragraph?

- A. They mainly feed on fish and meat.
B. They always produce eggs at their birthplaces.
C. They can live for around forty years.
D. They visit their beach homes several times a year.

B 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“A mother sea turtle goes back to the beach where she was born. This is the only place where she will lay eggs.”可知,一只海龟妈妈会回到她出生的海滩产蛋。故选 B。

15. What is the text mainly about?

- A. The homes of young green sea turtles.
B. How young green sea turtles find their food.
C. The dangers faced by young green sea turtles.
D. How young green sea turtles become adults.

C 主旨大意题。根据文章首句“The early life of the green sea turtle is full of danger.”可知,幼海龟早期会面临各种危险。下文介绍了幼海龟可能会面临来自海洋和陆地捕食者的捕杀,在海洋中会误食人类排放的塑料和漂浮在海面上的石油以及会陷入人类设下的渔网,故本文主要介绍了幼绿海龟所面临的危险。故选 C。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

Why Do Cats Purr (发出咕噜声)?

We've all heard cats meow, but why do most of them purr? 16 Some believe that they are simply happy. Some suggest that they may be in need of something.

17 Cats do purr when they show their appreciation for attention. They also make the noise when not in our company. The purring noise is a continuous sound that occurs while they both breathe in and out.

When it comes to how cats purr, most people believe that the cat's brain signals the muscles to vibrate (震动), which produces the noise. 18 Some argue that the cat intends to purr, while others say it may be due to chemicals released by the brain as a reaction to pleasure or pain.

D 根据上文中的“*He is the only dog...*”可知,他有着独特的本领。故选 D。

28. A. support B. wisdom
C. balance D. honour

A 根据上文“*Bear was called in to 25 down sick and injured koalas in need of help*”可知, Bear 追踪到的是需要帮助的生病或受伤的考拉,所以野生动物护理专家会给予它们帮助和支持,这也关乎着它们是否能“存活”。故选 A。

29. A. survive B. compete
C. promote D. suffer

A 野生动物护理专家会给予它们帮助和支持,这也关乎着它们是否能“存活”。故选 A。

30. A. guess B. identify
C. challenge D. stress

B 根据上文的“*Bear was trained to sniff out a koala with his nose in the affected area.*”可知, Bear 能够通过嗅觉识别考拉所在的位置。故选 B。

31. A. graceful B. confused
C. curious D. still

D 根据后文“*at which point he would be offered a 32 which he would run after*”可知,在那之前 Bear 是不会跑走的,而是静静地等在树下。故选 D。

32. A. bone B. mirror
C. ball D. bear

C 根据空后的“*which he would run after*”可知, which 指代的应该是一个能“活动”的东西, C 选项“球”符合语境,根据常识,这也是狗狗喜欢的玩具。故选 C。

33. A. symbol B. saviour
C. master D. survivor

B 根据上一句“*Bear, a professional rescue dog has helped to locate around 100 koalas from bushfire-stricken wilderness in Australia.*”以及标题“*Bear, the Koala Saviour*”可知, Bear 就是考拉的救星。故选 B。

34. A. audience B. editor
C. host D. actor

D 好莱坞是世界闻名的电影中心,因此,此处指一位著名的演员。故选 D。

35. A. statue B. animal
C. hero D. pet

C Bear 在澳大利亚遭受森林大火的荒野中找到了大约一百只考拉,足以称得上是一个“英雄”。故选 C。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

More wild bird species (物种) have appeared in Wuhan, Hubei Province, after bird-watchers and the forestry department protected their habitats.

Since 2014, the number of black storks (a kind of bird), which are under first-class national protection, **36. has risen** (rise). Bird-watchers can see dozens **37. of** them overwintering in Wuhan every year. Last year, the local government banned (禁止) businesses, motor vehicles and camping in the Tianxingzhou Wetland, **38. an** island with many places to visit. **39. To draw** (draw) more attention to these birds, the city's environmental organisation has set up a project.

In the past five years, Wuhan has returned 6,333 hectares of fishponds and about 667 hectares of farmland to wetland. And in the past two years, Wuhan has spent 120 million *yuan* **40. protecting** (protect) the Chenhu Wetland, a nature reserve listed as being of international **41. importance** (important) by the Secretariat of the Convention on Wetlands.

Now, many birds, such as Baer's Pochards, white cranes and oriental white storks can **42. be seen** (see) in the lake's wetland.

The Wuhan Bird Watching Society has been watching the number and habitats of each wild bird species. “It's interesting to watch all kinds of birds, listen to ‘bird talk’ and experience wild fun in the city,” said Yan Jun, **43. who** is head of the society.

Birds are frequent **44. visitors** (visitor) to wetland and an important part of the environment. Their population size, activity status and the local environment are **45. closely** (close) connected, Yan said. And he also said, “Though birds can't speak, they vote (投票) with their feet.”

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假定你是李华,正在伦敦学习英语,你希望加入当地的“野生动物保护”志愿者协会。请你用英语写一封 80 词左右的电子邮件申请加入,内容包括:

1. 加入的原因;
2. 你的优势;
3. 表达期望。

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读下面的材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Once upon a time, two brothers who lived on neighbouring farms fell into conflict. It was the first serious disagreement in forty years of farming side by side, sharing machinery, and trading labour and goods as needed without a hitch.

Then the long cooperation fell apart. It began with a small misunderstanding and then grew into a major difference, and finally it exploded into an exchange of bitter words followed by weeks of silence.

One morning, there was a knock on John's door. He opened it to find a man with a carpenter's toolbox. "I'm looking for a few days' work," he said. "Perhaps you have a few jobs here and there. Could I help you?"

"Yes," said John. "I do have a job for you. Look across the small stream at that farm. That's my neighbour's. In fact, it's my younger brother's. Last week there was a meadow (草地) between us and he took his bulldozer (推土机) there and now there is a stream between us. Well, he may have done this to annoy me but I'll do better. See that pile of wood by the barn (谷仓)? I want you to build a fence—an 8-foot-high fence—so I won't need to see his place anymore."

The carpenter said, "I think I understand the situation. Show me the nails and hole-digger and I'll be able to do a job that pleases you."

The older brother had to go to the town for supplies, so he helped the carpenter get everything ready and then he left. The carpenter worked hard all that day measuring, sawing and nailing. At sunset when John returned, the carpenter had just finished his job. John's eyes opened wide and his jaw dropped.

注意:续写 150 词左右。

There was no fence at all. It was a bridge! _____

They turned to see the carpenter lift the toolbox onto his shoulder. _____

【参考范文】

第一节 应用文写作

Dear Sir or Madam,

I'm Li Hua, a student from China learning English in London. Now, I'm writing this letter with the hope of being one of you to protect wild animals.

As we know, the number of wild animals is decreasing owing to losing their habitats or being hunted and killed. And I really want to do something for them.

Having been a member of the local wildlife protection association for years, I'm familiar with what wild animal protection is about. So I think I can become a good volunteer.

Looking forward to your early reply.

Yours sincerely,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

There was no fence at all. It was a bridge! A bridge stretched from one side of the creek to the other! John was about to complain about it when he found his younger brother was coming across the bridge with hands outstretched. "You are quite a fellow to build this bridge after all I have said and done," said John's brother. The two brothers met in the middle, taking each other's hand and hugging each other.

They turned to see the carpenter lift the toolbox onto his shoulder. "No, wait! Stay a few more days. We have more jobs for you," said the older brother. "I'd love to stay on," the carpenter said, "but I have many more bridges to build." Observing the carpenter leaving in the sunset, the two brothers waved a grateful goodbye to him. What a thought-provoking story! Every day we have the choice of building a fence or a bridge. One leads to separation and anger while the other leads to openness and friendship, the latter of which makes the situation quite pleasant.

Unit 6

At one with nature

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—
Comprehending

学习任务及目标

- 识记本课时的重要语言点；
- 通过阅读文章，理解文章大意，分析作者的写作意图；
- 能基于自身经历，简单描述家乡的自然环境，讲述环境对自己生活的影响。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇和表达的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇和表达

- completion *n.* 完成, 结束
- dynasty *n.* 朝代
- region *n.* 地区, 区域
- therefore *adv.* 因此, 由此
- soil *n.* 土壤
- shallow *adj.* 浅的
- prevent *v.* 阻挡, 防止
- harmony *n.* 融洽相处, 和谐
- design *v.* 设计
- harm *v.* 伤害, 损害
- crop *n.* 庄稼, 作物
- agriculture *n.* 农业
- provide... for... 为……提供……
- be home to 是……的故乡/发源地/所在地

15. be covered in 被覆盖在……下面

16. go to the trouble to do sth 费心做某事

17. from the bottom to the very top 从底部一直延伸到顶部

18. pass down 传下来; 传递

(二) 阅读词汇和表达

- sheet *n.* (冰或水等的)一大片
- frost *n.* 霜
- terrace *n.* 梯田
- wrap *v.* 包, 裹
- steep *adj.* 陡的, 陡峭的
- vapour *n.* 蒸气
- plenty of 充足的, 相当多的
- prevent... from 阻挡, 防止; 使……免于……
- turn... into... 把……变成……
- wash away 冲走
- in harmony with 与……和谐相处

「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 1 (Para. 1)	The 1. colours of the Longji Rice Terraces	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mountains are wrapped in silver water in 2. spring. Mountains turn bright 3. green in summer. Mountains are 4. gold in autumn. Mountains are covered in sheets of white frost in winter.
Part 2 (Para. 2)	The history of the Longji Rice Terraces	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Longji Rice Terraces started in the 5. Yuan Dynasty. Longji Rice Terraces were completed in the early 6. Qing Dynasty.

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Part 3 (Para. 3)	Why local people built terraces	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There are few large, flat areas of land. People wanted to grow more 7. rice. • The steep mountains and the shallow soil can't catch the rainwater.
Part 4 (Para. 4)	The terraces are cleverly 8. designed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hundreds of waterways connect with each other. • During the rainy season, along these waterways rainwater moves down the mountains and into the 9. terraces.
Part 5 (Para. 5)	The Longji Rice Terraces are also an 10. attraction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Traditions hold much value for rice growers. • New generations continue to use ancient methods of agriculture to maintain the terraces.

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- What's the main idea of the text?
 - The Longji Rice Terraces will have a bright future.
 - How people worked in harmony with nature to create the Longji Rice Terraces.
 - The Longji Rice Terraces are fascinating all around the year.
 - The reason why Longji Rice Terraces were built.
- What dynasty can the terraces date back to?
 - The Yuan Dynasty.
 - The Ming Dynasty.
 - The Qing Dynasty.
 - The Tang Dynasty.
- How many reasons are there for locals to build terraces?
 - One.
 - Two.
 - Three.
 - Four.
- How do the local people get along with nature?
 - Badly.
 - Harmoniously.
 - Worse.
 - Not mentioned.

答案: 1~4 BABB

II. 课文语法填空

The Longji Rice Terraces were built by the local Zhuang and Yao people in Guangxi. **1. Starting** (start) in the Yuan Dynasty, work on the terraces took hundreds of years, until its **2. completion** (complete) in the early Qing Dynasty. Reaching as far **3. as** the eye can see, these terraces cover tall mountains, often from the bottom to **4. the** very

top. So why did these people go to so much trouble **5. to turn** (turn) the entire mountains into terraces? Firstly, they could increase the areas in **6. which** they could grow rice. Secondly, the flat terraces catch the rainwater and prevent the soil from **7. being washed** (wash) away. The terraces are **8. cleverly** (clever) designed, with hundreds of waterways that connect with each other. During the rainy season, rainwater moves down the mountains and into the terraces along these waterways. The ancient methods of agriculture **9. are passed** (pass) down through families. Today, the Longji Rice Terraces attract thousands of visitors who come to admire this great wonder **10. created** (create) by people and nature working together.

III. 阅读升华

- Why do the new generations continue to use ancient methods of agriculture?

Because the local people value traditions and the knowledge is passed down through families.
- In what other ways do people live in harmony with nature? Give an example.

Protect wetlands. In my hometown, in order to protect the arrival of wild geese every spring, the local government has protected the wetland, so that wild geese can have a place to live and rest. When wild geese fly around us in spring, it makes us feel at ease.

课后素养评价(二十六)

I. 阅读理解

The idea of growing food in a desert would make most people laugh but this is quickly becoming a reality. There are currently two desert farms in the world where quality vegetables are being planted cheaply and easily.

Sundrop Farms, based in South Australia, uses experimental greenhouses to grow tomatoes, peppers and cucumbers. The biggest challenge of growing food in a desert, obviously, is the lack of available water. The researchers at Sundrop Farms have gotten around this problem by using the sun to desalinate (淡化) sea water. It can also be used to control the temperature of the greenhouses.

Without depending on limited resources such as land and fresh water Sundrop Farms has made farming a practice. This can increase the world's food supplies. Another benefit of this kind of farming is that it can be done anywhere, thus reducing the costs of transporting food to distant locations. Yet another benefit is that it reduces the need for pesticides (杀虫剂).

Another experimental desert farm is the Sahara Forest Project, which began in Qatar in December 2012. Greenhouses in the farm are cooled by saltwater. Solar power and other technologies are used together to help make vegetation (植被) grow in the desert environment. As deserts have expanded over recent years around the world due to global warming, this project could solve the problem.

The result from the Qatar project was better than expected and in June of 2014, Jordan agreed to host another one. This will be much bigger than the Qatar project and the project members will have even more opportunities to test their experiments on a much larger scale. It is not clear yet that desert farming represents the future of farming but these projects have shown some success in the field.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了沙漠农业的相关项目。

1. What do the underlined words “this problem” in Paragraph 2 refer to?

- A. Sea water is hard to purify.
- B. The desert is short of water.
- C. The temperature is high in the desert.
- D. Desert farms aren't fit to plant vegetables.

B 词义猜测题。根据画线词的前文“The biggest challenge of growing food in a desert, obviously, is the lack of available water.”和后文“by using the sun to desalinate (淡化) sea water”可知,通过利用阳光淡化海水来解决沙漠中缺水的问题。故画线词“this problem”指代上文中所提到的“lack of available water”。故选 B。

2. What is one of the characters of desert farming?

- A. It needs more pesticides.
- B. It saves delivery costs.
- C. It has a location limit.
- D. It solves food waste problems.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“Another benefit of this kind of farming is that it can be done anywhere, thus reducing the costs of transporting food to distant locations.”可知,沙漠农业可以在任何地方进行,进而减少食物运送成本。故选 B。

3. What can we know about the Sahara Forest Project?

- A. It is beyond expectations.
- B. It can help produce more food.
- C. It is started to prevent global warming.
- D. It uses technology to produce saltwater.

A 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“The result from the Qatar project was better than expected”可知,撒哈拉森林项目的结果比预想得更好。故选 A。

4. What can be inferred about desert farming from the last paragraph?

- A. It still has problems to solve.
- B. It represents the future of farming.
- C. Its early success has aroused interest in it.
- D. Its aim is to create more job opportunities.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“The result from the Qatar project was better than expected and in June of 2014, Jordan agreed to host another one.”和“It is not clear yet that desert farming represents the future of farming but these projects have shown some success in the field.”可知,撒哈拉森林项目的结果比预想得要好,约旦赞同再开展一个此类项目。从而推断,沙漠农场项目早期的成功已经引起了人们对沙漠农场的兴趣。故选 C。

II. 七选五

Why Is Exercise Cool?

Exercise Strengthens Muscles

Did you ever do a push-up or swing across the monkey bars on the playground? 1 By using your muscles to do powerful things, you can make them stronger. For older teens and adults, this kind of workout can make muscles bigger, too.

2

Can you touch your toes easily without yelling out? Most kids are pretty flexible, which means that they can bend and stretch their bodies without much trouble. Being flexible is having “full range of motion”, which means you can move your arms and legs freely without feeling tightness or pain.

Exercise Keeps the Balance

3 Your body needs a certain amount of calories every day just to function, breathe, walk around and do all the basic stuff. 4 If you're not very active, your body won't need as many calories. Whatever your calorie need is, if you eat enough to meet that need, your body weight will stay about

the same. If you eat more calories than your body needs, they may be stored as extra fat.

Exercise Makes You Feel Good

It feels good to have a strong, flexible body that can do all the activities you enjoy—running, jumping and playing with your friends. It's also fun to be good at something, like scoring a basket, hitting a home run, or perfecting a dive.

But you may not know that exercising can actually put you in a better mood. 5 It's just another reason why exercise is cool!

- A. So do you want to do some aerobic (有氧的) exercise right now?
- B. Food gives your body fuel in the form of calories, which are a kind of energy.
- C. When you exercise, your brain releases a chemical, which may make you feel happier.
- D. Those are exercises that can build strength.
- E. Exercise Makes You Flexible
- F. Exercise Makes Your Heart Happy
- G. But if you're active, your body needs an extra measure of calories or energy.

答案:1~5 DEBGC

【微点写作】概要写作

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. Not only does the behavior break the balance of nature but also endangers the living environment of human beings.

这种行为不仅破坏了自然平衡,而且也使人类的居住环境陷入危险。

2. The scenery here is beautiful and the air is fresh, attracting a number of tourists from all over the world.

这里风景优美、空气新鲜,吸引着许多来自世界各地的游客。

3. Water resources have become so badly polluted that some of the water is unfit to drink or to use.

水资源已经被污染得如此严重,以至于一些水已经不适合饮用或使用。

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas

Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点；
2. 通过完成文章后的活动，厘清文章结构，把握说明文的文体特征，并迅速找出关键细节在文中的位置；
3. 了解龙脊梯田的建造背景、建造原因和运作原理，并恰当地运用所学知识介绍龙脊梯田；
4. 了解当地人民尊重自然、合理利用自然、改造自然的行为，加深对语篇和单元主题的认知，认识人与自然和谐相处的重要性；
5. 能够运用本课时所学知识简单谈论与自然和谐相处的事例、描述理想的生活环境。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. I want to **wrap** the presents in red paper. 包, 裹
2. The Tang **Dynasty** was the golden age of classical Chinese poetry. 朝代
3. It rained and **therefore** the football match was put off. 因此, 由此
4. We can see clearly from the chart that the two **regions** differ greatly in climate. 地区, 区域
5. Some parts of the river are very **shallow**, while it is very deep in other places. 浅的
6. Water the plant regularly, never letting the **soil** dry out. 土壤
7. The Bai have an agricultural economy, their main **crops** being rice, wheat, beans and cotton. 庄稼, 作物
8. Loch Affric (艾菲力克湖) is a lovely **sheet** of water among trees. (冰或水等的)一大片

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>completion</u> <i>n.</i> 完成, 结束	complete <i>adj.</i> 完全的, 彻底的 <i>v.</i> 完成
	completely <i>adv.</i> 彻底地, 完全地; 完整地
<u>harmony</u> <i>n.</i> 融洽相处, 和谐	harmonious <i>adj.</i> 和谐的, 融洽的, 协调的; 悦耳的
<u>design</u> <i>v.</i> 设计	designer <i>n.</i> 设计师
<u>harm</u> <i>v.</i> 伤害, 损害	harmful <i>adj.</i> 有害的, 导致损害的
	harmless <i>adj.</i> 无害的; 无恶意的
<u>agriculture</u> <i>n.</i> 农业	agricultural <i>adj.</i> 农业的, 耕种的; 农艺的, 农学的

III. 补全短语

1. from the bottom to the top 从下到上
2. turn... into... 把……变成……
3. plenty of of 充足的, 相当多的
4. prevent... from... 阻挡, 防止; 使……免于……
5. wash away 冲走
6. in harmony with... 与……和谐相处
7. provide... for... 为……提供……
8. pass down 传下来; 传递
9. be home to 是……的故乡/发源地/所在地
10. go to the trouble to do... 费心做……

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 现在分词作状语

Reaching as far as the eye can see these terraces cover tall mountains, often from the bottom to the very top.

目之所及, 这些梯田包裹着巍峨的高山, 往往从山脚一直盘绕到山顶。

2. 句型公式: 动词-ing 形式作主语

Building the terraces therefore meant that they could increase the areas in which they could grow rice.

因此, 建造梯田意味着他们可以扩大水稻的种植面积。

3. 句型公式: what 引导名词性从句

But perhaps what is most significant is the way in which people have worked in harmony with nature to make these terraces and grow rice.

但也许最重要的还是人与自然和谐相处建造梯田并种植水稻的方式。

任务型课堂

1. prevent v. 阻挡, 防止

(教材原文) The flat terraces catch the rainwater and **prevent** the soil from being washed away. 水平的梯田能够储存雨水, 防止土壤流失。

一感 读句子感悟用法

No one can **prevent/stop** him (**from**) carrying out the plan.

没有人能阻止他实施这项计划。

They **were stopped/prevented from entering** the burning building.

他们被阻止进入燃烧着的大楼。

She had to hold her son tightly, to **keep him from falling**.

她得紧紧抓着她儿子, 防止他摔倒。

Stress should be put on the **prevention** of diseases. 疾病应以预防为主。

Forty thousand children a day die from **preventable** diseases.

每天有四万儿童死于本可以防止的疾病。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) prevent/stop sb (from) (doing) sth 阻止某人(做)某事(在被动结构中, 介词 from 不可省略) keep sb _____ (doing) sth 阻止某人(做)某事 (2) _____ n. 预防; 防止; 防范 (3) _____ adj. 可以预防的; 可以阻止的
探究结论	(1) from (2) prevention (3) preventable

名师点拨

表示“阻止某人(做)某事”时, prevent/stop sb (from) (doing) sth 中的介词 from 可以省略, 但 keep sb from (doing) sth 中的 from 不能省略。在被动结构中, 以上短语中的 from 均不可省略。

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

① Pollution prevents people from seeing (see) objects in the sky that they could see quite easily in the past.

② The situation in that country should be prevented (prevent) from becoming worse and worse.

③ The firemen arrived quickly, and the fire was prevented from spreading.

④ Most of the mistakes in his test paper are preventable (prevent) if he is more careful.

⑤ Law is made to punish crimes with an eye on prevention (prevent).

2. design v. 设计

(教材原文) The terraces are cleverly **designed**, with hundreds of waterways that connect with each other.

这些梯田设计巧妙, 其间有几百条相互连通的水渠。

一感 读句子感悟用法

As far as I know, the course **is designed for** beginners.

据我所知, 这门课程是为初学者设计的。

This project **is designed to help** homeless people. 这一项目旨在帮助无家可归的人。

Her wedding dress **is designed by** a female **designer**, who is well-known around the world.

她的婚纱是由一位世界知名的女设计师设计的。

Tom left his schoolbag at home **by design** because he didn't finish his homework.

汤姆故意把书包落在家里, 因为他没有完成作业。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) be designed _____ 为……而设计 be designed _____ sth 目的是/计划做某事 be designed by... 由……设计 (2) _____ design 故意地, 蓄意地 (= on purpose) (3) _____ n. 设计师
探究结论	(1) for; to do (2) by (3) designer

名师点拨

design 还可用作名词, 意为“设计; 图案; 意图”。

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

- ① This entrance has been specially designed for people in wheelchairs.
- ② The project is designed to help (help) those children who drop out of school because of poverty.
- ③ We don't know whether it was done by accident or by design.

3. harm v. 伤害, 损害

(教材原文) These terraces also provide a perfect environment for birds and fish, some of which feed on insects that can **harm** the rice crops. 这些梯田也为鸟类和鱼类提供了完美的环境, 其中一些以危害水稻的昆虫为食。

一感 读句子感悟用法

Reading online novels for a long time will **do you harm**.

阅读在线小说的时间太久对你有害。

As is known to all, smoking **does harm to** health.

众所周知, 吸烟有害健康。

There's no harm in telling him the truth.

把真相告诉他没有什么害处。

It is **harmful to** your health to drink too much. 过量饮酒对你的健康有害。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) do... harm/do harm _____ ... 对……有害
	there is no harm in doing sth 做某事无害处; 不妨做某事
	(2) harmful <i>adj.</i> 有害的; 导致损害的 be harmful _____ ... 对……有害处
探究结论	(1) to (2) to

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

- ① Don't read in the sun because it does harm to your eyes.
- ② There is no harm in saying (say) sorry to your friend first if you two have quarrelled.
- ③ Some experts say that music can be harmful (harm) if it is too loud.
- ④ Eating too much sugar is harmful to children's teeth.

课后素养评价(二十七)

I. 单词拼写

- They built a wall to stop soil (土壤) being washed away.
- It's likely that they will be harmed (伤害) by second-hand smoke.
- We congratulated them on the successful completion (完成) of the project.
- The region (地区) is said to produce over 50% of the country's rice.
- The lake over there was covered with a sheet (一大片) of ice.
- Diana is taking the opportunity to wrap (包) up the family presents.
- Put the milk in a shallow (浅的) dish.
- Problems also exist in agriculture (农业).
- It rained and therefore (因此) the football match was postponed.
- This project is designed (设计) to help homeless people.

- In the Ming and Qing dynasties (朝代), it had grown to be a major festival in China.
- The heavy rain which lasted for a week did a lot of damage (损害) to the crops (庄稼).

II. 短语填空

in harmony with; be home to; turn... into...; prevent... from...; wash away; provide... for...; pass down

- Everything that King Midas touched turned into gold.
- This large woodland (林地) is home to many birds and other wildlife.
- This custom has been passed down since the Ming Dynasty.
- These rules could prevent accidents from happening.
- They worked hard to provide money for their large family.

B 根据空后的“to buy a sandwich”可知,这个无家可归的人是向 Impagliazzo 要钱(money)买三明治。

11. A. instead of B. because of
C. in case of D. for lack of

A 根据上文“his dream of feeding the homeless”可知,他希望为无家可归的人做三明治而不是(instead of)买三明治。

12. A. inspire B. protect
C. feed D. save

C 根据上文“his dream of feeding the homeless”可知,他和其他退休的人一起为那些穷人提供食物(feed)。

13. A. award B. permit
C. cup D. menu

A 根据下文“He was recognised as a ‘hero of our times’.”可知,Impagliazzo 的事迹得到了意大利总统的表彰(award)。

14. A. promised B. agreed
C. admitted D. thought

D 他从未想到(thought)他的想法会成功。

15. A. impressive B. lovable
C. successful D. colourful

C 根据上文“Now there are more than 300 volunteers”和“He was recognised as a ‘hero of our times’.”可知,他没有想到会如此成功(successful)。

【微点写作】概要写作

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. It can be easily seen that human activities have a strong influence/effect on the environment.

可以很容易地看出,人类活动深深地影响着环境。

2. As is known to us all, Mount Hua is famous for its breathtaking cliffs and its unique characteristics.

众所周知,华山以它险峻的悬崖和独一无二的特征而出名。

3. Standing on the top of the mountain, the temple has witnessed many changes in this area.

这座坐落在山顶的寺庙见证了这个地区的许多变化。

Section III Using language

学习任务及目标

1. 进一步了解定语从句的结构和表意功能,掌握“介词+关系代词”的用法,并在真实语境中运用;
2. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
3. 通过阅读语篇,了解并掌握描述地形、地貌的词汇,能够从位置、特征等方面恰当、具体地描述地理景观;
4. 通过完成听力活动,进一步熟悉涉及人与自然关系的一般性话题,并能够恰当地运用功能表达描述不同地区的生活方式,谈论其优势和不足;
5. 思考人与自然的的关系,认识到人尊重自然、合理利用与改造自然、与自然和谐相处的重要性。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中**黑体**单词的汉语意思

1. All the furniture is made of natural **materials**.

材料

2. **Minerals** are often found deep in the ground.

矿物,矿产

3. What is the biggest **barrier** to women succeeding at work?

障碍

4. Doctors study the **structure** of the human body.

结构,构造,组织

5. Other **living** beings might exist in outer space.

活的,活着的

6. Very few animals can survive in this terrible **climate**.

气候

7. They lost their way in the **desert** and finally died of thirst.

沙漠

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
replace <i>v.</i> 以……替换, 更换	replacement <i>n.</i> 替换, 更换; 替代品, 替换物
consumer <i>n.</i> 消费者	consume <i>v.</i> 消耗, 耗费(燃料、能量、时间等)
	consumption <i>n.</i> 消费; 消耗, 消耗量
priority <i>n.</i> 优先处理的事, 当务之急	prior <i>adj.</i> 优先的; 占先的; 较重要的
beauty <i>n.</i> 美, 美丽	beautify <i>v.</i> 美化; 装饰
	beautiful <i>adj.</i> 美丽的, 漂亮的
thunder <i>v.</i> 打雷 <i>n.</i> 雷声	thunderous <i>adj.</i> 雷鸣般的
sail <i>v.</i> (乘船) 航行	sailor <i>n.</i> 水手, 海员; 驾船人
	sailing <i>n.</i> 帆船运动; (乘帆船的) 航行; (轮船的) 航班

III. 补全短语

1. be made from 由……制成(看不出原料)
2. be popular with 受……欢迎
3. separate... from... 使……和……分离, 把……和……分开

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 过去分词(短语)作定语

Located off the coast of Australia, the Great Barrier Reef is the biggest structure made by living organisms.

大堡礁位于澳大利亚海岸附近, 是由活的生物体构成的最大结构。

2. 句型公式: 动词-ing形式作主语

Eating a lot of fish and meat keeps our bodies strong so that we can fight the cold.

吃大量的鱼和肉可以使我们的身体强壮, 从而可以抵御寒冷。

3. 句型公式: make+it+*adj.*+for sb to do sth

The cold weather makes it difficult for us to grow enough vegetables and fruit.

寒冷的天气使我们很难种植足够的蔬菜和水果。

任务型课堂

replace *v.* 以……替换, 更换

(教材原文) In sentence (a), can we **replace** “in which” with “where” without changing the meaning?

在(a)句中, 我们能否在不改变含义的情况下将“in which”替换为“where”?

一感 读句子感悟用法

Jim broke Tom's cup and had to **replace** it **with** a new one.

吉姆打破了汤姆的杯子, (因此) 不得不给他换一个新的。

He will **replace** his father **as** the general manager of the company next year.

明年他将取代他父亲成为公司的总经理。

Nothing can ever **replace** real love and family togetherness.

= Nothing can ever **take the place of** real love and family togetherness.

什么都不能取代真爱与家庭和睦。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	replace... _____ ... 用……代替……
	replace sb _____ ... 取代某人成为……
探究结论	replace sb/sth = take the place of sb/sth = take one's place 取代某人/某物
	with; as

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Despite the fast development of AI technology, teachers will never be replaced (replace) by computers in the classroom.

② It's a bad idea to miss meals and replace them with snacks.

③ Who will replace Mr Smith as the manager of the department?

(2) 句型转换

No one can replace her father in her heart.

→ No one can take the place of her father in her heart.

语法探究

“介词+关系代词”引导的定语从句

「语法感知」

- ① These terraces were built by the local Zhuang and Yao people, **to whom** Guangxi is home.
- ② Building the terraces therefore meant that they could increase the areas **in which** they could grow rice.
- ③ But perhaps what is most significant is the way **in which** people have worked in harmony with nature to make these terraces and grow rice.
- ④ This forms clouds **from which** rain falls down onto the mountain terraces once again.
- ⑤ These terraces also provide a perfect environment for birds and fish, **some of which** feed on insects that can harm the rice crops.
- ⑥ Although modern technology could help produce more crops, these terraces still mean a lot to the local people **for whom** traditions hold much value.

1. 这六个句子都使用了“介词+关系代词”引导的定语从句。若先行词指物,那么介词后的关系代词用 which;若先行词指人,那么介词后的关系代词用 whom。
2. 在这六个句子中,句子②③④⑥是限制性定语从句,句子①⑤是非限制性定语从句。

「语法精讲」

一、基本构成

在“介词+关系代词”结构引导的定语从句中,关系代词指物用 which,指人用 whom,不可用 that 或 who 代替。

There comes Tom, **for whom** I have been waiting an hour or so.

汤姆来了,我等了他大约一个小时。

He handed me a pen **with which** I wrote down his phone number.

他递给我一支钢笔,我用它记下了他的电话号码。

The university **in which** my brother once studied is very famous.

我哥哥曾经就读的大学很有名。

二、介词不能提前的情况

有些固定动词短语中的介词一般不能提前。常见的这类动词短语有 listen to, look at, depend on,

look for, pay attention to, take care of, look after, take part in, call on, catch up with, get along with, hear of, look forward to 等。

This must be the key **that** she is **looking for**.

这一定是她正在寻找的那把钥匙。

This is the baby **whom** you will **look after**.

这就是你将要照看的那个婴儿。

We often talk about the people and the things **that** we **heard of**.

我们经常谈论我们听说的人和事。

三、“介词+关系代词”的拓展

1. 复合介词+关系代词

用于该结构的关系代词有 which, whom 和 whose。常用的复合介词有 because of, in front of, as a result of, at the back of 等。

He was badly hurt in the accident, **because of which** he didn't go to work.

他在事故中受了重伤,因为这个他没去上班。

They arrived at a farmhouse, **in front of which** sat a boy.

他们来到一座农舍,农舍前面坐着一个男孩。

2. 表示部分或整体概念的“代词+of+关系代词”

表示部分与整体概念的代词有 both, all, neither, none, either, some, any, most, few, one, half 等。

He has lots of hobbies, **one of which** is swimming.

他有很多爱好,其中之一是游泳。

The old man has three sons, **all of whom** care about him.

那位老人有三个儿子,他们都关心他。

3. the+名词+of+关系代词

此结构用来代替“whose+名词”,也可用“of which the+名词”。

They do experiments in a lab, **the windows of which/of which the windows/whose windows** face south.

他们在一个窗户朝南的实验室里做实验。

I will talk to those students **the homework of whom/whose homework/of whom the homework** hasn't been done.

我要和没完成作业的学生谈话。

4. 关系副词 when, where, why 可用“介词+which”来代替

I often think of the moment **when** (= **at which**) I saw the sea.

我常常想起我看见大海的那一刻。

The police searched the house **where** (= **in which**) the thief had stayed.

警察搜查了那个小偷曾经待过的房子。

I don't know the reason **why** (= **for which**) he performed so badly.

我不知道他为什么表现得如此差。

四、the way 后的定语从句的关系词

way 表示“方法,方式”时,其后的定语从句有两种情况:

1. the way 的关系词在定语从句中作主语或宾语时,用 that 和 which 均可,作宾语时可省略。

The way (that/which) he thought of to prevent the air pollution was very good.

他想出的防止空气污染的方法非常好。(关系词代替 the way 在定语从句中作 thought of 的宾语)

2. the way 的关系词在定语从句中作方式状语时,用 that 或 in which 均可,现代英语倾向于省略关系词。

I don't like **the way (that/in which)** you speak to your mother.

我不喜欢你同你母亲说话的方式。

「语法冲关」

I. 用“介词+关系代词”填空

1. English is a language shared by several diverse cultures, each of which uses it differently.

2. Wind power is an ancient source of energy to which we may return in the near future.
 3. This is the man from whom I learned a lot in my life.
 4. The woman with whom you shook hands just now is head of our company.
 5. Can you tell me the reason for which you were late again?
 6. He built a telescope through which he could study the stars.

II. 用含有“介词+关系代词”的定语从句合并下列句子

1. This is a field. I used to grow vegetables in that field.
 → This is a field in which I used to grow vegetables.
 2. This is my English teacher. I've learned a lot from her.
 → This is my English teacher from whom I've learned a lot.
 3. The day will come. Ordinary people can travel by spaceship on the day.
 → The day on which ordinary people can travel by spaceship will come.
 4. The newly-built café is really a peaceful place for us. The walls of it are painted light green.
 → The newly-built café of which the walls are painted light green is really a peaceful place for us.

课后素养评价(二十八)

I. 选词填空

basin; desert; barrier; material; mineral; climate; (be) famous for; inside; be located in; priority

1. This area of France has a pleasing climate in August so it's the best time to visit it.
 2. It's raining. We'll have to go inside.
 3. According to the report, two thirds of the country is desert.
 4. Our first stop was Kunming, a city famous for its beautiful scenery and mild (温和的) temperature.

5. When this museum opened, it was located in the centre of town.
 6. His novels are a rich source of material for the movie industry.
 7. Women are more likely to give priority to child care and education.
 8. When I told them I was thirsty, they went and got me a bottle of mineral water.
 9. The Turpan Basin in Xinjiang is the world's lowest-lying one, the lowest point being 154 metres below sea level.

10. His rich experience in other parts of Asia helped him to overcome cultural barriers.

II. 单句语法填空

- Words cannot describe the beauty (beautiful) of the scene.
- There are several main reasons why old buildings should be pulled down and replaced (replace) by new ones.
- During this period, the team should be well structured (structure).
- The house in which he once lived now becomes a shop.
- The man narrowly (narrow) escaped death when a fire broke out in his home this morning.
- A consumer (consume) is a person who buys things or uses services.
- The pen with which he is writing is mine.
- Father never talked about what he did for a living (live).
- They warned him of the dangers of sailing (sail) alone.
- I would like to explain the reason for which I was absent.

III. 阅读理解

A

Have you imagined that planting trees can make a big difference? People say that one man can't make a difference, but Abdul Samad Sheikh, a 60-year-old rickshaw (人力车) driver from Bangladesh, has proved that doing a small thing over a long period of time can mean very much. He has planted at least one tree every day since he was 12 years old, which means that he has so far planted a small forest of over 17,500 trees. Imagine if everyone followed his example.

Abdul has worked as a rickshaw driver for most of his life. He makes a little money from his job, which is only enough to buy food for his family, but he somehow tries to also buy at least one tree every day. He considers it his duty to the world. Mostly he plants them on government land so nobody can cut them down later. He also waters them, and if he sees anyone cutting a tree, he blames them.

Abdul, his wife Jorna, and four of their children live in two old houses, on a piece of land that is owned by the Faridpur deputy commissioner's office. They have no land of their own.

Sometimes, she commands him not to plant trees but he doesn't listen. Abdul's 30-year-old son, Kutub Uddin, has never told his father not to plant trees, because he thinks his father does a good thing for society.

Abdul's neighbours all know about his daily habit, and praise his work. Whoever can ask of him anything, he will do his best to help. Therefore, Abdul is loved by neighbours.

For his efforts, Abdul Samad Sheikh was recently honoured by *The Daily Star*, and given \$1,253 to help him build a better home for his family. *The Daily Star* wished everyone to follow his example, and protect the environment.

"I can't do it alone. I need the help of you all," Abdul said in his speech.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了六十岁的孟加拉国人力车司机 Abdul 每天用自己的钱至少种一棵树的故事,号召更多的人向他学习,保护环境。

- What do we know about Abdul?
 - He doesn't support his family.
 - He plants trees with his own money.
 - He makes a living by doing different jobs.
 - He plants trees to win his neighbours' praise.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“He makes a little money from his job, ... but he somehow tries to also buy at least one tree every day.”可知, Abdul 工作挣的钱很少,但他还是设法每天至少买一棵树,因此 Abdul 是用自己的钱种树。故选 B。
- Why does Abdul plant trees on government land?
 - To get money from government.
 - To set a good example to people.
 - To protect them from being cut down.
 - To get a place from government to build his own house.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“Mostly he plants them on government land so nobody can cut them down later.”可知, Abdul 把树种植在政府的土地上,这样以后就没人能把它砍倒了。由此可推知, Abdul 这样做是为了保护树免遭砍伐。故选 C。

A 结合作者的环保理念并根据语境可推知,作者从朋友那里收集杂志,循环利用。

9. A. serving B. copying
C. observing D. reminding

B 根据后文“One by one, my friends began to turn off the lights... make use of the other 11.”可推知,作者的朋友开始效仿作者,加入环保行动。

10. A. pay B. take
C. feed D. turn

C 根据空后的“paper back into the printer to make use of the other 11”,并结合语境可知,此处应是一种环保做法,即把纸重新放进打印机,使用纸的另一面(side)。feed“把……放进……”。

11. A. sheet B. part
C. version D. side

D 参见上题解析。

12. A. curious B. concerned
C. optimistic D. serious

B 根据该句“It’s not that... drawn to my confidence.”可推知,他们这样做并不是他们关注环境,而是被作者的信心吸引,与上文作者的朋友开始效仿作者,践行环保理念呼应。

13. A. proudly B. politely
C. calmly D. patiently

A 根据上文中的“but they were drawn to my confidence”可推知,作者热衷环保,信心满满,并以此为傲。

14. A. Now that B. Even if
C. Unless D. Before

B 根据语境可知,此处表示即使其他人不能分享你的热情,但他们将羡慕你的信心,并且想成为你那样的人。

15. A. setting B. making
C. giving D. following

D 根据上文“they will envy your confidence and want to be like you”可推知,这意味着人们会被你的信心所感染,效仿你的环保行为。

【微点写作】概要写作

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. It is necessary for us to protect our environment.
对我们来说,保护环境是必要的。
2. There is no doubt that the earth is becoming warmer and that it is human activities that have caused the global warming.
毫无疑问,地球正变得更加暖和,而它正是人类活动所致。
3. It’s our duty to save water.
节约用水是我们的职责。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点;
2. 阅读课文各段内容,准确把握各段主题句,归纳段落大意,厘清文章结构;
3. 能恰当地运用本单元所学知识谈论自己的理想居住地及生活方式,更深刻地认识人与自然的关系,形成合理利用自然、与自然和谐相处的价值观;
4. 辩证地看待问题,能够客观地对事物的优点和不足进行评价。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇和表达的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇和表达

1. publish *v.* 出版

2. expert *adj.* 内行的,专家的

3. branch *n.* 树枝

4. rent *v.* 租用,租借

5. limited *adj.* 有限的

6. benefit *n.* 好处,益处

7. energy *n.* 力量,活力
 8. system *n.* 系统
 9. lead to 导致,引起
 10. allow... to do 允许……做……
 11. be in doubt 怀疑,有疑问
 12. reflect on 考虑,反思

(二) 阅读词汇和表达

1. pleasant *adj.* 令人愉快的
 2. rooftop *n.* 屋顶

3. thistle *n.* 蓟
 4. herb *n.* (用于调味)香草
 5. sunflower *n.* 向日葵
 6. flavour *n.* 味,味道
 7. green fingers 高超的种植技能
 8. free-time activity 业余活动
 9. be at one with 与……融为一体
 10. enter into a competition 参加比赛

「 课文速览 」

表格填空

A Love of Gardening	
The beginning of gardening	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In 1911, only the very 1. rich in Britain had gardens. • Very soon after this, 2. homes with gardens started to be built. • Today, 3. millions of Brits like to say that they have “green fingers”.
Gardening activities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Children plant sunflowers. • 4. Expert gardeners know the right corner for roses. • Others try to grow perfect vegetables to enter into 5. competitions. • Many Brits spend their Sunday 6. cutting the grass. • Some just sit under the branches of the trees and 7. enjoy the beauty of the world around them.
The present situation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Those without outside space can 8. rent small pieces of land. • Over 4,000 people in London are 9. waiting for such pieces of land.
The benefits	Gardening is good for the 10. environment as well as the soul.

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

1. Why does the author use the words of *The Secret Garden*?
- A. Because the author loves the sentences.
 B. Because the author wants to introduce the topic.
 C. Because the author is mentioning facts that are obvious to the readers.
 D. Because the author is not certain about the words.
2. What does the phrase “green fingers” mean according to the text?
- A. Real fingers.
 B. The ability to make plants grow.
 C. Green homes.
 D. Grass.

3. What are the advantages of gardens?

- A. They make cities greener.
 B. They improve air quality.
 C. They are good for the soul.
 D. All the above.

答案: 1~3 BBD

II. 课文语法填空

“If you look the right way, you can see that the whole world is **1. a** garden.” These words come from the book *The Secret Garden*, first **2. published** (publish) in 1911. At that time, only the very rich in Britain **3. had** (have) gardens. However, today, **4. millions** (million) of Brits like to say that they have “green fingers”, with around half the population **5. spending** (spend) most of their free time

gardening. Those without outside space can rent small pieces of land **6. to grow** (grow) things. Today, there **7. are** (be) over 4,000 people in London **8. who/that** are waiting for such pieces of land. One recent idea has been to turn rooftops and walls into private gardens. These gardens have helped make the cities **9. greener** (green) and improve air quality. As well as being good **10. for** the environment, gardening benefits the soul.

III. 阅读升华

1. Why does gardening do good to cities?
Because it can help make cities greener and improve air quality.
2. What is the similarity between gardening and body building exercise?
They are both good for physical and psychological health.
3. Do you like gardening? Why or why not?
I like gardening. When I spend my free time gardening, my heart is calm and I am relaxed.

课后素养评价(二十九)

I. 单词拼写

1. A system (系统) is a way of working, organising, or doing something which follows a fixed plan or set of rules.
2. Rice cake can be made into various other flavours (味道).
3. The young men are expert (内行的) at driving racing cars.
4. Whenever he took a walk outside, he felt bright and cheerful and full of energy (活力).
5. I bought a pleasant (令人愉快的) little apartment when I arrived in England.
6. I couldn't see the benefit (好处) of arguing with him any longer.
7. Cars are allowed, but parking is limited (有限的).
8. We rented (租下) a car to get around the island and had a good time there.
9. I don't think that branch (树枝) will hold your weight.
10. They managed to have a book and an article published (出版).

II. 短语填空

reflect on; lead to; at one with; be in doubt; keep an eye out for

1. There were only five minutes left in the game, but the ending was still in doubt.
2. The strike had already led to cuts in electricity and water supplies (供应) in many areas.
3. The scientist kept/keeps an eye out for some unknown plants in this village.
4. The start of a new year is a good time to reflect on the many achievements of the past.

5. Here in the mountains I feel totally at one with nature.

III. 完成句子

1. London is a huge financial marketplace as well as an important political centre.
伦敦是一个巨大的金融市场,也是一个重要的政治中心。
2. I'd like nothing better than to go to the barbecue with you.
没有比和你一起去烧烤更好的了。
3. The Palace Museum also called the Forbidden City was completed in 1420.
故宫博物院,也被称为紫禁城,于1420年建造完成。

IV. 七选五

Clownfish like to live in coral reefs, but they don't spend their whole lives there. In the first few months after they are born, they "wander" in the open sea. When the baby clownfish grow big enough to swim, they hurry home. They can't see the reef, however. 1

But humans—and their ships, speedboats, energy exploration platforms and even surfing—have made the ocean an unbearably noisy place. 2 In the case of baby clownfish, they make them unable to find their way home.

3 There are still many other sea animals depending on their ability to hear for their survival. They use sounds to sense their environment and to communicate. Dolphins call one another by unique names. Toadfish hum. Whales sing.

Many sea animals swim away from the noises.

4 But slow-moving animals like sea cucumbers (海参) are left helpless. In some places, human-made noises are everywhere. Animals have to permanently move away from these noises to quieter places. They are then forced to compete against others for the same pools of resources. Over time, their populations start to become smaller.

Luckily, the noise is a controllable pollutant. “We know exactly what causes the noise, we know where it is and we know how to stop it,” said Steve Simpson, a biologist in England. **5** Wind-powered boats have been developed. Shipping routes can also be moved away from certain areas. Researchers are calling for stricter rules. “We have noise standards for cars and trucks,” said Carlos Duarte, another biologist. “Why should we not have them for ships?”

- A. Clownfish are not the only ones to suffer.
 B. Many solutions to this problem already exist.
 C. Some animals could swim fast to catch food.
 D. These noises are often louder than the natural

ones.

- E. Instead, they depend on the small noises that a reef lets out.
 F. Whales, for example, can learn to avoid busy shipping routes.
 G. Actually, the ocean has always been home to many clownfish.

答案: 1~5 EDAFB

【微点写作】概要写作

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. More and more people are aware of the necessity of environmental protection.
越来越多的人认识到环境保护的必要性。
2. Gardening can also help children (to) understand the meaning of “No pains, no gains”.
园艺也能帮助孩子们理解“不劳无获”的含义。
3. On arriving at the top of the hill, we were deeply attracted by the beautiful scenery.
一到达山顶,我们就被这里的美丽风景深深吸引住了。

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能自主运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 了解概要写作的文体特点和内容要素,能够运用所学内容进行概要写作,总结文章大意;
3. 深入了解英国人对园艺的热爱和饮用水果茶及花草茶的传统,并联系自身实际,对中外文化都崇尚与自然和谐相处形成跨文化的理解,最终形成亲近自然、崇尚自然、合理利用自然、与自然和谐相处的意识。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. They cut away all the dead **branches** from the tree.
树枝
2. If you don't have enough money to buy a car, you can **rent** one instead.
租用,租借
3. The **system** has been in operation for six months.
系统
4. When the house is burning, it is not safe to stay on the **rooftop**.
屋顶
5. The tomatoes added to the soup give extra **flavour** to it.
味,味道

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>publish</u> <i>v.</i> 出版	<u>publisher</u> <i>n.</i> 出版人(或机构); 发行人(或机构)
<u>limited</u> <i>adj.</i> 有限的	<u>limit</u> <i>v.</i> 限制; 限定 <i>n.</i> 界限; 限度
	<u>limitless</u> <i>adj.</i> 无限制的, 无界限的
<u>benefit</u> <i>n.</i> 好处, 益处	<u>beneficial</u> <i>adj.</i> 有利的, 有用的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>energy</u> <i>n.</i> 力量, 活力	<u>energetic</u> <i>adj.</i> 精力充沛的, 充满活力的
<u>pleasant</u> <i>adj.</i> 令人愉快的	<u>please</u> <i>v.</i> 使高兴; 使欢喜; 使满意; 想, 选择; 喜欢
	<u>pleased</u> <i>adj.</i> 快乐的, 高兴的, 愉快的, 满意的

III. 补全短语

1. lead to 导致, 引起
2. enter into competitions 参加比赛
3. be at one with 与……融为一体
4. be in doubt 怀疑, 有疑问
5. reflect on 考虑, 反思
6. allow... to do 允许……做……

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 过去分词(短语)作定语

These words come from the author of the book *The Secret Garden*, first published in 1911.

这些话出自 1911 年首次出版的《秘密花园》一书的作者。

2. 句型公式: with 复合结构

Today, millions of Brits like to say that they have “green fingers”, with around half the population spending their free time gardening.

如今, 数以百万的英国人喜欢说他们有高超的种植技能, 约有一半的英国人都把空闲时间用在打理花园上。

3. 句型公式: “否定词+比较级”表示最高级

And while many Brits like nothing better than spending their Sunday cutting the grass, some are happy just to sit under the branches of the trees and enjoy the beauty of the world around them. 虽然许多英国人最喜欢在星期天修剪草坪, 但也有的人只是喜欢坐在树下欣赏他们周围世界的美景。

4. 句型公式: 现在分词(短语)作定语

Today, there are over 4,000 people in London waiting for such pieces of land.

现如今, 伦敦有四千多人在等待租用这样的土地。

任务型课堂

1. limited *adj.* 有限的

(教材原文) But in cities, **limited** space has led to people looking for new solutions.

但在城市里, 有限的空间促使人们寻找新的解决方案。

一感 读句子感悟用法

The expenses should **be limited to** what you can really afford.

费用不应超出你们偿还能力的限度。

They **limit** the speed of cars **to** 50 kilometres per hour on this road.

他们限定这条路的车速为每小时 50 千米。

In my opinion, you had better **set a limit to** the expense of your trip.

在我看来, 你们最好给这次旅行的费用定一个限度。

She has to work **within the limits of** a fairly tight budget.

她不得不在相当紧张的预算范围内精打细算。

She has **reached the limit** of her patience.

她已达到了忍耐的极限。

Every child has **limitless** potential for success.

每个孩子都有无限的成功潜能。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) be limited _____ 受限于……, 局限到……
	(2) limit <i>v.</i> 限制; 限定 <i>n.</i> 限制; (常作复数) 范围; 界限
探究结论	limit... _____ ... 把……限定在……范围内
	set a limit to... 对……限定范围
	_____ the limits of 在……范围内
	reach the limit 达到极限
	(3) _____ <i>adj.</i> 无限制的, 无界限的
	(1) to (2) to; within (3) limitless

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① He was born into a poor family, and only received a limited (limit) education in his childhood.

② You should try to limit your speech to five minutes.

③ They did well within the limits (limit) of their knowledge.

④ Scientists have known how to use the limitless (limit) power of the sun.

(2)完成句子

The length of the article should be limited to 400 words or so.

文章的长度应该限制在 400 词左右。

2. benefit n. 好处, 益处

(教材原文)What are the **benefits** of gardening?

园艺有什么好处?

一感 读句子感悟用法

All these activities have sharpened my interpersonal skills and will **benefit** me for life.

所有的这些活动使我提高了沟通技巧, 我将受益终生。

As we know, books are the source of knowledge. I **benefit** a great deal **from** reading.

众所周知, 书是知识的源泉。我从读书中受益匪浅。

The soldier lost his life **for the benefit of** his motherland.

这名士兵为了祖国的利益献出了生命。

Doing exercise every day **is of great benefit to** health.

=Doing exercise every day **is beneficial to** health.
天天做运动对健康有好处。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)benefit sb/sth 使某人或某物受益 benefit _____ ... 从……中受益/获益
	(2)_____ the benefit of 为了……的利益 be _____ benefit to(=be beneficial to) 有益于……,对……有好处
	(3)beneficial <i>adj.</i> 有利的,有益的;受益的
探究结论	(1)from (2)for; of

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

①It can be beneficial (benefit) to share your feelings with someone you trust.

②It is said that yoga is of great benefit to health.

③You can also revise the knowledge at the same time and you are sure to benefit from it.

④China has been pushing the reform of public hospitals for the benefit of all its citizens.

3. “否定词+比较级”表示最高级

(教材原文)And while many Brits like **nothing better than** spending their Sunday cutting the

grass, some are happy just to sit under the branches of the trees and enjoy the beauty of the world around them.

虽然许多英国人最喜欢在星期天修剪草坪,但也有的人只是喜欢坐在树下欣赏他们周围世界的美景。

[句式分析]本句中 nothing better than 为“否定词+比较级”结构,表示最高级的意思,意为“非常……;再没有比……更……的了”。常用的否定词有 no, not, never, nothing, nobody, hardly 等。

一感 读句子感悟用法

—What do you think of the film last night?

—It **couldn't be worse**.

——你觉得昨晚的电影怎么样?

——糟糕透了。

What a wonderful novel! I have **never read a more moving one**.

多么好的一部小说啊!我从来没有读过比这更感人的小说了。

He works **harder than any other worker** in his workshop.

他工作比他车间的任何工人都努力。

In Asia **no** country is **so large as** China.

在亚洲,没有任何国家比中国大。

I have **never seen such a large apple** before.

我以前从未见过如此大的苹果。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	表示最高级意义的常用比较级结构还有:
	(1)否定词+a+比较级+单数名词
	(2)比较级+than+any other+_____/all the other+复数名词/the others/anyone else
	(3)否定词+so/as+原级+as...
探究结论	(4)否定词+such+原级+名词
	(2)名词单数

三评 多维度评价测试

(1)完成句子

I have never heard a better voice than yours.

我从未听到过比你的嗓音更好的了。

(2)一句多译

他是我们班最高的男孩。

→He is taller than any other boy in our class.

→He is taller than all the other boys in our class.

写作探究

概要写作

一、写作指导

本单元的写作任务为概要写作,即基于所给短文写一篇 60 词左右的内容概要。概要写作的原文以说明文或者议论文为主。具体写作要求:在正确理解文章的基础上,在不改变原文中心思想的前提下,用简明、精炼的语句高度浓缩文章的主要内容和观点。

1. 找关键词和主题句,准确理解、分析原文要点,归纳段落大意。
2. 各要点的表达要相对独立。
3. 各要点之间要有适当的衔接。
4. 句型力求简单,每句话要表意明确,无空泛、笼统之词。
5. 尽量使用短句,慎用长难句。例如,尽量少用关系代词 which, who 等引导的定语从句,而采用现在分词和过去分词作定语。
6. 多使用概括性词语,少使用具体描述性词语。

二、典题示例

阅读短文,根据短文内容写一篇 60 词左右的内容概要。

It's a really good idea to visit colleges before you apply because their websites can all start to look and sound the same. Nothing will give you the sense of what it will actually be like to live on a college campus like visiting and seeing for yourself the dorms, classrooms and athletic equipment and, of course, the students. It seems a little crazy once senior year hits to find the time to visit college campus, and it can also be pricey if the schools you are applying to happen to be more than a car ride away. But keep in mind that you are making a decision about the next four years of your life, and do all the research you can to make sure you are making the right one.

There's no excuse not to visit the schools in your local area. In fact, a lot of college applications even ask if you have visited campus, and obviously, if you live across the country that won't be as much of a possibility, but if you live nearby, go check it out!

If campus visits aren't going to happen before you apply, at the very least you should find some time between applying and getting your acceptance letters to visit the schools you'd like to attend. It can save you a lot of heartache if you rule out now the things that you

don't like about certain campuses, things that you wouldn't know unless you actually visit.

Now, if time and money are making it impossible, then check out the online college fairs at CollegeWeekLive. It's a chance to chat online with admissions officers, students and college counsellors (顾问), and it won't cost you a penny! You can register for its online college fair at *collegeweeklive.com*. While visiting an online college fair can't take the place of an actual campus visit, it can be a very useful tool that along with all your other research will help you make an informed decision about which colleges or universities you'd like to attend.

三、审题谋篇

文体	议论文
时态	以一般现在时为主
人称	以第二人称为主
要点	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 在你申请之前参观一下大学是一个好主意 2. 没有理由不去参观你所在地区的学校 3. 你应该在申请和得到录取通知书之间找时间参观学校 4. 如果无法亲自参观,可以登录网站了解相关的信息

四、遣词造句

(一)核心词汇和表达

- ① wise *adj.* 明智的
- ② avoid *v.* 避免
- ③ regretful *adj.* 后悔的;失望的
- ④ in person 亲自
- ⑤ at least 至少
- ⑥ be of great benefit to 对……有很大益处

(二)完成句子

- ① It is a wise choice (一个明智的选择) for you to visit the colleges you are applying to in person (亲自), especially the ones that are close to you (离你近的).
- ② You should at least visit the colleges (至少参观下这些大学) before getting your acceptance letters so that you can avoid being regretful (避免后悔).

③If time and money are your problems, it will be of great benefit (有很大益处的) to go to the online college fairs at CollegeWeekLive.

④You can get necessary information (得到必要的信息) there.

(三)句式升级

①将(二)中句②升级为 in order to 作目的状语的句子

In order to avoid being regretful, you should at least visit the colleges before getting your acceptance letters.

②将(二)中句③和④合并为含有关系副词引导的定语从句的句子

If time and money are your problems, it will be of great benefit to go to the online college fairs at CollegeWeekLive where you can get necessary information.

(四)连句成篇

It is a wise choice for you to visit the colleges you are applying to in person, especially the ones that are close to you.(要点 1)In order to avoid being regretful, you should at least visit the colleges before getting your acceptance letters.(要点 2)If time and money are your problems, it will be of great benefit to go to the online college fairs at CollegeWeekLive where you can get necessary information.(要点 3)

五、学以致用

阅读短文,根据短文内容写一篇 60 词左右的内容概要。

In our modern world, when something wears out, we throw it away and buy a new one. The problem is that countries around the world have growing mountains of rubbish because people are throwing out more rubbish than ever before.

How did we become a throwaway society? First of all, it is now easier to replace an object than to spend time and money to repair it. Thanks to modern manufacturing (制造业) and technology, companies are able to produce products quickly and inexpensively. Products are plentiful and cheap.

Another cause is our love of disposable (一次性的) products. As busy people, we are always

looking for ways to save time and make our lives easier. Companies produce thousands of different kinds of disposable products: paper plates, plastic cups, and cameras, to name a few.

Our appetite for new products also contributes to the problem. We are addicted to buying new things. Advertisements persuade us that newer is better and that we will be happier with the latest products. The result is that we throw away useful possessions to make room for new ones.

All around the world, we can see the consequences of this throwaway lifestyle. Mountains of rubbish just keep getting bigger. To decrease the amount of rubbish and to protect the environment, more governments are requiring people to recycle materials. However, this is not enough to solve the problem.

Maybe there is another way out. We need to repair our possessions instead of throwing them away. We also need to rethink our attitudes about repairing. Repairing our possessions and changing our spending habits may be the best way to reduce the amount of rubbish and take care of our environment.

【参考范文】

With more things thrown away, there is an increasing amount of rubbish worldwide.(要点 1) Some factors may account for this phenomenon.(要点 2)Firstly, compared to repairing, substituting an item is easier due to abundant and cheap goods available.(要点 3)Secondly, our preference for disposable and new products also worsens the problem.(要点 4)The solution lies in recycling materials, and fixing broken objects. But more importantly, we should change our consuming habits.(要点 5)

课后素养评价(三十)

I. 单句语法填空

1. There is no doubt that we will be successful.
2. He offered a suggestion to improve (improve) the plan.
3. Please reflect on your actions.
4. Only a limited (limit) number of places are available.
5. Indeed, it's not a pleasant (please) job but it has to be done.
6. We benefited a lot from the man's expert advice.
7. Keeping a proper balance between study and rest keeps us energetic (energy).
8. Warmer and drier weather leads to dangerous fire conditions.

II. 完成句子

1. There are many countries in Asia, of which China is the largest one.
亚洲有很多国家,中国是其中最大的一个。
2. Yesterday saw the death of the famous actor.
昨天那位著名演员去世了。
3. An article published in the newspaper points out that these free-time activities allow people to be at one with nature.
该报发表的一篇文章指出,这些空闲时间的活动能让人们与大自然融为一体。
4. The government should take measures immediately to prevent the pollution going from bad to worse.
政府应该立即采取措施防止污染进一步恶化。
5. Most workers think that no system is better than this system.
大多数工人认为这个制度是最好的。

III. 语法填空

Gui Haichao, the first Chinese civilian on a spaceflight, reached orbit on Tuesday morning shortly after the spacecraft **1. carrying** (carry) him and another two Shenzhou XVI mission astronauts lifted off from northwestern China.

Sitting inside the Shenzhou XVI spacecraft, Gui and his commander Major General Jing Haipeng and fellow astronaut Colonel Zhu Yangzhu **2. were launched** (launch) by a 20-story-tall Long March 2F carrier rocket

3. that blasted off at 9:31 a. m. at the Jiuquan Satellite Launch Centre in Gobi Desert.

After a short flight, the spaceship was placed **4. into** a low-Earth orbit about 400 kilometres above the planet.

Within hours of the launch, the eight-metric-ton manned craft is due **5. to approach** (approach) and dock with the Tianhe core module of the Tiangong space station.

The crew will then move into the Tiangong to meet **6. their** (they) peers from the Shenzhou XV mission—commander Major General Fei Junlong, Senior Colonel Deng Qingming and Senior Colonel Zhang Lu—who arrived on Nov. 30, 2022. The **7. newly** (new) arrived crew will then take over the massive orbital outpost, one of the world's **8. largest** (large) and most advanced spacecraft, from Fei's team, which will return to Earth in coming days as per schedule.

The Shenzhou XVI crew members will stay inside the Tiangong space station for around five months and are **9. scheduled** (schedule) to return in November. They will carry out several spacewalks during the mission to mount equipment outside the station and also conduct **10. maintenance** (maintain) work, Lin Xiqiang, deputy director of the China Manned Space Agency, said at a news conference on Monday.

IV. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

党的二十大报告提出:“实施生物多样性保护重大工程”。每年的5月22日是“国际生物多样性日”,生物多样性构建了人类生存和发展的基础,是地球生命共同体的血脉和根基。假定你是李华,请写一封倡议书,呼吁全校同学“保护生物,爱护环境”。

注意:1. 80词左右;

2. 可适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

参考词汇:生物多样性 biological diversity

Dear schoolmates,

Yours sincerely,

Li Hua

第二节 概要写作

阅读下面的短文,根据其内容写一篇 60 词左右的内容概要。

Elephants Can Tell

It is easy for us to tell our friends from our enemies. But can other animals do the same? Elephants can! They can use their sense of vision and smell to tell the difference between people who pose a threat and those who do not.

In Kenya, researchers found that elephants react differently to clothing worn by men of the Maasai and Kamba ethnic groups. Young Maasai men kill animals and thus pose a threat to elephants; Kamba men are mainly farmers and are not a danger to elephants.

In an experiment conducted by animal scientists, elephants were first presented with clean clothing or clothing that had been worn for five days by either a Maasai or a Kamba man. When the elephants recognised the smell of clothing worn by a Maasai man, they moved away from the smell faster and took longer to relax than when they recognised the smells of either clothing worn by a Kamba man or clothing that had not been worn at all.

Clothing colour also plays a role, though in a different way. In the same study, when the elephants saw red clothing not worn before, they reacted angrily, as red is typically worn by Maasai men. Rather than running away as they did with the smell, the elephants acted aggressively (攻击性地) towards the red clothing.

The researchers believe that the elephants' emotional reactions are because of their different understanding of the smells and the sights. Smelling

a potential danger means that a threat is nearby and the best thing to do is run away and hide. Seeing a potential threat without its smell means that risk is low. Therefore, instead of showing fear and running away, the elephants express their anger and become aggressive.

【参考范文】

第一节 应用文写作

Dear schoolmates,

International Day for Biological Diversity is on 22nd, May every year.

As I know, there are ten rare plants appearing endangered altogether. The key reason for the extinction is that we human beings are always polluting too much and cutting many more trees for fuel.

Here, I sincerely advocate that we go to school on foot or by bicycle as much as possible every day. Furthermore, we had better make sure those who are ignorant of International Day for Biological Diversity are informed of the danger of creatures' extinction.

Yours sincerely,

Li Hua

第二节 概要写作

Studies have shown that elephants can use their sight and smell to distinguish between those who pose a threat and those who do not. In Kenya, researchers have found that elephants respond differently to clothing worn by Maasai and Kamba people. The colour of clothes also plays a role, though in a different way. The researchers believe that elephants' emotional response is due to their different interpretations of smells and sights.

读后续写技能养成 || 动作描写之头和面

「技能概述」

1. 动作描写之头和面:是指对人的头、耳、面、面颊、额头、喉咙等的动作描写。如点头、摇头、低头、抬头、挠头、转头、额头冒汗、面颊抽搐、面部僵硬、喉咙发紧等。
2. 续写技巧:描写时,可以根据事件发生的具体场景,抓住人头和面的动作特点进行描写,也可以使用一些表达心理的词汇辅助描写头和面的动作。

「范例体悟」

(2022·新高考 I 卷续写) He raised his head, looking at me with confidence in his eyes. For a moment he hesitated, but the idea of beating himself made him gather all his courage to take my hand. Then I nodded to him, giving him a big bright smile.

找出文中对头和面的动作描写并写下来。

raised his head; nodded to him; giving him a big bright smile

「词句储备」

I. 好词积累

1. nod/shake/scratch one's head 点/摇/挠头
2. clear one's head 清醒一下头脑
3. raise/lift one's head 抬起头
4. turn one's head back 转过头
5. stick one's head out 探出头
6. keep one's head down 低下头
7. an oval face 鹅蛋脸
8. a wrinkled face 满是皱纹的脸
9. head for/towards 朝……走去
10. lay one's head on 把头放在……上
11. bury one's head in... 把头埋在……里
12. pull one's head out of 把某人的头从……中拔出来
13. feel one's head spinning 觉得天旋地转
14. hang/drop/lower/bow/bend one's head 低头
15. rest his head on one's shoulder 他把头靠在某人的肩上
16. echo in one's ears 在耳边回响
17. stop one's ears 捂住耳朵;充耳不闻

II. 佳句背诵

1. I shook my head and said no, wondering why she asked such a question.
我摇摇头说没有,不知她为何问这样的问题。
2. Colour rose to her cheeks when she realised she was being watched.
意识到有人在看她,她顿时涨红了脸。
3. He looked very nervous, with big beads of sweat standing out on his forehead.
他看上去很紧张,额上冒着一颗颗大汗珠。
4. He went home with the teacher's warning echoing in his ears.
回家的路上,老师的警告一直在他的耳边回响。
5. They are playing with snow, each with a face red with cold.
他们正在玩雪,个个脸蛋冻得通红。

「技能达标」

I. 完成句子

1. She lowered her head to watch it curiously.
她低下头,好奇地看着它。
2. Kitty just shook her head and ran away shyly.
基蒂只是摇了摇头,害羞地跑开了。
3. Brian nodded his head slightly as he read the note and smiled.
布莱恩读着纸条,微微点了点头,笑了。
4. He turned his head slowly towards me and wiped his tears.
他慢慢地把头转向我,擦了擦眼泪。
5. He buried his head in his hands and couldn't help sobbing.
他双手抱着头,忍不住抽泣起来。

II. 用对头和面的动作描写完成下面的语段

Mary walked slowly to the bus, 1. her head down (头低着), tears in eyes. Her friend John 2. nodded his head (点了点头) and smiled at her. Though she was in a bad mood, she 3. dropped her head (低下头) to hide it and managed a smile. When she got home, she 4. buried her head under the quilt (把头埋在被子下), pretending to be asleep. However, her mother stopped her housework, 5. raising her head (抬起头) with surprise in her eyes. Then Mary rose, sat close to her mother and 6. rested her head on her mother's shoulder (把头靠在她母亲的肩上), weeping.

第六单元质量评估

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

I. 阅读理解(共15小题;每小题2.5分,满分37.5分)

A

If you are travelling in Britain, besides so many world-class things to see and do in London, planning a day trip away from it can also be good.

Stonehenge

Stonehenge consists of a group of large standing stones. The 5,000-year-old stones are one of the world's biggest mysteries (谜) that no one has understood yet. While travelling Stonehenge, you can imagine wildly and decide for yourself how the stones came to be there and why. Although you can't touch the stones, you can walk among them and feel the changes of seasons.

Windsor

Most people visit Windsor to see Windsor Castle, where the Queen spends most of her time. The castle itself could keep you busy for days. The best way to appreciate Windsor Castle is to approach via the Long Walk, a straight road where there are no cars, but you might see some deer.

Oxford

Oxford is best known for its world-famous university. The large student population keeps the university young and fresh, though there's no shortage of history if you want it. Over 30 colleges make up the university itself. A tour of the colleges is a must—*Harry Potter* fans will find many places used in the movies.

Bath

Founded by the Romans, who used the area's springs to create a spa retreat (水疗中心), Bath's now the best tourist attraction of Southwest England. Visitors never miss the Roman Bath Complex, which is divided into four main parts—the Bath House, the Sacred Spring, the Roman Temple and the museum, which displays fascinating finds from the historical ruins of the city.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了几个在英国值得你去参观的地方。

1. What remains a mystery about Stonehenge?

- A. How long it has been there.
- B. Why the stones can't be touched.
- C. Why it changes with seasons.
- D. How the stones came there.

D 细节理解题。根据 **Stonehenge** 中的“While travelling Stonehenge, you can imagine wildly and decide for yourself how the stones came to be there and why.”可知,关于巨石阵的秘密是“石头是怎么来到那里的”。故选 D。

2. If you want to visit some shooting sites (拍摄现场) of *Harry Potter*, where should you go?

- A. London.
- B. Oxford University.
- C. Windsor Castle.
- D. Bath House.

B 细节理解题。根据 **Oxford** 中的“A tour of the colleges is a must—*Harry Potter* fans will find many places used in the movies.”可知,如果你想参观一些《哈利·波特》的拍摄地点,你应该去牛津大学。故选 B。

3. What can we learn from the text?

- A. London is no longer a popular tourist destination.
- B. Visitors will be received by the Queen in Windsor Castle.
- C. The large number of college students adds freshness to Oxford.
- D. The historical ruins of Bath are not worth visiting.

C 推理判断题。根据 **Oxford** 中的“The large student population keeps the university young and fresh, though there's no shortage of history if you want it. Over 30 colleges make up the university itself.”可知,庞大的学生群体给牛津大学增添了新鲜感。故选 C。

B

A Chinese college student cycles over 1,000 kilometres in 19 days to encourage environmental protection.

The college student from central China's Hubei Province cycled over 1,000 kilometres to Shanghai in 19 days to highlight the importance of environmental protection, receiving high praise from related departments.

Huang Xi's journey started on Aug. 3 from Xiaochang county, Hubei, spreading the message of environmental protection to over 5,000 people along his route. Huang said it was not very easy to start a conversation about environmental protection with strangers. "First you have to narrow the distance between you and your audience," he noted. For instance, he would greet people at the roadside and introduce himself and his plan. He told *Shanghai Observer* that the environmental issue was not a good conversation opener because not everyone was interested.

Straw burning (秸秆焚烧) has been a major focus for Huang since his journey began in summer. "Many people don't burn straw because there's a fine (罚款), but not many of them know that burning straw actually pollutes the environment," he said.

Explaining the ban on straw burning, the benefits of sorting of waste as well as the importance of creatures in water and plants protection were the major part of his job on the road.

16 local authorities of environmental protection along Huang's route praised his efforts. "Environmental protection calls for not only governmental efforts but also social efforts," said Chen Bin, an official from Wuhan's environmental department.

Huang shared his experience on social media, which gave him a level of support on his journey.

However, his cycle also drew the bad side of comments. Some said that his journey was only a publicity stunt (作秀), and some even said that in fact, it was a trip that Huang had to make since he ran out of his money at Internet cafes. Huang replied and tried to prove that what they said was not true.

Huang, who studies environmental engineering in college, set off again on Sept. 27 to take part in a training camp held by a centre of environmental protection in Hubei Province. "I will share my

experience of the journey, and hope people will pay more attention to the environment," he said.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述的是大学生黄希通过骑行自行车的活动方式让人们知道保护环境的重要性。

4. What is the purpose of Huang's cycling?

- A. To have a good sightseeing.
- B. To receive high praise from related departments.
- C. To let people know the importance of protecting the environment.
- D. To solve the problem of straw burning.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“The college student from central China's Hubei Province cycled over 1,000 kilometres to Shanghai in 19 days to highlight the importance of environmental protection”可知,黄希骑行自行车到上海是为了让人们知道保护环境的重要性。故选C。

5. What can we learn from the text?

- A. Huang's cycle didn't draw any attention.
- B. What Huang studies in college is related to the environment.
- C. Environmental protection needs only social efforts.
- D. It's a good idea to start a conversation by environmental issues.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“Huang, who studies environmental engineering in college”可知,黄希在大学所学的专业与环境有关。故选B。

6. When did Huang finish the cycling?

- A. On July 3.
- B. On Sep. 27.
- C. On Aug. 22.
- D. On Oct. 3.

C 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容可知,一名中国大学生在十九天内骑行一千多公里,以支持环保。根据第三段第一句“Huang Xi's journey started on Aug. 3 from Xiaochang county”可知,黄希于8月3日从孝昌县出发。由此推知,黄希是在8月22日完成这次骑行的。故选C。

7. What is the attitude of the related departments to the cycling?

- A. They think highly of it.
- B. They disagree with it.
- C. They show no interest in it.
- D. They doubt it.

A 观点态度题。根据第二段中的“receiving high praise from related departments”以及第六段中的“16 local authorities of environmental protection along Huang's route praised his efforts.”可知,当地有关部门对黄希的骑行给予了高度评价。故选A。

C

Do you ever wonder why trees begin to bud (发芽) earlier in some cities? Scientists finally found the answer but it's not very pleasant. New science suggests a relationship between light pollution and the timing when trees produce buds, which signals the arrival of the spring season.

Light pollution is defined by the Lighting Research Centre as the unwanted consequence of outdoor lighting such as street lights. Excessive (过多的) man-made light at night results in disturbed natural cycles, and also prevents the observation of stars and planets at night. But its effect on the environment goes beyond that.

By studying some trees, researchers found out that trees that are more exposed to artificial lighting at night bud up to 7.5 days earlier than those at the natural nighttime setting. And they found out that light had a more significant effect than temperature when the buds came out. The early budding may cause problems for insects, which feed on leaves, and the birds which then feed on them in turn. Professor Richard, who helped lead the research, explained that more than the budding of trees, the study implies the danger to the balance of the ecosystem. "At the moment, caterpillars (毛毛虫) are timed to hatch to make the most of the opportunities to feed on freshly budded leaves, and birds hatch in time to feed on the young caterpillar," he said.

Migratory (迁徙的) birds are also negatively affected by light pollution. The glare might confuse them and make them lose their flying sense. The phenomenon might explain why some birds accidentally knock into buildings.

Such results stress the need to pursue studies that aim to measure the effect of light pollution. If the issue were left to continue, it is estimated that by 2100, spring would begin almost a full month earlier than it does today.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章通过对灯光污染的分析,指出现在春天来得要早一些的原因。

8. What will happen if there is too much man-made light?
- People's eyesight will be damaged.
 - The ecosystem will likely lose its balance.
 - No stars or planets may be observed at night.
 - Animals' living habits may change suddenly.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“Professor Richard, who helped lead the research, explained that more than the budding of trees, the study implies the danger to the balance of the ecosystem.”可知,太多的人造灯光可能使生态系统失去平衡。故选B。

9. How does the early budding affect insects or plants?

- It will cause the rising number of insects.
- It could lead to trees growing fewer leaves.
- It may result in some insects going hungry.
- It might push insects to hatch more slowly.

C 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“The early budding may cause problems for insects, which feed on leaves, and the birds which then feed on them in turn.”可以推断出,早发芽造成了生态系统的失衡,可能导致一些昆虫会被饿死。故选C。

10. What does the author want to tell us in the last paragraph?

- The effect of light pollution is destructive.
- The spring of 2100 will become much longer.
- Light pollution should be taken seriously.
- A further study on light pollution is scheduled.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段中作者的预计,如果这种情况继续下去,2100年的春天会比现在早到一个月。故作者是想告诉我们要认真对待灯光污染这个问题。故选C。

11. What is the suitable title for the passage?

- Why Spring Comes Earlier in Some Cities
- Why Light Pollution Needs to Be Studied
- How Trees' Early Budding Takes Place
- How Much Light Is “Too Much”

A 标题归纳题。本文通过对灯光污染的分析,指出现在春天来得要早一些的原因。故A项“为什么在一些城市春天来得早?”是最佳标题。

D

It was dinner time for the Rangers, a group of mostly indigenous (本地的) Australians who had spent a long day cleaning up the polluted beaches of the continent's northern coast. Soon they would be eating freshly caught fish and seafood cooked under the stars on an open fire, as their ancestors did.

The Rangers are of more than 100 indigenous groups spread across Australia who have taken on the job of protecting the land of their forefathers. In Arnhem Land, they are the protectors of 3,300 square miles of land and sea. They comb the beaches by hand, picking up as much rubbish as possible.

The task is very difficult as each day it delivers waves of new rubbish.

For the Rangers, cleaning the beaches is more than a vacation. For a people whose culture is strongly tied to the land, protecting the environment is equal to preserving their history.

However, colonisation forcefully broke their connection to the land generations ago. Indigenous people were displaced and their cultural practices outlawed. Tens of thousands of years of traditional land management ended, and as a result many parts of the country now face serious disasters from invasive plant and animal species, bush fires and land mismanagement.

In recent years, the government has restored more than 20 percent of Australia's land to indigenous owners. Since 2007, the Indigenous Rangers Organisations have been at work protecting this land.

Luck, one of the few non-indigenous employees working with the Rangers, said the combination of old and new techniques and an appreciation for the culture of indigenous workers has been critical to the programme's success.

"You are working with staff who see the world different to you, so there is a much higher focus on the cultural aspects of work and life," he said.

"Being a ranger is a source of confidence. You feel strong," said Terence, a senior ranger. "Here we still live on the land. The culture is still alive."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇新闻报道。短文报道了澳大利亚土著人——Rangers,他们保护环境,捡拾垃圾,承担着保护祖先土地的任务。对他们来说,保护环境就等于保护他们的历史和他们的文化。少数非土著人也与Rangers工作,一起保护他们的文化。

12. What did indigenous Australians live on in the past?

- A. Rubbish picked up by hand.
- B. Protecting the land.
- C. Catching the fish and seafood.
- D. Invasive plants and animals.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“Soon they would be eating freshly caught fish and seafood cooked under the stars on an open fire, as their ancestors did.”可知,澳大利亚土著居民过去过着以捕鱼和打捞海鲜为生的生活。故选C。

13. What do the Rangers think of cleaning the beaches?

- A. It's a job of their ancestors'.
- B. It's just a vacation.
- C. It's a difficult task.
- D. It's their culture.

D 细节理解题。根据第三段的内容可知,Rangers认为清理海滩就是保护他们的文化。故选D。

14. Why has the government restored the land to indigenous owners?

- A. The polluted land needs better management.
- B. Their cultural practices were outlawed.
- C. The people were too strong.
- D. The land belongs to them.

A 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“Tens of thousands of years of traditional land management ended, and as a result many parts of the country now face serious disasters from invasive plant and animal species, bush fires and land mismanagement.”可知,政府要将土地归还给原住民是因为被污染的土地需要他们更好的管理。故选A。

15. What can we learn from the last three paragraphs?

- A. Not many employees are the indigenous Australians.
- B. Culture is important to the indigenous Australians.
- C. Their new techniques are successful.
- D. Both Luck and Terence are rangers.

B 推理判断题。根据短文倒数三段的内容可知,文化对澳大利亚土著居民很重要。故选B。

II. 七选五(共5小题;每小题2.5分,满分12.5分)

Many of the vegetables we grow in our gardens produce seeds (种子), which can grow into plants if collected and stored correctly. Late summer is the perfect time to start collecting them.

Make sure the seeds are from plants that you have planted well for many years. These are plants in their normal forms. 16

Hybridised (杂交) plants usually produce the vegetables sold in big food stores. They are created from two or more different kinds of plants to get the best qualities of each. Trying to grow seeds from these plants will not lead to happy results. This kind of plants will not have the expected results but

B 根据上下文可以判断“一次,我回家看望父母,我发现父母卧室里的那个坛子不见了”。故 B 项符合语境。

29. A. gone B. empty
C. dirty D. lost

A 根据语境可知, gone 为正确答案。

30. A. checked B. searched
C. stared D. found

C 句意:我盯着梳妆台旁曾经放坛子的地方,喉咙一阵哽咽。stare 意为“凝视;盯着看”,符合语境。

31. A. words B. smiles
C. ideas D. stories

A 根据下文提到的“爸爸从来不会给我讲决心和信仰的重要性”可知,爸爸不善言语。a man of few words“沉默寡言的人”。

32. A. similarities B. differences
C. standards D. values

D 根据语境可知, value 为正确答案。

33. A. beliefs B. virtues
C. thoughts D. experiences

B 根据前后句的逻辑关系可知此处表示“咸菜坛子教会了我所有的美德”。virtue 意为“美德;优点”。

34. A. loved B. required
C. pushed D. understood

A 句意:在我心里,它比任何东西都更能表达父亲对我的爱。

35. A. dull B. easy
C. tough D. wrong

C 句意:无论家里过得多么艰难,爸爸始终坚持把他的硬币投进坛子里。tough 意为“艰苦的;艰难的”。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Kierman was born in Sydney, Australia, and

36. grew (grow) up near the sea. For more than 40 years, he raced in many international sailing competitions.

While taking part in 37. an important race in 1987 Kierman began to notice the huge amount of

rubbish in the world's oceans. 38. It was at that moment that he decided to do something about it.

He organised a community event called “Clean Up Sydney Harbour”. On Sunday, January 8, 1989, more than 40,000 volunteers came out 39. to clear (clear) away rubbish. The next year, Kierman made the clean-up a national event, 40. which turned out to be a huge success. Across Australia, about 300,000 people spent the day 41. improving (improve) their local environment.

Since then, “Clean Up Australia” has got 42. bigger (big) year by year. In 2002, for example, 800,000 people cleaned up almost 1,500 tons of rubbish from Australia's beaches, parks and streets.

Inspired by the 43. success (succeed) of his project, Kierman started an even bigger programme. With the help of the United Nations Environment Programme, he introduced “Clean Up the World” 44. to other parts of the world. “Clean Up the World” has been growing 45. rapidly (rapid) and his wonderful idea has now spread from one city to the whole world.

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假定你是李华,你的英语老师 Ms Li 下个月就要退休了。你得知她喜欢园艺,想送给她一些特别的植物种子作为她的退休礼物。请你用英语给她写一张明信片,和礼物一起送给她。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 可适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

Dear Ms Li,

I've heard that you are going to retire soon. _____

Wish you a happy retirement and we'll miss you.

Best regards,

Li Hua

第二节 概要写作(满分 25 分)

阅读下面的短文,根据其内容写一篇 60 词左右的内容概要。

Only three percent of water on Earth is fresh water and the majority of it exists in the forms of

glaciers (冰川) and the polar ice caps. This leaves most people on Earth to depend on rivers, lakes and groundwater. These water resources are becoming subjects of increasing problems.

At one time, there was not a great deal of attention paid to water resources for humans. In modern times, however, people are beginning to realise that the subjects cannot be ignored. Experts foresee problems for much larger portions (部分) of the population in the future if prevention measures are not taken.

There are a number of things that are responsible for the present water problems. Pollution, climate change and urbanisation (城市化) are a few of the common examples.

Pollution involves (涉及) people dirtying their water resources. Dealing with pollution often is not simple. In some cases, even when it is technically possible, there is a lack of resources to do so.

Climate change is affecting resources by causing rivers and lakes to dry up. Many of these water resources have been used for centuries to support household and agricultural uses.

Urbanisation affects water resources because many cities are growing but their water supplies are not. More people living in one place means that the water requirements in that place are greater. Unfortunately, it is not a choice to make limitless supplies of water available to them.

Saltwater sources can in some cases be used as water resources. This is done by way of a process known as desalination (脱盐). This is an expensive process, so it is not generally promoted as a solution for water problems.

Much effort is being invested (投入) by governments and civil society organisations to make people aware of the issues surrounding water resources for humans. Tips and solutions often are offered to educate people on how to change their habits. It is generally believed that sustainable solutions much include the efforts of all levels of society.

【参考范文】

第一节 应用文写作

Dear Ms Li,

I've heard that you are going to retire soon. And I'd like to express my gratitude. Thank you so much for being such a wonderful teacher to me in the last three years.

I know that you like gardening, so you will be able to spend more time on your favourite hobby after you retire. As we have many unusual plants in my hometown, I'd like to send you some seeds as a gift which you can grow in your garden. I believe you'll have a surprise when you find out what they are.

Wish you a happy retirement and we'll miss you.

Best regards,

Li Hua

第二节 概要写作

As most of the fresh water exists in polar regions, rivers, lakes and groundwater are the only resources available to people for fresh water. However, many problems about these resources have arisen, which, unless properly dealt with, will affect people's lives. Pollution, climate change, and urbanisation are common contributors to these problems.

Since desalination is generally not practical, the whole society should educate people on how to protect water resources.

B

When my son first began competing in school chess tournaments, I often chatted with other parents. Occasionally, I would ask if they played chess themselves. Normally, the reply was no. When I volunteered that I was learning to play, their tone was cheerfully joking, “Good luck with that!” If this game is so good, why are adults ignoring it? Seeing someone playing smartphone games, I preferred to say, “Why are you having your kids do chess while you play?”

Sure, we parents had work to do, work that helped pay for the lessons our kids were enjoying. But I was also wondering if we were sending an unnoticeable message that learning was for the young. During one tournament, I saw a group of parents playing chess! Just then, a group of kids passed me. “Why are adults learning chess?” one asked, in an apparently joking tone.

I was tired of sitting on the sidelines. I wanted in, and that is why I got a membership card and started throwing myself in. “Early on, I was nervous, even the master can sometimes play badly,” as one grandmaster put it “a fan never”. And a fan I was. It was three hours of concentration and thinking with my phone off. It felt like a gym where I was trained to solve problems with focus, memory, logic and occasional headaches. And of course hours of absence of digital devices would never be no good for thinking sharply.

Being a beginner can be hard at any age, but it gets harder when you are older. The phrase “adult beginner” has an fairly gentle pity. It implies the learning of something that you should have perhaps already learned.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者通过和其他家长聊国际象棋时得到启发,下决心学下国际象棋并使自己的大脑得到锻炼的故事。

4. What can we learn about other parents from their remarks?

- A. They were ignoring other learners.
B. They agreed on the idea of learning chess.
C. They thought it odd for an adult to learn chess.
D. They gave congratulations to the adult lessons.

C 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“When I volunteered that I was learning to play, their tone was cheerfully joking, ‘Good luck with that!’ If this game is so good, why are adults ignoring it?”可知,这些家长开玩笑是觉得成年人学国际象棋很奇怪。故选C。

5. How did the child in the second paragraph perceive adults learning chess?

- A. Laughable. B. Unimaginable.
C. Understandable. D. Sensible.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Just then, a group of kids passed me. ‘Why are adults learning chess?’ one asked, in an apparently joking tone.”可知,孩子们是在开玩笑,由此可以推断,孩子们认为成年人学国际象棋这件事情很可笑。故选A。

6. What do the underlined words “sitting on the sidelines” mean in Paragraph 3?

- A. Not being noticed.
B. Not being involved.
C. Expressing confusing ideas.
D. Following what others do.

B 词义猜测题。根据第三段中的“I wanted in, and that is why I got a membership card and started throwing myself in.”可知,作者想学习国际象棋,并加入到学习国际象棋的队伍当中。跟前文的tired of“厌倦”形成对比。由此推测,作者应该是厌倦了坐在旁边看着大家下国际象棋的生活,想要加入。B项“不参与其中”符合句意。故选B。

7. What did the writer think of his experience of learning to play chess?

- A. It helped him remain calm.
B. It helped him train his brain.
C. It made him proud of himself.
D. It made him look rather funny.

B 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的 “It felt like a gym where I was trained to solve problems with focus, memory, logic and occasional headaches.” 可知, 下国际象棋就像是把自己的脑子带去健身房接受训练来解决问题。故选 B。

C

It was a large fish market northwest of Mumbai. Shark fins were sent onto tables. Tens of millions of sharks are killed for the fin trade every year, and a quarter of the world's sharks, rays, and ghost sharks are in danger. The international trade in many species is not allowed, but it can be nearly impossible for wildlife officials to tell whether the fins here are from protected species.

The samples could be sent to a lab for DNA testing, but the test would take a full day. But Shaili Johri, a post doctoral biology researcher at San Diego State University, had a handheld device, or tool, that can say what species a part belongs to in a short time, using only a small tissue (组织) sample. The gene sequencing (基因序列测定) done by the MinION device, which she was testing out at the fish market, is a promising new tool to help fight the illegal shark fin trade.

Johri with another author recently published a study in the journal *Scientific Reports* explaining the first use of the new device for keeping sharks and other wild animals safe from attacks. The smartphone-sized device is made by UK-based Oxford Nanopore Technologies. It has been used for the recognition of Ebola virus, among others. It is also likely to help prevent wildlife crime.

It requires a small tissue sample and a laptop. It can tell a species in three or four hours. But it has one downside: the tool costs \$1,000, including two original cartridges (测试盒). Every following sequencing cartridge, which can do 12 samples at once, costs an extra \$500. That's roughly \$42 per sample. The traditional DNA analysis method costs as little as \$5 a sample.

Hollie Booth, a sharks and rays advisor, says the MinION could have lots of practical uses, including controlling wildlife trade across countries or illegal fishing in markets. And the possibilities of this device aren't just limited to sharks. These tools could be used to recognise elephant ivory, pangolin scales, and various other wildlife.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了基因测序仪可以用于基因测序, 打击非法鱼翅交易, 还可以用来保护其他野生动物。

8. What did Johri use the MinION for at the fish market?

- A. Collecting tissue from endangered fish.
- B. Discovering sharks' gene sequences.
- C. Recognising the species of a shark.
- D. Saving sharks from losing their fins.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的 “But Shaili Johri, a post doctoral biology researcher at San Diego State University, had a handheld device, or tool, that can say what species a part belongs to in a short time, using only a small tissue (组织) sample.” 可知, Johri 在鱼市上使用 MinION 辨别鲨鱼的种类。故选 C。

9. What does the new study mainly tell us about the MinION?

- A. How it can help reduce wildlife crime.
- B. Its use for wildlife protection purposes.
- C. How it was developed by a UK company.
- D. Its influence on different scientific fields.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的 “Johri with another author recently published a study in the journal *Scientific Reports* explaining the first use of the new device for keeping sharks and other wild animals safe from attacks.” 可知, 这项新的研究主要介绍了使用 MinION 这种新装置的目的是保护野生动物。故选 B。

10. What is a disadvantage of the MinION?

- A. It makes mistakes at times.
- B. It requires more time.
- C. It is hard to use.
- D. It is expensive.

D 推理判断题。根据第四段中的“*But it has one downside; the tool costs \$1,000, including two original cartridges (测试盒). Every following sequencing cartridge, which can do 12 samples at once, costs an extra \$500. That’s roughly \$42 per sample. The traditional DNA analysis method costs as little as \$5 a sample.*”可知,MinION 的缺点是价格高。故选 D。

11. What does Booth probably think of the MinION?

- A. It will save many kinds of animals.
- B. It should be used after further research.
- C. It must make technological improvements.
- D. It needs more support from wildlife officials.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“*Hollie Booth, a sharks and rays advisor, says the MinION could have lots of practical uses, including controlling wildlife trade across countries or illegal fishing in markets. And the possibilities of this device aren’t just limited to sharks.*”可知,Booth 认为 MinION 能够拯救许多种类的动物。故选 A。

D

To make artificial intelligence that can reason and apply knowledge flexibly, many researchers are focused on fresh ideas from neuroscience (神经科学). Should they be looking to psychology too? Researchers are working to develop new AI systems that can figure out simple abstract relations between objects and the reason behind them as effortlessly as a human brain.

Artificial intelligence has come a long way. In recent years, smart machines inspired by the human brain have shown superhuman abilities in games like chess and Go, proved remarkably expert at imitating some of our language skills. But with various other aspects of what we might reasonably call human intelligence—reasoning, understanding causality (因果关系), applying knowledge flexibly, to name a few—AI still struggles. They are also

inefficient learners, requiring large amounts of data where humans need only a few examples.

Some researchers think all we need to bridge the gap is ever larger AI, while others want to turn back to nature’s blueprint. One path is to double down on efforts to copy the brain, better replicating (复制) the intricacies of real brain cells and the ways their activity is arranged. But the brain is the most complex object in the known universe and it is far from clear how much of its complexity we need to replicate to reproduce its capabilities.

That’s why some believe more abstract ideas about how intelligence works can provide shortcuts. Their claim is that to really accelerate the progress of AI towards something that we can say thinks like a human, we need to imitate not the brain—but the mind. “In some sense, they’re just different ways of looking at the same thing, but sometimes it’s profitable to do that,” says Gary Marcus at New York University and start-up Robust AI. “You don’t want a replica, what you want is to learn the principles that allow the brain to be as effective as it is.”

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。文章主要讨论了如何让人工智能更加智能化,可以像人类的大脑一样思考。

12. What do we know about the current AI?

- A. They are good at reasoning.
- B. They have amazing learning ability.
- C. They can’t understand complex information.
- D. They lack some elements of real intelligence.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“*But with various other aspects of what we might reasonably call human intelligence—reasoning, understanding causality (因果关系), applying knowledge flexibly, to name a few—AI still struggles.*”可知,目前的 AI 在推理、理解因果关系和灵活运用知识等方面还很困难,所以它们缺乏人类真正智慧的一些关键要素。故选 D。

13. What can we infer from Paragraph 3?
- A. People fail to understand the complexity of the brain.
 B. Scientists need to focus on the structure of the brain.
 C. The attempt to copy the brain might be unrealistic.
 D. Scientists are doubtful about the future of AI.
- C 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“*But the brain is the most complex object in the known universe and it is far from clear how much of its complexity we need to replicate to reproduce its capabilities.*”可知,人脑是目前宇宙中最复杂的事物,我们远不清楚我们要多么精细地复制大脑才能复制大脑的能力,所以复制大脑是不现实的。故选 C。
14. What does Gary Marcus suggest researchers do to advance AI?
- A. Make AI more creative.
 B. Teach more principles to AI.
 C. Study how intelligence works.
 D. Update their knowledge constantly.
- C 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“*You don't want a replica, what you want is to learn the principles that allow the brain to be as effective as it is.*”可知,Gary Marcus 认为我们并不需要一个大脑的复制品,而是需要了解大脑产生智能的原理。故选 C。
15. What is a suitable title for the text?
- A. Are the Smart Machines Intelligent Enough?
 B. Make Machine Minds That Really Think like Us
 C. What to Expect with the Future of AI Technology
 D. The Future of AI? Psychology May Provide Fresh Ideas
- B 标题归纳题。根据第一段最后一句“*Researchers are working to develop new AI systems that can figure out simple abstract relations between objects and the reason behind*

them as effortlessly as a human brain.”可知,文章主要讨论了如何才能让 AI 像人类的大脑一样思考。故选 B。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

How can teenagers keep themselves from suffering from loneliness? Here are some suggestions for speeding a recovery from loneliness.

16 A smile and a friendly greeting for the student behind you in line at the cafeteria (自助餐厅) won't make you best friends. But it will make you both feel good. It can also make it easier to interact the next time, and the time after that.

Find a safe place to make connections. If going to the dancing party makes you feel like you just don't belong, try joining a special-interest group.

17 Just because you feel left out in one group doesn't mean you'll feel like an outsider in every other one. Look for a group that allows you to feel comfortable gradually.

Find other ways of making connections. Lonely people hunger for friendship. Sometimes feeling accepted and liked comes more easily when you do something for others rather than wait for them to make you feel better. 18 Teach a child in reading. Take notes for a disabled classmate. You might be surprised at the connections you make.

19 Loneliness is an absence of quality friendship, not of a particular quantity of friends. That's why it's important to know how to select a friend. The best friendships are those based on similar values and attitudes.

You get what you expect, so expect the best. If you expect others to be friendly, you will behave in proper ways that encourage people to be friendlier to you. Loneliness won't last long. 20

- A. Choose the right people.
 B. So consider becoming a volunteer.
 C. Reach out to others but start small.
 D. It can be hard work to be positive towards others.

- E. Maybe it's the drama club or the marching band.
 F. This harmful attitude can continue into adulthood.
 G. But starting the first step of positive expectations can make all the difference.

答案:16~20 CE BAG

III. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 15 分)

After two years of online learning, I started middle school in person a few weeks ago. Since there was a big gap of online school, the middle school decided to give 21 lunches to all students.

Of course, you could 22 whether you wanted to take a meal from home or eat the school's meal. I took something from 23, while some of my friends had 24 from school. No matter if you had lunch from home or school, everyone knew that the school's juices that came with the lunch were 25.

Almost half the 26 school would just get the box of juice, including my friends and me. Today, like every day at lunch, my friends and I were 27 in line to get our juices. When we got to the front of the line and 28 the juices, the cashier said each juice is seventy-five cents.

We were 29 because we had gotten juices many times before this. 30 this I ran to my backpack to get some 31. I thought my friends would do the same, but they were just 32 there looking disappointed. I asked them what happened and they said none of them had any money.

As I looked at their faces, something in me 33. I felt like it was my 34 to get them the juices.

I immediately ran back to the lunch line and 35 the juices. When I returned to them with the juices, they were so happy. The feeling I felt there at that moment was better than any juice.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者为朋友们掏钱买果汁的暖心故事。

21. A. big B. free
 C. small D. fresh

B 根据下文的“the cashier said each juice is seventy-five cents”以及“I asked them what happened and they said none of them had any money.”可推知,此处指学校的餐食原来是免费的,所以学生们跟往常一样前去打饭时才没有带钱。故选 B。

22. A. refuse B. doubt
 C. realise D. choose

D 根据后文“whether you wanted to take a meal from home or eat the school's meal”可推知,此处指学生可以在从家里带饭和吃学校的饭之间做选择。故选 D。

23. A. home B. tables
 C. stores D. restaurants

A 根据前文“you could 22 whether you wanted to take a meal from home or eat the school's meal”以及后文“while some of my friends had 24 from school”可推知,此处指作者的一些朋友在学校吃饭,而作者从家里带饭。故选 A。

24. A. breakfast B. tea
 C. lunch D. supper

C 根据后文“No matter if you had lunch from home or school”可推知,此处指作者的一些朋友在学校吃午餐。故选 C。

25. A. terrible B. salty
 C. hot D. amazing

D 根据后文“Almost half the 26 school would just get the box of juice, including my friends and me.”可推知,此处指学校的果汁味道不错,很多学生都喜欢。故选 D。

26. A. quiet B. entire
 C. active D. crowded

B 根据前文“everyone knew that the school's juices that came with the lunch were 25”、空前的“Almost half the”和空后的“school would just get the box of juice, including my friends and me”可推知,此处指果汁的味道很棒,几乎全校一半的人喝学校的果汁。故选 B。

27. A. waiting B. walking
 C. talking D. leaving

A 根据空后的“in line to get our juices”可推知,此处指作者和朋友们排队等待着领取果汁。故选 A。

28. A. accepted B. bought
C. asked for D. handed in

C 根据前文“my friends and I were 27 in line to get our juices”以及空前的“we got to the front of the line”可推知,此处指作者与朋友们排队到柜台前面是为了领取果汁。故选 C。

29. A. worried B. surprised
C. excited D. concerned

B 根据前文“the cashier said each juice is seventy-five cents”可推知,果汁原来是免费的,现在变成了收费的,所以作者和朋友们应该很惊讶。故选 B。

30. A. Forgetting B. Ignoring
C. Abandoning D. Hearing

D 根据前文收银员的话以及空后的“I ran to my backpack”可推知,此处指作者听到果汁收费后的动作。故选 D。

31. A. money B. paper
C. food D. medicine

A 根据前文“each juice is seventy-five cents”“30 this I ran to my backpack”以及后文“they said none of them had any money”可推知,此处指作者听到果汁要收费的消息后立马跑回去拿钱。故选 A。

32. A. moving B. standing
C. reading D. reflecting

B 根据后文“looking disappointed. I asked them what happened and they said none of them had any money”可推知,此处指作者的朋友们因为没钱,所以很失望地站在原地,没有其他动作。故选 B。

33. A. ran off B. started out
C. moved away D. kicked in

D 根据后文“I felt like it was my 34 to get them the juices.”可推知,此处指作者看到朋友们的表情后,头脑中产生了某种想法。故选 D。

34. A. duty B. plan
C. wish D. decision

A 根据前文“something in me 33”、空后的“to get them the juices”和下文的“The feeling I felt there at that moment was better than any juice.”可推知,此处指作者认为为朋友们买果汁是自己的使命。故选 A。

35. A. got B. missed
C. paid for D. looked for

C 根据后文“When I returned to them with the juices”可推知,此处指作者支付了果汁的钱,为朋友们买了果汁。故选 C。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Chess is a game of make-believe kings and queens, pawns (卒) and rooks (车). For 12-year-old Andre, chess is more **36. than** just a game.

He uses what he learned on the chessboard in real life, like, think before you move. He's just one of the students from some of Los Angeles's toughest neighbourhoods **37. learning** (learn) to play.

Damen Fletcher, **38. who** learned how to play chess at age 13, grew up in Compton. After leaving the city **39. to attend** (attend) college, he came home to find his **40. childhood** (child) friends struggling.

“Some of **41. them** (they) had even fallen into prison (牢狱). I just wondered, ‘Why did I have such a different result?’ And it was chess,” he said.

He started Train of Thought to help kids of all **42. ages** (age) find their inner king or queen.

“Every game of chess is 75 to 100 moves, and every single move that your opponent (对手) makes presents **43. a** new problem for you to solve,” he said.

So, how does Fletcher teach a 5-year-old how to play chess?

“We have a really **44. interesting** (interest) story that we use to help kids that age set up a chessboard for the first time,” Fletcher said. “It goes: the king and the queen got married. They **45. rode** (ride) on horses to their castle (城堡) and had eight children.”

V. 写作(共两节, 满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假定你是李华, 是一名英美文学爱好者。最近, 你在学习英语诗歌时, 遇到了一些困难。请给你校的外教琼斯先生写一封求助信。内容包括:

1. 发出求助;
2. 陈述你的问题;
3. 希望他提供帮助。

注意: 1. 80 词左右;

2. 可适当增加细节, 使行文连贯。

Dear Mr Jones,

Looking forward to your early reply.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读下面的材料, 根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段, 使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Waking up, I looked at the overcast sky, thought a bit and then decided to go to work after all. This was two years ago, when I worked at a bank. As I travelled from my house, it kept raining. I reached the office quite smoothly, but a few hours later, our phones started buzzing with news of flooding in various parts of the city.

Looking out of the window, my colleagues and I found that the steady drizzle had grown into a downpour. We got a bit nervous, since none of us in the city have forgotten the city's worst floods a decade ago.

At about 12:30 p. m., after an alert from the city government, the bank let the staff leave early. Some colleagues, who had already left, called to say that they were stranded (滞留). The train services had been blocked and there were not other means of transportation available either. A senior colleague,

who happened to live in the same district, offered me a lift in his car. I agreed happily, and so did other colleagues, since it would have been crazy to walk into the driving rain.

The rain poured down continuously, with waist-high flood soon on the road. In the midway, the rainwater reached our car's engine. We had no option but to park nearby. The only dry place we found was under a giant tree. We also spotted a tea stall nearby and got ourselves some much-needed tea and refreshments.

All along, I got anxious phone calls from my wife and parents, who were tracking the flood situation on TV. We looked up weather updates on our mobile phones and got more and more tense—home seemed far away. If it had not been for my portable (便携的) power bank, all our phones would have been dead.

Our train of thoughts was suddenly interrupted by a raised voice. We looked up and found a lady calling out from the balcony of a building behind us. "Please come in and make yourselves comfortable. How long will you stand out there?" she shouted out. We thanked her, but continued to wait.

注意: 续写 150 词左右。

After half an hour or so, I felt a touch on my shoulder. _____

We didn't want further favours, but the family seemed to sense our must to spend the night. _____

【参考范文】

第一节 应用文写作

Dear Mr Jones,

I'm Li Hua, a member of English and American Literature Club. I'm writing to ask you for some help.

Actually I am a fan of English and American literature, so I like your class very much. Unfortunately, I have met some difficulty in learning English poetry recently. For example, there are so many new words in the poems that it is difficult for me to understand them. What's more, I cannot find exact Chinese for some poems. Would you be so kind as to offer some advice on how to learn English poetry?

Looking forward to your early reply.

Yours,
Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

After half an hour or so, I felt a touch on my shoulder. A lady living nearby came with her brother. They persuaded us to follow them. We were pleased to meet the Bhosale family. Grateful

for everything, we assured them that we would leave as soon as the waters receded. However, the family insisted that we have dinner that was being cooked for us. Much to our surprise, we met around 12 other people, who had been accommodated just like we were.

We didn't want further favours, but the family seemed to sense our must to spend the night. Despite our hesitation, they brought in carpets and mats, spread them out and asked us to make ourselves comfortable. We were simply touched by their kindness. At about 4 a. m., the flood waters finally started to recede. Extremely relieved at this, we started heading out. Not wanting to disturb our sleeping hosts, we quietly slipped a thank-you note under their door and left.

综合检测(二)

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

I. 阅读理解(共15小题;每小题2.5分,满分37.5分)

A

Welcome to Pocono Whitewater

There's something fun here at Pocono Whitewater for every level of adventurer! We have mild (柔和) to wild whitewater rafting (漂流), family trips, and birdwatching boating. Choose one adventure now. It's up to you! We have trips available daily. Give us a call today!

Dam Release Whitewater Rafting

Experience the best whitewater on the Lehigh River! Surrounded by forests and mountains, you will enjoy 12 miles and 5 hours of Class (等级) III whitewater rafting and outstanding scenery. This is a fun and thrilling (激动人心的) trip that everyone over the age of 12 can make. While paddling (划桨行进) in the swift water, you'll shout and laugh.

Dam Release Whitewater Rafting Rates:

- ★ Individual (over the age of 12): \$61.00
- ★ Group (at least 8 persons): \$31.00

Rates Include: all necessary rafting equipment, life jackets, free parking, bus service to/from the river and professional river guides.

Family Style Whitewater Rafting

Bring along the whole family this summer and enjoy 8 miles and 5 hours of Class I whitewater rafting. Mild water of the Lehigh River is simply perfect for beginners, school groups, and kids aged 4 and older. This is just perfect for enjoying the passing scenery, kicking your feet over the edge of the raft, or taking a swim in the river!

One of the most unique things about this trip is a free riverside barbeque (烧烤)! Our workers will cook and serve you a picnic lunch—hotdogs, potato salad, fruit, etc. The classic family picnic!

Family Style Whitewater Rafting Rates:

★ Adult: \$ 39.00

★ Child (aged 4—14): \$ 33.00

★ Group (at least 8 persons): \$ 30.00

Rates Include: all necessary rafting equipment, life jackets, free parking, bus service to/from the river, and a barbeque lunch, river guides not included.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了 Pocono Whitewater 提供的夏日漂流休闲活动及其票价等具体信息。

1. What can we infer from the passage?

- A. The higher the class is, the milder the water is.
 B. The lower the class is, the milder the water is.
 C. The higher the class is, the safer the rafting is.
 D. The lower the class is, the faster the rafting is.

B 推理判断题。根据 **Family Style Whitewater Rafting** 中的“Bring along the whole family this summer and enjoy 8 miles and 5 hours of Class I whitewater rafting. Mild water of the Lehigh River is simply perfect for beginners”可知,等级 I 的水流适合初学者,由此推知,等级越低,水流越柔和,故 B 项正确。

2. If 10 college students are to participate in the Dam Release Whitewater Rafting, how much money will be paid in total?

- A. \$ 610. B. \$ 330.
 C. \$ 390. D. \$ 310.

D 细节理解题。根据 **Dam Release Whitewater Rafting Rates:** 中的“Group (at least 8 persons): \$ 31.00”可知,8 人以上的团体票价为每人 31 美元,10 个大学生共需要花 310 美元,故 D 项正确。

3. In which aspect is Family Style Whitewater Rafting unique?

- A. It allows people to swim in the river.
 B. The river water is very clean.
 C. It provides a barbeque lunch for free.
 D. It offers a free birdwatching activity.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Family Style Whitewater Rafting** 中的“*One of the most unique things about this trip is a free riverside barbeque (烧烤)!*”可知,家庭风格的漂流的特别之处是有一个免费的午餐烧烤,故 C 项正确。

B

From climbing a human ladder to swimming with the crocodiles (鳄鱼), there's nothing this Spanish botanist wouldn't do in the name of plants.

Carlos Magdalena the Spanish botanist tried to ignore the “Crocodile Danger” sign as he walked into the lagoon. Based in the hot houses and labs of London's Kew Gardens, he thought he'd spotted a new waterlily species and it wouldn't be the first time he'd risked his life doing his job. His mission is to save the world's most endangered plants. As well as Harrison Ford's film character, the great gardener is also known as the Messiah, the Code Breaker and the Plant Whisperer. He's suffered dehydration in the planet's largest desert, driven through rivers to reach an uncommon vegetation and experienced sickness in the Peruvian Andes, where he climbed a human ladder next to a towering drop to reach a rare flower.

“Directly or indirectly plants provide the air we breathe, medicines, clothes, shelter, food and drink,” he says in a firm voice. “Without them we wouldn't be here. It's as simple as that.”

Carlos grew up rolling the peaks and valleys of northern Spain in search of natural wonders but quickly learned all was not well.

There are some 400,000 plant species, with many more waiting to be discovered, and it's estimated that a quarter of them are facing dangers of dying out. “They need our help and we should use whatever means possible to ensure their survival.”

Often peering into microscope late into night, Carlos marked himself out in the botanic world. Before long he came to understand that plants have a way of talking and to understand their needs, you

had to listen to them. His work was daunting (令人却步的) but he eventually triumphed. “It was like scoring the winning goal in a World Cup final,” he says.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了西班牙植物学家 Carlos Magdalena 从小就喜欢植物, 并且为保护和拯救植物不畏艰险, 克服困难并取得重大成就的故事。

4. What does the underlined sentence in Paragraph 2 suggest?

- A. He was good at gardening.
- B. He played a role in the film.
- C. He was famous for his plant-saving work.
- D. He got along very well with the other three.

C 句意理解题。根据第二段画线部分的前一句 “His mission is to save the world’s most endangered plants.” 可知, 画线句子说明, Carlos Magdalena 这个伟大的植物呵护者不仅被拍成了电影, 他也作为 (植物) 救世主、解码人、植物耳语者一样非常有名, 因此他以拯救植物而闻名。故选 C。

5. When he was young, Carlos _____.

- A. learned all the plants
- B. took risks to look for plants
- C. watched over different plants
- D. displayed intense interest in plants

D 细节理解题。根据第四段的内容可知, Carlos 小时候对植物表现出强烈的兴趣。故选 D。

6. Which words can best describe Carlos?

- A. Creative and demanding.
- B. Devoted and considerate.
- C. Brave and determined.
- D. Stubborn and caring.

C 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容可知, Carlos Magdalena 是一个非常勇敢的人。根据第三段中的 “firm voice” 和倒数第二段中的 “They need our help and we should use whatever means possible to ensure their survival.” 可知, 他是一个勇敢并有决心的人。故选 C。

7. What will probably be talked about in the next paragraph?

- A. His cooperation with other plant-keepers.
- B. His scoring a goal in the World Cup final.
- C. His future study on preserving endangered plants.
- D. His successful examples of saving endangered plants.

D 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的 “His work was daunting (令人却步的) but he eventually triumphed. ‘It was like scoring the winning goal in a World Cup final,’ he says.” 可知, Carlos Magdalena 的工作取得了成功, 这就像是在世界杯决赛中进球一样令人快乐, 所以接下来的文章, 作者可能会列举他成功的案例。故选 D。

C

One of my close friends seems to be distancing himself from me now. I have tried facing him, who just pretends I’m not there, and I’ve asked for advice from other friends. I feel I’m not good enough. What am I doing wrong to make someone act in such a manner towards me?

If you also suffer from such a situation, you probably have come across a great principle of psychology: the tendency to see reality only through your own feelings and perspective. You will find a much smoother path through the social world if you recognise that not everything that happens to you is about you. In fact, many other possibilities exist. Perhaps your friend is busy with other matters or is dealing internally with problems of his own.

What’s troubling you is the double dose (剂量) of negativity about yourself—you assume you’ve done something wrong and, facing your friend’s disturbing behavior, you’re quick to call in bad feelings about yourself. As Eleanor Roosevelt said, “No one can make you feel bad without your permission.”

We humans are all imperfect creatures; if there is some aspect of your personality or behavioral

style that you feel needs improvement, then you're just like everyone else. Studies show that a large number of people at every age want to better some fundamental aspect of themselves.

The situation you're in calls for inquiry, which is especially helpful in repairing social relationships. If you want to know what's going on, you might approach your friend directly by saying how much you're feeling shut out from your friendship, that you miss it, and that you'd like to know what seems to have gone off the track. You'll get an honest response only by asking straight. And if it turns out that you did do something that wasn't well received, you can decide whether it's something about you that needs fixing.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了一种普遍的心理状态:人们总是倾向于用主观的自我感觉来看世界。

8. How does the author introduce the topic of the text?

- A. By making a comparison.
- B. By raising a question.
- C. By providing a definition.
- D. By describing an experience.

D 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容可知,作者通过描述自己的亲身经历来引出主题。故选 D。

9. What's the cause of the author's suffering from the situation?

- A. The improper manners.
- B. The negative thinking.
- C. The ignorance of friends.
- D. The lack of psychology.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“*What's troubling you is the double dose (剂量) of negativity about yourself*”可知,困扰你的是你消极的想法。故选 B。

10. What can be learned from the studies mentioned in Paragraph 4?

- A. People like to follow others' steps.
- B. It's important to have a good personality.

C. People desire to improve themselves at all ages.

D. It takes time and effort to become a perfect person.

C 推理判断题。根据第四段中的“*Studies show that a large number of people at every age want to better some fundamental aspect of themselves.*”可知,各个年龄段的人都渴望提高自己。故选 C。

11. What does the author advise in the last paragraph?

- A. Putting yourself in your friend's shoes.
- B. Caring nothing but your personal affairs.
- C. Coming straight to the point with friends.
- D. Fixing the problems by your own efforts.

C 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“*If you want to know what's going on, you might approach your friend directly by saying how much you're feeling shut out from your friendship, that you miss it, and that you'd like to know what seems to have gone off the track. You'll get an honest response only by asking straight.*”可知,作者建议和朋友们直入主题。故选 C。

D

Virtue, by definition, is the moral excellence of a person. Morally excellent people have a character made up of virtues valued as good. They are honest, respectful, courageous, forgiving and kind, for example. They do the right thing, and don't bend to impulses, urges or desires, but act according to values and principles. Some might say good qualities are inborn. Actually, virtues need to be cultivated. With the habit of being virtuous, we can take control of our lives and move them in the direction of greater happiness and fulfilment.

Virtues are universal and recognised by all cultures as basic qualities of well-being. However, practising virtues is not easy. So often we know that it takes perseverance to reach our goals, and we still

never get there. We know if we forgive, we'll be less angry. We know it takes courage to accomplish great things. So why then, if we know what to do, are we still stuck?

Because we have not yet consciously applied a virtue to a given situation so as to change its outcome such as in these examples: kindness towards someone who is having a bad day can make him or her smile and build rapport; trust in a relationship creates valuable, meaningful relationships; gratitude in a job loss can shift our focus from feeling low to how we can have a new, more fulfilling career; service to others can change lives, better neighbourhoods and create stronger nations.

We know we are becoming more virtuous people, not only because of the results above but also because of the way other people respond to us. Our friends, families, co-workers and neighbours will trust and rely on us. They will come to us for guidance and help. They will want to be around us because we inspire them to be better people. Practising virtues allows us to develop our potential, and live a more purposeful, better life.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。文章主要论述了践行美德能让我们开发自己的潜能,过上更有目标、更美好的生活。

12. What can we know about virtuous people from the first paragraph?

- A. They are born with virtue.
- B. They never make a mistake.
- C. They have a habit of doing good.
- D. They act on the principle of profit.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段最后一句“With the habit of being virtuous, we can take control of our lives and move them in the direction of greater happiness and fulfilment.”可知,具有美德的人有行善的习惯。故选 C。

13. What is the second paragraph mainly about?

- A. Satisfying career.
- B. Practising virtues.

C. Trust in a relationship.

D. Basic qualities of well-being.

B 段落大意题。根据第二段中的“However, practising virtues is not easy.”和“So why then, if we know what to do, are we still stuck?”可知,本段主要讲的是“践行美德并非易事”。故选 B。

14. What does the underlined word “rapport” mean in the third paragraph?

- A. A good greeting.
- B. A great atmosphere.
- C. A good goodbye.
- D. A close relationship.

D 词义猜测题。根据画线词前面的“kindness towards someone who is having a bad day”以及后面的“trust in a relationship creates valuable, meaningful relationships”可知,此处是指对那些心情不好的人施以善意,可以让他或她微笑从而建立“融洽的关系”符合语境,所以画线词是“融洽关系”的意思。故选 D。

15. What is the author's purpose in the last paragraph?

- A. To encourage readers to be more virtuous.
- B. To encourage readers to live a purposeful life.
- C. To encourage readers to offer others guidance.
- D. To encourage readers to develop others' potential.

A 推理判断题。根据文章最后一段的最后一句“Practising virtues allows us to develop our potential, and live a more purposeful, better life.”可推知,作者的目的是鼓励人们践行美德。故选 A。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

In the middle of the Pacific Ocean lies the tiny island nation of Tuvalu, the fourth smallest country in the world. This group of four islands and five atolls (islands made from coral) is famous for its sandy beaches and turquoise (蓝绿色的) waters and has long been a popular tourist destination for nearby New Zealanders. However, the nation of Tuvalu is at risk of soon no longer existing; not

because of war or political change, but because it will be covered by the rising ocean.

Tuvalu is experiencing the harmful effects of global warming. As global temperatures rise, so does the ocean temperature. Due to the scientific law of “thermal expansion”, when water heats, it gets bigger. 16 Most experts claim that the effects of climate change will make Tuvalu uninhabitable within the next 50 years. Problems are already emerging. As sea levels rise, ocean water containing high levels of salt is travelling further and further inland destroying the little amount of soil Tuvaluans have to grow crops.

Even before Tuvaluans began to suffer from the effects of climate change, life on Tuvalu was tough.

17 Most of the land on an atoll is rock-hard and arid soil that exists on it is usually thin and poor for growing crops. The nation has always had to import food apart from fish.

More serious than Tuvalu’s lack of home-grown food has been its lack of drinking water. 18 Therefore, Tuvaluans depend almost entirely on rainwater for their water needs. Unfortunately, due to a geographical phenomenon known as La Nina, Tuvalu often suffers from long periods of drought. In autumn 2010, after seven months of no rain, the Prime Minister had to declare a state of emergency riot only because of a lack of drinking water, but also because the water left was polluted with cholera (霍乱). 19

Tuvalu’s problems have led some of its 11,000 inhabitants to consider migrating to Australia or New Zealand. 20 They know they’ll have to someday, but for as long as possible, they want to remain and make the world aware of what is happening to their homeland due to climate change.

A. It was a desperate situation and, but for emergency shipments from New Zealand and Australia, many Tuvaluans would have died.

B. This is largely due to the geological makeup of atolls.

C. Unlike normal islands, atolls have no rivers or streams, which means that most of Tuvalu has no groundwater to use for drinking.

D. Tuvalu’s representatives demanded that nations should take a more responsible role in reducing gas emissions.

E. Therefore, sea levels are rising and for low-lying Tuvalu, this spells disaster.

F. However, they are not willing to abandon the land of their forefathers so easily.

G. And as a member of the United Nations, they are doing just that.

答案:16~20 EBCAF

III. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 15 分)

I hadn’t worked since April 2019 due to health issues. But I had no money left, 21 I decided to look for a part-time job.

I had been applying and 22 since July, but was always 23. I felt pretty down.

This past Tuesday evening it was very 24. While I was waiting at a bus stop shaking, I saw a young woman walking up to the bus stop. She had a T-shirt, shorts and slippers (拖鞋) on. I asked her if she had a 25 or anywhere to go. She shook her head and told me she had lost her apartment because she lost her job.

I opened my bag and took out some 26 so she could buy something to eat. I then took off my jacket and shoes and gave them to her. She looked at me in 27 and thanked me with a hug.

After I got on the bus a miracle of spreading 28 happened. I stepped up to pay the fare (车费) but the bus driver 29 me and smiled, “I saw what you just did and your fare is on me!”

Then a lady on the bus asked, “What can I do for you to give back what I just saw?” I 30 said a paying job would be nice. She asked for my name and 31 and said she would call me the next day.

The next day she called me and said that she had a part-time 32 in her company and wanted me to meet with the manager. I couldn’t believe it!

32. A. position B. boss
C. career D. agreement

A 根据前文“I 30 said a paying job would be nice.”及后文“and wanted me to meet with the manager”可知,作者对这位女士说自己需要一份工作,第二天这位女士就给作者打了电话,让作者与她的经理见面。由此推知此时这位女士打电话来是告诉作者,她的公司有一个兼职职位。故选 A。

33. A. carefully B. excitedly
C. fortunately D. patiently

B 根据上文“I couldn't believe it!”可知,作者不敢相信这位女士帮自己找到了工作,由此推知作者的心情是激动的。故选 B。

34. A. wanted B. illustrated
C. determined D. expected

D 根据上文“I couldn't believe it!”可知,作者不敢相信自己能得到面试的机会,由此推知作者没有预想到自己的善意之举能得到这些回报。故选 D。

35. A. time B. process
C. return D. turn

C 根据前文“I saw what you just did and your fare is on me!”及“I will start Monday morning at 9 o'clock!”可知,作者因为自己的善意让司机免去了自己的车票钱,而另一位陌生的女士又帮自己找到了兼职工作,这些都是对作者善意的回报。故选 C。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

This story took place about seven years ago. But images of that week are still clear in my mind. During that week, we had to face up to a **36. powerful** (power) hurricane (飓风). The fact that I was still little seemed to increase **37. its** (it) force. And I could hear the noise of the wind blowing on the windows, **38. which** were shaking. Outside, everything was flying or moving.

In fact, the hurricane did not cross the island only once, but three times, **39. causing** (cause) more and more damage at each crossing. During the entire week following that event, we were not able **40. to go** (go) out of the house. All able **41. roads**

(road) were cut off, and we did not have running water.

Under those conditions, **42. the** hardest part was having no contact **43. with** the rest of my family living around the island. The fear of losing my close friends and relatives was **44. certainly** (certain) hard to stand. We stayed like that for one unpleasant week before everything **45. was fixed** (fix). For me, those seven days were a real nightmare (噩梦).

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

作为一名高二的学生,在你成长的过程中,父母一定为你做过许多令你感动的事。请你用英语叙述一件你的母亲或父亲做过的最令你感动的事。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 不能出现真实姓名和学校名称。

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读下面的材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

A Friend in Need Is a Friend Indeed

Many years ago, I was at a girls' school and our teacher made all the girls in the class sit next to someone different every day. It was great when you got to sit next to one of your dear friends, but very boring when you had to sit next to someone you didn't like. I hated sitting next to Madhuri. I didn't like her because she always fought with me.

On one of the days when my teacher had paired Madhuri and me to sit next to each other for the day, I noticed that she seemed very anxious. I asked her what was wrong. She wasn't very forthcoming to start with, but eventually, after a long time she told me that she had two sisters and one younger brother in her family and that her father couldn't afford to buy schoolbooks for all of them.

My primary school was strict, as was the standard then, and if you didn't have your schoolbooks the teacher would make you leave the class. Madhuri was very anxious that day because she worried that the teacher would tell her to leave the class. When the teacher saw that she didn't have the books, she told Madhuri that she couldn't attend class for a week.

Madhuri was very upset. I felt so bad when I saw her pain that I decided to help her. I went to speak to her and offered to buy the books for her. She refused my offer to help. She had very strong principles and she would never accept things bought by others.

When I got home from school, I told my mum the story. She said that it was good that I had tried to help but I should stop worrying about it because there was nothing more that I could do if she had refused my offer to help. I couldn't stop worrying about it though.

注意:续写 150 词左右。

Then I had an idea. _____

The next day, I got up early so that I could go to her house before going to school. _____

【参考范文】

第一节 应用文写作

As a Senior Grade 1 student, my father has done many things for me, but the one my father did last month moved me most.

After I did badly in my first monthly exam last month, I felt depressed and disappointed. On learning this, my father asked me to have a face-to-

face talk with him. First of all, he told me to analyse the causes one by one warm-heartedly instead of scolding me seriously as usual. In addition, he made me feel confident again by pointing out the advantages of me. What is more, he promised me to do whatever he could to help me out of trouble no matter when and where I needed him. How moved I was!

I am sure the talk between my father and me last month will be kept in my mind forever.

第二节 读后续写

Then I had an idea. My older brother, who had once used the same series of books, graduated from school last year. Why not turn to him for help? Maybe those old books were the solution to the problem. They wouldn't cost anything so Madhuri could accept without any pressure. I went to Mum and my brother immediately. After hearing Madhuri's situation and my plan, my brother was quite willing to help. We sorted out the needed books for Madhuri together very quickly. Looking at the neatly piled books, I felt quite satisfied and delighted but suddenly a matter of concern flashed across my mind, "Would Madhuri mind they are second-hand books?"

The next day, I got up early so that I could go to her house before going to school. Not knowing what would happen and not sure whether she would accept the books or not, I knocked at the door nervously. When the door opened, I could see her surprised expression. Hearing that these books were old books of my brother, she accepted them without hesitation. I also got a weight off my mind. On the way to school, I could see from her face how happy she was. From that day on, something changed and as the day passed and the years moved on, Madhuri and I became best friends.